

DATED

**THE INSTITUTE FOR
APPRENTICESHIPS AND TECHNICAL
EDUCATION**

and

WJEC CBAC LIMITED

**CONTRACT FOR THE PROVISION
OF SERVICES IN RELATION TO
THE CONSTRUCTION: ONSITE
CONSTRUCTION T LEVEL
TECHNICAL QUALIFICATION**

Contents

1	Contract start, formation and interpretation.....	5
2	Appointment and exclusivity.....	6
3	How the Services must be supplied	7
4	Pricing and payments.....	9
5	Developing the TQ and achieving IfATE Approval.....	12
6	Operating the TQ	19
7	Interaction with Providers.....	20
8	TQ Changes.....	22
9	Record keeping, monitoring and reporting	25
10	Staff Transfer	26
11	Supplier Staff and Subcontracting.....	27
12	Rights and protection	27
13	Intellectual Property Rights	29
14	What may happen if there are issues with your provision of the Services	34
15	Ending or extending this Contract.....	38
16	How much each Party can be held responsible for	41
17	Insurance	42
18	Data protection and information	43
19	What must be kept confidential.....	45
20	When information can be shared	47
21	Invalid parts of this Contract.....	48
22	No other terms apply	48
23	Other people's rights in this Contract.....	49
24	Circumstances beyond either Party's control.....	49
25	Relationships created by this Contract.....	49
26	Giving up contract rights	50

27	Transferring responsibilities	50
28	Changing this Contract.....	50
29	How to communicate about this Contract	52
30	Dealing with claims	53
31	Preventing fraud, bribery and corruption	54
32	Equality, diversity, human rights and modernslavery	55
33	Health and safety	56
34	Environment	56
35	Tax	56
36	Conflict of interest	57
37	Reporting a breach of this Contract	57
38	Resolving disputes	57
39	Which law applies	58
	Schedule 1 - Definitions and Interpretation	61
	Schedule 2 - Service Requirements	100
	Schedule 3 - Implementation	457
	Schedule 4 - Co-operation	475
	Schedule 5 - Supplier's Response	479
	Schedule 6 - Pricing Schedule	570
	Schedule 6A - Adaptive Pricing	579
	Schedule 7 - Staff (including Key Personnel)	583
	Schedule 8 - Supply Chain (including approved Subcontractors).....	589
	Schedule 9 - Data Handling and Security Management	594
	Schedule 10 - Business Continuity	599
	Schedule 11 - Change Management	609
	Schedule 12 - Exit Management.....	610
	Schedule 13 - Form of Guarantee	649
	Schedule 14 - Form of Assignment and Licence	650

Schedule 15 - Monitoring of Performance	674
Schedule 16 - Logos and Trademarks – T Level Trade Mark Licence	690
Schedule 17 - Provider Contract requirements	723
Schedule 18 - Commercially Sensitive Information	727
Schedule 19 - Required Insurances.....	731
Schedule 20 - Authorised Representatives.....	734
Schedule 21 - Staff Transfer	736

THIS CONTRACT is made on

BETWEEN:

- (1) **THE INSTITUTE FOR APPRENTICESHIPS AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION** of Sanctuary Buildings, 20 Great Smith Street, London SW1P 3BT ("**Authority**"); and
 - (2) **WJEC CBAC LIMITED** a company registered in England and Wales (company registration number: **03150875**, whose registered office is at 245 Western Avenue, Cardiff, South Glamorgan, CF5 2YX ("**Supplier**"),
- each a "**Party**" and together the "**Parties**".

BACKGROUND TO THIS CONTRACT:

- (A) On **3rd December 2023** the Authority advertised in the Find a Tender Service (FTS) reference **2023/S 000-035661** inviting prospective suppliers to submit proposals for the design development and delivery of the technical education qualification element for the **Onsite Construction T Level**.
- (B) On the basis of the Supplier's response to the advertisement and a subsequent tender process, the Authority selected the Supplier as its preferred supplier of the TQ.
- (C) The Parties have agreed to contract with each other in accordance with the terms and conditions set out below. As well as the delivery stage, this Contract covers the Development Phase and a Pre-Delivery Phase.

OPERATIVE TERMS:

1 Contract start, formation and interpretation

- 1.1 This Contract is legally binding from the Effective Date until it ends in accordance with clause 15 (*Ending or extending this Contract*).
- 1.2 This Contract is formed by the Core Terms and the Schedules and the Supplier must comply with all of its obligations set out in both the Core Terms and the Schedules, provided always that in the event of any conflict between the provisions of the Core Terms and the Schedules and/or the Annexes, or between any of the Schedules and/or

the Annexes, the conflict shall be resolved according to the following descending order of priority:

- 1.2.1 the Core Terms, Schedule 1 (*Definitions and Interpretation*), and Schedule 6 (*Pricing Schedule*);
 - 1.2.2 Schedule 2 (*Service Requirements*), Schedule 4 (*Co-operation*) and their respective Annexes; and
 - 1.2.3 the remaining Schedules and their respective Annexes.
- 1.3 The Parties shall interpret this Contract using Schedule 1 (*Definitions and Interpretation*).

2 Appointment and exclusivity

- 2.1 The Authority hereby appoints the Supplier as the provider of the Services in relation to the TQ during the Term.
- 2.2 As part of such appointment, the Supplier has the exclusive right to offer the TQ in England to Students for TQ courses for the Cohort for the Academic Years commencing at each of 1 August 2026, 1 August 2027, 1 August 2028, 1 August 2029, 1 August 2030 and, where the Authority gives written notice to the Supplier to extend this Contract pursuant to clause 15.2 (*Ending or extending this Contract*), for each of the Cohorts for the Academic Years commencing during an Extension Period, as the case may be, namely 1 August 2031, 1 August 2032, 1 August 2033 (each an **“Exclusive Cohort”**).
- 2.3 Subject to the Supplier’s compliance with the provisions of this Contract, the Authority shall not, during the Term, authorise any third party to provide goods and/or services equivalent to the Services in relation to the whole or any part of an Exclusive Cohort.
- 2.4 The Supplier acknowledges and agrees that during the Term the Authority may, subject to clause 2.3, authorise a third party to provide goods and/or services equivalent to the Services in relation to the TQ in England to students in cohorts outside the Exclusive Cohort, notwithstanding the continuation of the Services under this Contract in respect of any Exclusive Cohort.

- 2.5 The Supplier shall, subject to clause 15 (*Ending or extending this Contract*), be responsible for providing the Services to Students who are within an Exclusive Cohort until the later of the end of their TQ and 2 years following the end of the final Academic Year of the TQ for the Exclusive Cohort of which such Student was part.
- 2.6 Unless otherwise agreed with the Authority in writing, the TQ shall be offered by the Supplier on the basis that teaching of the TQ by Providers for each Exclusive Cohort will commence in September of the relevant Academic Year (accepting that Students may, subject to applicable Supplier and Provider rules, commence their study of the relevant TQ later than the teaching commencement date).

3 How the Services must be supplied

- 3.1 The Supplier must provide the Services:
- 3.1.1 in full compliance with the Service Requirements and the Supplier's Response, provided always that:
 - (i) the fact that the Supplier has complied with the Supplier's Response shall not limit the Supplier's obligation to satisfy the Service Requirements; and
 - (ii) the fact that the Supplier has satisfied the Service Requirements shall not limit the Supplier's obligation to comply with the Supplier's Response;
 - 3.1.2 to a professional standard;
 - 3.1.3 with reasonable skill and care;
 - 3.1.4 using Good Industry Practice;
 - 3.1.5 in accordance with its own policies, processes and quality control measures to the extent that these do not conflict with this Contract;
 - 3.1.6 in accordance with any agreed timings set out in this Contract;
 - 3.1.7 in accordance with Law;
 - 3.1.8 in accordance with the Conditions of Recognition;

3.1.9 in a manner that ensures that neither it, nor any of the Supplier Staff:

- (i) brings the Authority, the Department or the ESFA into disrepute by engaging in any act or omission which is reasonably likely to diminish the trust that the public places in any or all of them; and/or
- (ii) engages in any act or omission which is reasonably likely to bring the T Levels Programme into disrepute,

in either case, regardless of whether or not such act or omission is related to the Supplier's obligations under this Contract; and

3.1.10 in accordance with (and in a manner consistent with enabling the Supplier and the T Level Awarding Organisations to achieve the aims set out in) Schedule 4 (*Co-operation*).

3.2 The Supplier must:

3.2.1 co-operate and, where appropriate, consult with the Stakeholders and the Authority's third party suppliers, including but not limited to the Former Supplier, on all aspects connected with the delivery of the Services; and

3.2.2 ensure that Supplier Staff comply with any reasonable instructions of the Authority in relation to the Services.

Ofqual Recognition

3.3 The Supplier must have in place from the Effective Date and maintain throughout the Term, Ofqual Recognition.

3.4 The Supplier must comply with each Condition of Recognition throughout the Term.

Impact of approval by the Authority

3.5 The Supplier agrees and accepts that except for confirmation of a Variation pursuant to clause 28 (*Changing this Contract*), which expressly changes the Supplier's obligations or liabilities or the Authority's rights under this Contract, no review, comment, authorisation to proceed (as contemplated by clause 5.11.1) or approval by the Authority (including any IfATE Approval) in connection with any Product and/or Service (including in respect of the Supplier's Response, the Implementation and

Delivery Plan, the Resource Plan and any documents or information submitted by the Supplier in order to obtain IfATE Approval) shall operate to exclude or limit the Supplier's obligations or liabilities or the Authority's rights under this Contract, and:

3.5.1 the Supplier retains sole responsibility for ensuring that the TQ (including the Products and Services) meets and continues to meet all relevant Service Requirements (as they may be amended from time to time in accordance with this Contract) throughout the Term; and

3.5.2 the Supplier acknowledges and accepts that any review, comment, authorisation to proceed or approval (including any IfATE Approval) do not constitute or imply any warranty from the Authority or Ofqual in respect of the TQ.

4 Pricing and payments

4.1 In exchange for the provision of the Services (including the supply of the Products), the Supplier must invoice:

4.1.1 the Authority for the relevant Charges, which, in the case of:

- (i) the Development Charge, shall be invoiced by the Supplier at the time and in the manner set out in clauses 5.11.1(ii), or 5.13.1(ii) (*Developing the TQ and achieving IfATE Approval*) (as applicable));
- (ii) that part of the Charges referred to in limb (b) of the definition of Charges, shall, unless otherwise agreed by the Authority, be invoiced by the Supplier on IfATE Approval of the relevant TQ Change; and
- (iii) that part of the Charges referred to in limb (c) of the definition of Charges, shall be invoiced by the Supplier as set out in the relevant Variation; and

4.1.2 the Approved Providers for the Fees pursuant to the applicable Provider Contract.

4.2 The Supplier acknowledges and agrees that:

- 4.2.1 in no circumstances shall the Authority, the Department or ESFA have any liability to the Supplier in respect of the Fees. The Authority is not liable if any Provider (or other third party) fails to pay any fees or other costs (including the Fees) due from them to the Supplier; and
 - 4.2.2 save as permitted by the relevant Provider Contract, the Supplier shall not be entitled to levy any costs and/or charges and/or require any further and/or additional payment in respect of the provision of the Services (including the supply of any Products) to any Approved Provider (and/or any Student) other than the Fees.
- 4.3 All Fees and Charges:
 - 4.3.1 exclude VAT, which is payable on provision of a valid VAT invoice to the applicable payor; and
 - 4.3.2 include all costs payable by the Authority and/or any Provider (as the case may be) in connection with the Services (including the supply of the Products).
- 4.4 The Authority must pay the Supplier:
 - 4.4.1 in respect of the Development Charge, the relevant Interim Milestone Payment or the Final Milestone Payment (as the case may be); or
 - 4.4.2 in respect of any other Charges arising under clause 8 (*TQ Changes*) or clause 28 (*Changing this Contract*), the amount of any such Charges due under such clause 8 (*TQ Changes*) or clause 28 (*Changing this Contract*),

in each case, within 30 days of receipt by the Authority of a valid, undisputed invoice, in cleared funds to the account as notified by the Supplier to the Authority.
- 4.5 A Supplier invoice is only valid if it includes this Contract reference and purchase order number (if any) and other details reasonably requested by the Authority.
- 4.6 If there is a Dispute between the Parties as to the amount invoiced by the Supplier to the Authority, the Authority must pay the undisputed amount. The Supplier cannot suspend the provision of the Services (including the supply of the Products) unless the Supplier is entitled to terminate this Contract for a failure to pay undisputed sums in

accordance with clause 15.5 (*When the Supplier can end this Contract*). Any disputed amounts shall be resolved through the Dispute Resolution Procedure.

- 4.7 If a payment of an undisputed amount is not made by the Authority by the due date, then the Authority shall pay the Supplier interest at the interest rate specified in the Late Payment of Commercial Debts (Interest) Act 1998.
- 4.8 The Supplier can issue a written Reminder Notice to the Authority (in accordance with clauses 29.129.1 and 29.2 (*How to communicate about this Contract*)) if the Authority does not pay an undisputed invoice on time.
- 4.9 The Authority may retain or set-off payment of any amount owed to it by the Supplier if notice and reasons are provided.
- 4.10 The Supplier must ensure that all Subcontractors are paid, in full, within 30 days of receipt of a valid, undisputed invoice. If this does not happen, the Authority can publish the details of the late payment or non-payment. The Supplier must also ensure that any Sub-Contract it enters into contains provisions which have the same effect as clauses 4.4, 4.6, 4.7 and this clause 4.10.
- 4.11 The Supplier has no right of set-off, counterclaim, discount or abatement unless a court orders this.

Indexation of Fees and Rate Card rates

- 4.12 The Supplier shall be entitled to adjust the Fees and the Rate Card rates which apply in respect of any Academic Year following the Academic Year in which the TQ is launched in accordance with the provisions of clause 4.13 to reflect the impact of inflation.
- 4.13 Where the Supplier wishes to adjust the Fees and/or Rate Card rates in accordance with clause 4.12:
 - 4.13.1 the Supplier shall notify the Authority in writing of the proposed percentage adjustment in the existing Fees and/or Rate Card rates and the resulting new Fees and/or Rate Card rates by the end of February in the Academic Year prior to the Academic Year in respect of which the adjustment is to apply ("**Calculation Date**");

- 4.13.2 the proposed percentage adjustment to the relevant then current Fees or Rate Card rates must be no greater than the percentage increase in the preceding 12 months of the UK Consumer Price Index most recently published by the UK Office of National Statistics prior to the Calculation Date; and
- 4.13.3 the proposed adjustment calculated in accordance with this clause 4.13 shall not operate to adjust the Fees or Rate Card rates for the then current Academic Year, but shall operate to adjust the Fees or Rate Card rates as applicable with effect from the immediately following Academic Year.
- 4.14 In addition to any changes to the Entry Fee by virtue of clause 4.13, the Entry Fee may be subject to change from time to time, in accordance with the provisions set out in Schedule 6A.
- 4.15 Except as set out in clause 4.13, neither the Charges, the Fees nor any other costs, expenses, fees or charges shall be adjusted to take account of any inflation, change to exchange rate, change to interest rate or any other factor or element which might otherwise increase the cost to the Supplier or Subcontractors of the performance of their obligations under this Contract.

5 Developing the TQ and achieving IfATE Approval

- 5.1 The Supplier shall develop the TQ to meet the Service Requirements and in accordance with the terms of this Contract.

Requirement for IfATE Approval

- 5.2 The Supplier acknowledges and accepts that:
 - 5.2.1 the Supplier shall not make the whole or any part of the Initial TQ Deliverables available to Eligible Providers and/or Approved Providers for delivery to Students until IfATE Approval has been granted; and
 - 5.2.2 the Supplier shall, where possible, (and in each case with the prior written consent of the Authority) share draft versions of the Initial TQ Deliverables and Guide Standard Exemplification Materials, with Eligible Providers and/or Approved Providers to support their preparations to deliver the TQ.

General development obligations

5.3 The Supplier must:

- 5.3.1 design and develop the TQ in accordance with paragraphs 2.1 and 2.2 of Part 1 of the Service Requirements and in order to meet the Milestones;
- 5.3.2 consult with:
 - (i) the Authority, the Department, ESFA and the Route Panels; and
 - (ii) a representative sample of Providers and Employers,in the design and development of the TQ (including as contemplated by paragraph 2.1.4 of the Service Requirements);
- 5.3.3 take into account any input received from the Route Panel, and where applicable, the T Level Panels in the design and development of the TQ, and consult as appropriate with the T Level Panels and/or the Route Panel prior to the first Interim Milestone;
- 5.3.4 co-operate (as required) and work collaboratively with the Authority to achieve IfATE Approval of the TQ;
- 5.3.5 take into account the Technical Qualifications Service Requirements Explanatory Note together with any guidance as issued by the Authority from time to time in the design and development of the TQ, and provide input when reasonably requested by the Authority to support the development and updating of such Technical Qualifications Explanatory Note; and
- 5.3.6 submit to the Authority an updated Implementation and Delivery Plan and Resource Plan within 5 Working Days from the Effective Date, or such other date as the parties shall agree from time to time, in writing.

Development support from the Authority

- 5.4 The Supplier Authorised Representative and/or senior representatives of the Supplier's development team as appropriate will meet monthly (or more frequently if deemed necessary by the Authority) with the Authority Authorised Representative and/or

representatives of the Authority's Commissioning & Development Team, at a time and location to be advised by the Authority, following the Effective Date until IfATE Approval of the TQ (each a "**TQ Development Meeting**") to review progress on TQ development, address key risks and identify solutions to any barriers to progress. The Authority shall issue an agenda in advance of each TQ Development Meeting. In the event that the development of the TQ is materially delayed against the Milestones and/or the dates given in the Implementation and Delivery Plan, on a written request by the Authority the Supplier's Chief Executive Officer or an equivalently senior individual shall attend the next TQ Development Meeting.

5.5 The Supplier shall:

5.5.1 not less than 5 Working Days prior to each TQ Development Meeting, submit the Development Phase Report to the Authority in respect of the relevant month, together with, without prejudice to paragraph 2.5 of Part 1 of the Service Requirements:

(i) updated versions (meeting all of the requirements of the relevant Product Description) of the following Products:

(A) the Implementation and Delivery Plan;

(B) the Resource Plan;

(C) the Risk Register; and

(D) the Issues Log; and

(ii) as requested by the Authority from time to time, the then current versions of the following:

(A) the TQ Specification;

(B) the Assessment Strategy;

(C) the TQ Specimen Assessment Materials;

(D) the Guide Standard Exemplification Materials;

(E) the Provider Approval Criteria;

- (F) the Submission Issues Log;
- (G) Employer & Provider Engagement Strategy; and
- (H) any draft version of the Key Dates Schedule that the Supplier intends shall (if Approved) become the Key Dates Schedule for the purposes of this Contract from time to time,

it being understood that the Supplier will not be in breach of this clause 5.5.1 if the relevant item is still being developed and the Milestone for its completion has not been reached as at the date of the relevant TQ Development Meeting; and

5.5.2 provide a verbal summary at each such TQ Development Meeting of the progress of development of the TQ as against the Implementation and Delivery Plan and Resource Plan and any identified risks to the on time delivery of the TQ and proposed resolutions.

5.6 The Authority shall provide minutes setting out an accurate summary of each such TQ Development Meeting within 5 Working Days of each such meeting.

Submission process

5.7 The Supplier shall, on or prior to the applicable Submission Date, make all Submissions to the Authority necessary in respect of IfATE Approval in accordance with paragraphs 2.1 and 2.2 of Part 1 and Annex 7 to the Service Requirements.

5.8 The Supplier shall ensure that all Submissions made in accordance with clause 5.7 meet all of the requirements for each Submission as set out in paragraph 2.1 of Part 1 and Annex 7 to the Service Requirements. Unless notified otherwise by the Authority in writing, the Supplier shall continue its ongoing work in relation to the Initial TQ Deliverables following each Submission whilst such Submission is being considered by the Authority and/or Ofqual. For the avoidance of doubt, this means that the Supplier, following each Submission for each Interim Milestone, shall not await notification from the Authority in accordance with Clause 5.11 below before continuing work on the Initial TQ Deliverables required for any subsequent Milestone.

- 5.9 The Supplier shall submit to the Authority for Approval, a final version of the Guide Standard Exemplification Materials in accordance with paragraph 2.1 of Part 1 and Annex 7 to the Service Requirements.
- 5.10 The Supplier shall respond promptly to the Authority to any requests from the Authority for further information to support any Submission and/or the IfATE Approval process.
- 5.11 In respect of each Interim Milestone, the Authority and, if relevant, Ofqual will consider each Submission made in accordance with clause 5.7 and 5.8 and, within a timeframe which should allow the TQ to be developed in time for delivery in accordance with this Contract:
- 5.11.1 if the Authority considers that the Submission (or Re-Submission (as the case may be)) meets all of the requirements of paragraphs 2.1 and 2.2 of Part 1 and Annex 7 to the Service Requirements for the relevant Interim Milestone, the Authority shall:
- (i) confirm in writing to the Supplier that such requirements have been met; and
 - (ii) where the relevant Interim Milestone attracts an Interim Milestone Payment, pay to the Supplier (in accordance with clause 4 (*Pricing and payments*)) the applicable Interim Milestone Payment; or
- 5.11.2 if (1) the Authority does not consider that the Submission (or Re-Submission (as the case may be)) meets all of the requirements of paragraphs 2.1 and 2.2 of Part 1 and Annex 7 to the Service Requirements for the relevant Interim Milestone and/or (2) the Supplier has outstanding issues still to be addressed / additional information still to be provided in relation to any previous Interim Milestones (including in relation to any previous Interim Milestones that do not attract an Interim Milestone Payment), the Authority may withhold payment to the Supplier of the applicable Interim Milestone Payment (if any) and shall:
- (i) notify the Supplier of the issues that need to be addressed and/or the additional information that needs to be provided (and, acting reasonably, the date by which such issues need to be addressed and/or such information needs to be provided) and whether the

Authority will be withholding payment of the applicable Interim Milestone Payment (if any), and the Supplier shall promptly address such issues and resubmit the relevant documentation and/or provide such additional information (a “**Re-Submission**”) to the Authority on or prior to the date notified by the Authority, following which clause 5.11.1 or this clause 5.11.2 will apply to such Re-Submission; or

(ii) notify the Supplier:

- (A) that notwithstanding the failure of the Submission (or Re-Submission (as the case may be)) to meet all of the requirements of paragraphs 2.1 and 2.2 of Part 1 and Annex 7 to the Service Requirements for the relevant Interim Milestone, the Supplier shall continue with the design and development of the TQ without having to make a Re-Submission, provided that the relevant issues are addressed by any timescales specified by the Authority and in any event no later than by the Final Approval Milestone Date; and
- (B) whether the Authority will be withholding payment of the applicable Interim Milestone Payment (if any), following which the Supplier shall promptly address the issues identified / further information required, as part of its ongoing development of the TQ in accordance with the timescales specified by the Authority. If the Authority is withholding payment of any applicable Interim Milestone Payment, subject to the Supplier having addressed the issues identified in accordance with the required timescales (and in any event no later than by the Final Approval Milestone Date), clause 5.11.1(ii) will apply.

5.12 The Supplier acknowledges and agrees that owing to the meeting dates scheduled for the IfATE Approval process, any delay in making the Final Submission to the Authority by the Final Approval Milestone Date may cause a delay of several weeks for IfATE Approval. Accordingly, failure by the Supplier to make the Final Submission in

accordance with clause 5.7 and/or 5.8 by the Final Approval Milestone Date, other than due to a breach of this Contract by the Authority, shall be a Critical Service Failure.

- 5.13 In respect of the Final Approval Milestone, the Authority and, if relevant, Ofqual will consider the Final Submission made by the Supplier in accordance with clause 5.7 and 5.8 and, within a timeframe which should allow the TQ to be developed in time for delivery in accordance with this Contract:

5.13.1 if the Authority considers that the Final Submission (or Final Re-Submission (as the case may be)) meets the requirements for IfATE Approval, then the Authority shall:

- (i) confirm to the Supplier in writing that the TQ has IfATE Approval and that, subject (if applicable) to clause 7.2 (*Interaction with Providers*) and clause 14.3.1 (*What may happen if there are issues with your provision of the Services*), the Supplier is authorised to proceed to make the TQ available to Approved Providers for delivery to Students in accordance with clause 6 (*Operating the TQ*); and
- (ii) pay to the Supplier (in accordance with clause 4 (*Pricing and payments*)) the Final Milestone Payment, together with any outstanding Interim Milestone Payments or;

5.13.2 if the Authority considers that the Final Submission (or Final Re-Submission (as the case may be)) does not meet the requirements for IfATE Approval, then the Authority shall either

- (i) notify the Supplier in writing of the issues that need to be addressed and/or the additional information that needs to be provided and the Supplier shall within 10 Working Days (or such longer timeframe as is agreed in writing by the Authority) address such issues and resubmit the relevant documentation and/or provide such additional information, following which this clause 5.13 will apply to such Final Re-Submission or
- (ii) take any other steps available to it under the contract.

5.14 The Supplier acknowledges and accepts that the Authority will share, as it deems necessary, with Ofqual, the Department, ESFA, and the Route Panel:

5.14.1 all Submissions (including any Final Submission) and/or Re-Submissions (including any Final Re-Submissions) submitted by the Supplier under clause 5.7 and/or clause 5.13;

5.14.2 any information required by the Authority pursuant to clause 5.10;

5.14.3 any information required by Ofqual for the Regulation of the TQ or to perform the statutory functions of Ofqual; and/or

5.14.4 any other information it holds in relation to the Supplier,

and the provisions of clause 19 (*What must be kept confidential*) will not prevent any disclosure or sharing of documentation and/or information by the Authority under this clause 5.14.

6 Operating the TQ

6.1 Following IfATE Approval the Supplier must (subject to clause 7.2 (*Interaction with Providers*) and clause 14.3.1 (*What may happen if there are issues with your provision of the Services*)) make the TQ (including (as applicable) the Products) available to Approved Providers for delivery to Students and provide the Services (other than the Initial Development Services) in accordance with the Service Requirements.

6.2 The Supplier shall meet all KPIs in the delivery of the Services (other than the Initial Development Services).

6.3 The Supplier must comply with the current version of any Key Dates Schedule in respect of the making available of the TQ and the performance of the Services (other than the Initial Development Services).

6.4 The Supplier must provide materials and Student Information to the Authority in accordance with paragraphs 5, 8 and 10 of Part 1 of the Service Requirements to enable the Authority to keep a record in the event such materials and/or information is required for the transfer of Services to a Replacement Supplier.

6.5 The Supplier shall promptly provide to the Authority such materials relating to the TQ and Student Information as are requested in writing by the Authority to enable work by or on behalf of the Authority and/or Ofqual to ensure the ongoing maintenance between Cohorts of the grades and standards of the TQ and the wider T Level Programme.

6.6 The Supplier shall actively promote the TQ to Eligible Providers.

7 Interaction with Providers

7.1 The Supplier shall, in accordance with the requirements set out in paragraph 3 of Part 1 of the Service Requirements, operate a procedure to receive applications for Provider Approval from Eligible Providers that wish to make the TQ available to Students, and where the relevant Provider Approval Criteria are met to grant Provider Approval and notify the Approved Providers accordingly. The Supplier acknowledges and agrees that:

7.1.1 it shall not be entitled or permitted to:

- (i) charge any additional costs, charges and/or fees arising out of or in connection with the implementation and operation of such procedure and/or the granting of Provider Approval; and/or
- (ii) impose any additional requirements (other than a Provider Contract) on any Eligible Provider and/or Approved Provider (as applicable) as a condition to and/or consequence of the grant of Provider Approval;

7.1.2 only an Eligible Provider shall be eligible to be granted Provider Approval by the Supplier in respect of the TQ; and

7.1.3 subject to clause 7.1.2 and without prejudice to paragraph 3.1.1 of Part 1 of the Service Requirements, the Supplier shall promptly grant Provider Approval to Eligible Providers who meet the Provider Approval Criteria following receipt of their application for Provider Approval.

7.2 The Supplier shall review and assess Approved Providers on an ongoing basis in accordance with paragraph 3.1.2 of Part 1 of the Service Requirements to ensure that they continue to meet the requirements for Provider Approval to make the TQ available

to Students and, subject to the provisions of paragraphs 3.2 to 3.5 (inclusive) of Part 1 of the Service Requirements, where an Approved Provider no longer meets the Provider Approval Criteria, the Supplier shall revoke such Provider Approval.

7.3 The Supplier shall ensure that:

7.3.1 prior to any Eligible Provider making the TQ available to Students:

- (i) the Eligible Provider is an Approved Provider;
- (ii) a binding Provider Contract is in place with the relevant Approved Provider; and

7.3.2 the Provider Services shall only be provided to an Approved Provider during the term of, and subject to the provisions of, the applicable Provider Contract.

7.4 Without prejudice to paragraph 5 of Part 1 of the Service Requirements, the Supplier shall promptly register a Student for the TQ following receipt by the Supplier of an application for registration of that Student from an Approved Provider.

7.5 The Supplier shall, on written request by the Authority, promptly provide a copy of each Provider Contract to the Authority and to the Department and/or the ESFA.

7.6 The Supplier shall retain copies of all documentation and information in relation to arrangements with Eligible Providers and Approved Providers, including all such documentation and/or information arising out of or in connection with:

7.6.1 the application for and/or the grant of Provider Approval referred to in clause 7.1; and

7.6.2 the ongoing monitoring of Approved Providers by the Supplier referred to in clause 7.2,

and without prejudice to the generality of the definition of IfATE Data, such documentation and information shall form part of the IfATE Data to which the provisions of clause 18 (*Data protection and information*) shall apply.

- 7.7 The Supplier shall make available the Additional Services and provide the Additional Services on request by Approved Providers in accordance with paragraphs 5, 6, and 9 of Part 1 of the Service Requirements.
- 7.8 The Supplier shall be permitted to offer and provide additional products and/or services in each case related to the TQ to Approved Providers (and Students), provided always that:
- 7.8.1 such additional products and services are not identical to, or performing an equivalent function in relation to the TQ to, the whole or any part of the Products and/or the Services (including the Additional Services) and offered and/or provided on alternative terms and/or conditions (including as to timing or quality) to those terms and conditions which would apply pursuant to this Contract to the applicable Products and/or Services;
- 7.8.2 without prejudice to clause 7.1.1(ii) and the requirements of Schedule 17 (*Provider Contract Requirements*), the Supplier shall not, other than the Provider Contract, impose any condition on any Eligible Provider (including any Approved Provider) and/or Student to purchase such additional products and/or services as a condition to and/or consequence of:
- (i) the grant of any Provider Approval; and/or
- (ii) the proper performance of any of the Services (and/or the supply of any Products); and
- 7.8.3 the Supplier shall not (in making available such products and/or services available and/or in respect of the terms on which such products and/or services are made available) favour one Provider and/or group of Providers or one Student and/or group of Students over another.
- 7.9 The Supplier shall comply with Schedule 17 (*Provider Contract Requirements*) in respect of its contracts with Approved Providers in relation to the TQ.

8 TQ Changes

- 8.1 The Supplier acknowledges and agrees that the Authority may request changes to the TQ and that the Authority may publish revised Outline Content from time to time.
- 8.2 The Supplier must ensure that the Approved Initial TQ Deliverables reflect the version of the Former Supplier's TQ Specification as at the Effective Date ("**Initial Content Date**") and that the Approved Initial TQ Deliverables reflect any TQ Change requested by the Authority before IfATE Approval.
- 8.3 The Supplier must make any TQ Change reasonably requested by the Authority to reflect any changes to the Former Supplier's TQ Specification or, if relevant, the Outline Content following the Initial Content Date subject to the terms of this clause 8.
- 8.4 The Authority may carry out annual reviews in each Academic Year where a new Cohort is commencing the TQ in the following Academic Year to identify any potential TQ Changes required by the Authority. The Authority may prepare and submit to the Supplier by the relevant dates prescribed by the TQ Content Updating Schedule in each such Academic Year up to two annual guidance notes setting out the output of the Authority's reviews in relation to Inclusive TQ Changes and Exclusive TQ Changes respectively. Where the Authority identifies any potential TQ Change (in an annual guidance note or otherwise), the Authority shall promptly notify the Supplier in writing of details of the potential TQ Change.
- 8.5 Without prejudice to paragraphs 2.5 and 2.6 of Part 1 of the Service Requirements which shall apply in addition to any annual review, the Supplier shall carry out an annual review of the TQ once in each Academic Year, taking into account the output of any Authority annual guidance note(s) pursuant to clause 8.4 and any additional updates the Supplier has proposed to the TQ (to the extent that such updates have not otherwise been Approved pursuant to paragraph 2.5 or 2.6 of Part 1 of the Service Requirements), to identify any potential TQ Changes required to ensure ongoing compliance of the TQ with the Service Requirements. Where the Supplier identifies any potential TQ Change, the Supplier shall promptly notify the Authority in writing of details of the potential TQ Change.
- 8.6 Where a TQ Change is an Exclusive TQ Change, the Parties shall follow the Variation procedure set out in clause 28 (*Changing this Contract*) in respect of the relevant

Exclusive TQ Change. The Charges relating to such Exclusive TQ Change shall be agreed between the Parties as part of the Impact Assessment for the relevant Variation, each Party acting reasonably and promptly, prior to the Supplier commencing work on the Exclusive TQ Change. The relevant Charges shall:

- 8.6.1 be a reasonable cost for implementing the Exclusive TQ Change in the circumstances;
- 8.6.2 take into account and be calculated using:
 - (i) for personnel related costs and other relevant charges which are set out in the Rate Card, the applicable Rate Card rates; and
 - (ii) reasonable charges for any non-personnel related costs which are not included in the Rate Card and which will be incurred by the Supplier to implement the Exclusive TQ Change; and
- 8.6.3 be consistent with the costs applicable to any relevant costed change scenario set out in Schedule 6 (*Pricing Schedule*) or, where no costed change scenario for the applicable TQ Change is set out in Schedule 6 (*Pricing Schedule*), be calculated on the same basis and using the same logic and inputs as those which applied to determine the costs for the costed change scenarios, as such logic and inputs may be amended only to the extent as is necessary to reflect the TQ Change in question.
- 8.7 Where the TQ Change is an Inclusive TQ Change, the Supplier shall implement such Inclusive TQ Change at the cost of the Supplier and there shall be no additional Charges or Fees as a result of such Inclusive TQ Change.
- 8.8 The Supplier shall obtain the Authority's prior written agreement before implementing any TQ Change which, in the case of an Exclusive TQ Change, shall be in the form of an executed Variation to this Contract. Following such agreement the Supplier shall, unless otherwise agreed with the Authority, implement:
 - 8.8.1 Inclusive TQ Changes such that the updated TQ is ready for teaching to new Students in the next Academic Year following the date of such agreement; and

8.8.2 Exclusive TQ Changes such that the updated TQ is ready for teaching to new Students in the second Academic Year following the date of such agreement,

provided that in each case that the Supplier shall continue to make available the version of the TQ prior to such TQ Change as is necessary to support continuing Students who commenced their studies on such version of the TQ prior to the implementation of such TQ Change.

8.9 The Supplier shall consult with a representative sample of relevant Employers and take into account the output of consultation with such Employers as appropriate in relation to any TQ Change in accordance with the Service Requirements and shall provide the Authority with evidence of such consultation.

8.10 If the Supplier makes any Inclusive TQ Changes, the Supplier must resubmit the TQ documentation including any Products (as amended to reflect the TQ Change in question) to the Authority for agreement by the relevant date prescribed by the TQ Content Updating Schedule, unless otherwise agreed with the Authority, before (where applicable) making the relevant revised version of the TQ available to Approved Providers for delivery to Students.

8.11 If the Supplier makes any Exclusive TQ Changes, the Supplier must resubmit the TQ documentation including any Products (as amended to reflect the TQ Change in question) to the Authority for IfATE Approval by the relevant date prescribed by the TQ Content Updating Schedule, unless otherwise agreed with the Authority, before (where applicable) making the relevant revised version of the TQ available to Approved Providers for delivery to Students and the provisions of clause 5.13 shall apply to such amended TQ documentation as if references to the “Final Submission” (or “Final Re-Submission” (as the case may be)) in that clause 5.13 are references to the “TQ documentation including any Products (as amended to reflect the TQ Change in question)”; reference to the “Final Approval Milestone” is a reference to the “TQ Change in question”; and references to payment refer to payment of any charges agreed in the applicable Variation.

8.12 Unless otherwise agreed with the Authority in writing, any agreed or approved (as the case may be) updates to the TQ must (where applicable) be made available to

Approved Providers by the Supplier by the relevant date prescribed by the TQ Content Updating Schedule.

9 Record keeping, monitoring and reporting

9.1 Without prejudice to clause 5.5 (*Developing the TQ and achieving IfATE Approval*) and clause 7.6 (*Interaction with Providers*), the Supplier shall:

9.1.1 monitor and report (in an Operational Delivery Report) its performance of the Services (other than the Initial Development Services) in accordance with Schedule 15 (*Monitoring of Performance*) and the Parties agree that the provisions of such Schedule 15 (*Monitoring of Performance*) shall apply to determine (amongst other things) the process following (and the outcome of) such monitoring and reporting (including in relation to the carrying out of the Performance Review Meeting and the requirement for and consequences of any KPI Improvement Plan); and

9.1.2 comply with the record keeping and reporting obligations set out in paragraphs 5, 8 and 10 of Part 1 of the Service Requirements.

9.2 The Supplier must allow, and must ensure that any Key Subcontractor allows, any Auditor access to the Supplier's or Key Subcontractor's premises and/or systems (including IT systems), as relevant, to Audit everything to do with this Contract and/or to obtain any information required in relation to any investigation by Ofqual.

9.3 The Supplier must provide, and must ensure that any Key Subcontractor provides, information to the Auditor and reasonable co-operation at the Auditor's request to enable any Audit to be undertaken.

9.4 The Supplier must create and maintain throughout the Term a full and accurate version control log recording all TQ Changes made during the Term.

9.5 The Supplier shall maintain and shall promptly, following a written request by the Authority, provide to the Authority, the following:

9.5.1 the Supplier's detailed and up to date cost model for the provision of the Services under this Contract including a future projection for the remaining Term;

- 9.5.2 details of the income received by the Supplier through the provision of the Services during the Term to date, including a breakdown by service and customer and a future projection for the remaining Term; and
- 9.5.3 the Supplier's calculation of the overall level of profit it has achieved during the Term to date through the Services provided under this Contract.

10 Staff Transfer

10.1 The Parties agree that:

- 10.1.1 where the commencement of the provision of the Services or any part of the Services results in one or more Relevant Transfers, Schedule 21 (Staff Transfer) shall apply; and
- 10.1.2 Schedule 12 (Exit Management) shall apply on the expiry or termination of the Services or any part of the Services.

11 Supplier Staff and Subcontracting

Supplier Staff

11.1 The Supplier Staff involved in the performance of this Contract must:

- 11.1.1 be appropriately trained and qualified; and
- 11.1.2 be vetted using Good Industry Practice and, in the case of Supplier Staff referred to in paragraph 2.2 of Schedule 7 (*Staff (including Key Personnel)*), in accordance with paragraph 2 of Schedule 7 (*Staff (including Key Personnel)*).

11.2 If any default, acts, omissions, negligence and/or statements of any of the Supplier Staff involved in the performance of this Contract result in a Default, the Supplier is liable to the Authority for that Default.

11.3 Where the Authority decides (on reasonable grounds) that one of the Supplier's Staff is not suitable to work on this Contract, the Supplier must, subject to clause 11.1, promptly replace them with a suitably qualified alternative.

- 11.4 If requested by the Authority, the Supplier must replace any person whose acts or omissions have caused the Supplier to breach clause 31 (*Preventing fraud, bribery and corruption*).

Subcontracting

- 11.5 The Supplier shall comply with the provisions of Schedule 8 (*Supply Chain (including approved Subcontractors)*) in respect of the appointment (including any proposed appointment) and/or management of any Subcontractor (including any Key Subcontractor).
- 11.6 Sub-contracting any part of this Contract shall not relieve the Supplier of any obligation or duty attributable to the Supplier under this Contract.

12 Rights and protection

- 12.1 The Supplier warrants and represents that:
- 12.1.1 it has full capacity and authority to enter into and to perform this Contract;
 - 12.1.2 this Contract is executed by its authorised representative;
 - 12.1.3 it is a legally valid and existing organisation incorporated in the place it was formed;
 - 12.1.4 there are no known legal or regulatory actions or investigations before any court, administrative body or arbitration tribunal pending or threatened against it or its Affiliates that might affect its ability to perform this Contract;
 - 12.1.5 it maintains all necessary rights, authorisations, licences and consents to perform its obligations under this Contract;
 - 12.1.6 it does not have any contractual obligations which are likely to have a material adverse effect on its ability to perform this Contract;
 - 12.1.7 it is not subject to an Insolvency Event; and
 - 12.1.8 all statements made, and documents submitted, as part of the procurement of the Services (including in the Supplier's Response) are true and accurate.

- 12.2 The warranties and representations in clause 12.1 are repeated each time the Supplier provides the Services and/or supplies any Products under this Contract.
- 12.3 The Supplier indemnifies the Authority in full against all Losses suffered or incurred by the Authority arising out of or in connection with third party claims that result from the provision of the Services including the supply of the Products.
- 12.4 All claims indemnified under this Contract (including for the avoidance of doubt any indemnified IPR Claim) must use the process set out in clause 30 (*Dealing with claims*).
- 12.5 The Authority can, even if it has made a claim in respect of the breach, still terminate this Contract for breach of any warranty or indemnity where it is entitled to do so.
- 12.6 If the Supplier becomes aware of a representation or warranty that becomes untrue or misleading, it must immediately notify the Authority.

13 Intellectual Property Rights

Vesting, ownership and licences of rights in TQ materials

- 13.1 The Supplier agrees to deliver such materials, and to assign or licence all IPR in such materials, as it creates, identifies for use, or uses as part of or for the Operation of the TQ to which the Authority and/or a Replacement Supplier with Relevant Competence would reasonably require access:
- 13.1.1 for the Authority to carry out its activities in relation to the T Level and TQ, including the approval, oversight and maintaining the integrity of the T Level and TQ;
- 13.1.2 for the transfer of the Operation of the TQ to a Replacement Supplier; and
- 13.1.3 for the Replacement Supplier to Operate (including maintaining the integrity of, modifying and developing) the TQ,
- in a seamless, Transparent manner; and
- 13.1.4 to compete openly and effectively any future competition or tender for the Operation of the TQ or a Replacement TQ.
- 13.2 Without limiting the generality of clause 13.1:

- 13.2.1 the Supplier agrees to assign to the Authority all IPR in the Key Materials (including in Products) in accordance with the TQ Assignment and Licence;
 - 13.2.2 the Supplier agrees to licence the Authority, with the right to sublicense, all IPR in the Ancillary Materials, in accordance with the TQ Assignment and Licence; and
 - 13.2.3 in respect of any IPR in Key Materials, to the extent that the same are not at the relevant time vested absolutely in the Authority, the Supplier agrees to license the Authority, with the right to sublicense, such IPR in Key Materials, in accordance with the TQ Assignment and Licence.
- 13.3 Except as set out above or otherwise expressly provided in this Contract:
- 13.3.1 the Authority shall not by virtue of this Contract acquire title to or rights in any Background IPR owned by the Supplier or any third party; and
 - 13.3.2 the Supplier shall not by virtue of this Contract acquire title to or rights in any Background IPR owned by the Authority or licensed by any third party to the Authority.
- 13.4 Without prejudice to the other provisions of this Contract, the assignments and licences referred to in clause 13.2 shall be subject to the terms of the TQ Assignment and Licence (during and after the Term), including the warranties and representations set out in the TQ Assignment and Licence. The Authority and the Supplier will enter into the TQ Assignment and Licence in the form set out in Schedule 14 (*Form of Assignment and Licence*) on the Effective Date.

Rights granted to the Supplier

- 13.5 The Authority hereby grants to the Supplier a non-exclusive worldwide, royalty free licence with the right to sublicense, subject to, and in accordance with, the terms of this Contract, to use:
- 13.5.1 the Former Supplier's TQ Specification and, if relevant, the Outline Content;
 - 13.5.2 the IfATE Data; and

- 13.5.3 any Authority Background IPR in other materials specifically identified for use in the provision of the Services in accordance with this sub-clause,
- during the Term, solely in relation to the provision of the Services.
- 13.6 The Authority hereby grants to the Supplier, in so far as any relevant Intellectual Property Rights have been assigned to the Authority or are otherwise at the time vested in the Authority in accordance with clause 13.2 a worldwide, royalty free licence, with the right to sublicense, to use and exploit the IPR in the Key Materials during the Term in relation to the TQ subject to, and in accordance with, the relevant terms of this Contract.
- 13.7 Subject to clause 13.8, the licence to the Supplier under clause 13.6 shall be exclusive during the Term solely in respect of use of the Key Materials for the provision of the Services in respect of the Exclusive Cohorts.

Rights retained by the Authority for its activities related to the provision of the Services

- 13.8 The Authority will retain:
- 13.8.1 (for the avoidance of doubt) the non-exclusive right to use the Key Materials in its administration, approval and oversight of the TQ and other T Level technical education qualifications and to make the same available to others (such as Ofqual) to do the same; and
- 13.8.2 the right to use the Key Materials, and for any Future Supplier or potential Future Supplier to use the Key Materials:
- (i) for competing or tendering for the delivery and Operation of the TQ and/or any Replacement TQ, where such competition or tender is for such delivery and Operation during any Transition Period and/or following expiry or termination of this Contract (ie the End Date); and
 - (ii) to deliver and Operate the TQ and/or any Replacement TQ, during any Transition Period; and

- 13.8.3 the right to sub-license others to exercise the rights set out in this clause 13.8.

Confirmation of rights, marking and branding of Materials

- 13.9 The Supplier shall, on any copy of any materials in which copyright belongs to the Authority, prominently mark such material with a notice saying: "Copyright in this [DOCUMENT/section of DOCUMENT] belongs to, and is used under licence from, the Institute for Apprenticeships and Technical Education [DATE]" or such other notice as the Authority may reasonably require by notice to the Supplier from time to time. Without prejudice to any rights granted to the Authority under this Contract, in the case of each Deliverable the Supplier shall deliver a certificate in the form annexed to the TQ Assignment and Licence confirming that ownership in the IPR in that Deliverable is vested in the Authority, or where it asserts that IPR in the Deliverable or certain parts of it do not vest in the Authority, identifying specifically those parts and the scope of rights it asserts the Supplier has in respect of the same.
- 13.10 The Supplier may use its name, logos, trade marks and/or other signs which refer to the Supplier on Key Materials and Ancillary Materials and other materials used in the Operation of the TQ or to promote the TQ which are of the type set out in the T Level Branding Guidelines, provided that any such use shall be strictly as set out in the T Level Branding Guidelines. Without prejudice to the last sentence, the Supplier shall, on notice from the Authority, provide representative samples of all such use, and, if the notice so requests, provide such samples a reasonable period in advance of any proposed such use together with a period (not being less than 7 Working Days) for comment. The Authority may notify the Supplier within such period of any comments, including any requirements it has in respect of such use, and, the Supplier shall take reasonable account of any such comments and comply with any reasonable requirements of the Authority so notified.
- 13.11 The Supplier shall not use its name, logos, trade marks and/or other signs which refer to the Supplier, in a trade mark manner or as any designation of origin, on any material referred to in clause 13.10 or otherwise in connection with its Operation of T Levels or T Level technical education qualifications (including the TQ), except as provided in clause 13.10 or otherwise with the specific Approval of the Authority; and in any event any use of its name, logos, trade marks and/or other signs which refer to the Supplier in connection with the T Level or T Level technical education qualifications (including

the TQ) shall not be such as to make, suggest or imply any connection between the Authority or any T Levels or any T Level technical education qualifications and the Supplier, or endorsement by the Authority or the Department, other than as arises under this Contract or any other contract for the supply of T Level technical education qualifications.

13.12 The Supplier shall:

- 13.12.1 apply to all Key Materials and Ancillary Materials provided to any third party, the Authority's name and logo in such manner as is reasonably prescribed from time to time in writing by the Authority; and
- 13.12.2 use in respect of the TQ, including, unless otherwise agreed with the Authority, on all Key Materials and Ancillary Materials, such descriptive name (for example in the form: "[technical qualification] in Construction") as is determined by the Authority or proposed by the Supplier and agreed by the Authority,

provided that such use shall at all times be in strict accordance with the other provisions of this Contract, the T Level Trade Mark Licence, and any style guides or other instructions issued from time to time by the Authority.

Supplier's operation of other qualifications

13.13 The Supplier shall not, within or outside England, offer or promote any qualification other than the TQ as:

- 13.13.1 being the TQ (or any other technical qualification forming part of a T Level) or T Level (or part of a T Level);
- 13.13.2 being identical in terms of content and assessment requirements to the TQ (or any other technical qualification forming part of a T Level) or T Level and/or including identical components to the TQ (or any other technical qualification forming part of a T Level) or T Level; or
- 13.13.3 demonstrating the same level of occupational competence as the TQ (or any other technical qualification forming part of a T Level) or T Level,

provided always that nothing in this Contract shall prevent the Supplier from offering or promoting the technical qualification element of a T Level under a separate contract with the Authority in connection with the making available of that technical qualification.

13.14 The Supplier may only re-use the whole of the TQ in an un-amended or materially un-amended form, other than as part of the Services during the Term, as follows:

13.14.1 in the Operation of qualifications for any of the Devolved Administrations, with the specific Approval of the Authority;

13.14.2 in the Operation of qualifications in England intended for and only marketed to students who are not in the category known as “16 to 19 year old”, with the specific Approval of the Authority; and

13.14.3 in the Operation of qualifications outside the UK, save in any jurisdictions the Authority excludes by notice to the Supplier,

provided in each case that the name “T Level” is not used in the qualification or any marketing or promotion of the qualification, and that it is at all times clear and made clear to students and other third parties that the qualification does not form and cannot be used as any part of a T Level.

13.15 Subject to clauses 13.13 and 13.14, nothing in this Contract or the TQ Assignment and Licence shall restrict or prevent the Supplier from continuing to offer and update its existing qualifications (including technical qualifications), from offering new technical qualifications, or from using elements of the Key Materials in the operation of qualifications other than the TQ.

Dealing with intellectual property claims

13.16 If there is an IPR Claim, the Supplier indemnifies the Authority against all Losses suffered or incurred by the Authority as a result.

13.17 Where a Party acquires ownership of IPR incorrectly under this Contract it must do everything reasonably necessary to complete a transfer in writing assigning the IPR to the other Party on request and at its own cost.

13.18 Clause 13.16 shall not apply to the extent that the IPR Claim is caused by the Authority’s use of the relevant IPR in breach of the terms of this Contract.

- 13.19 In the event that any Third Party IPR is included in the Key Materials, Ancillary Materials, or other Deliverables under this Contract, the Supplier shall ensure that it has or acquires sufficient rights to any such Third Party IPR to enable it to enter into any applicable assignments and to grant any applicable licences under this Contract.

Portability of the TQ

- 13.20 The Supplier shall, where possible, ensure that its design and development of the TQ enables the transfer of the materials described in clause 13.1 to a Future Supplier without requiring use by such Future Supplier of any underlying proprietary system or platform which does not form part of the Key Materials or Ancillary Materials.

14 What may happen if there are issues with your provision of the Services

- 14.1 The Supplier must notify the Authority promptly in writing if:
- 14.1.1 it becomes aware of any problem or complaint from any individual or organisation in relation to the making available and/or operation of the TQ;
 - 14.1.2 it makes any changes to its management, governance, organisational and/or operational structure or capacity from that which is set out in the Supplier's Tender which shall or may be material to the provision of the Services;
 - 14.1.3 it undergoes or proposes to undergo (or, without prejudice to clause 15.7 (*When Sub-Contracts can be ended*) becomes aware that a Subcontractor has undergone or proposes to undergo) a change of Control;
 - 14.1.4 there is a material adverse change in the financial circumstances of the Supplier, the Supplier becomes aware of a material adverse change in the financial circumstances of the Key Subcontractors, or the Supplier has (or anticipates that it may have) insufficient funding to adequately resource its obligations under this Contract;
 - 14.1.5 it becomes aware of any circumstances relating to the Supplier or any Subcontractor which shall or may bring into disrepute and/or diminish the trust that the public places in the Authority, the Department or the ESFA and/or the T Levels Programme (including any Conflict of Interest (as

contemplated by clause 36 (*Conflict of interest*)) and/or any child protection and/or data handling issues and/or incidents);

14.1.6 it becomes aware of any issue which shall or may have an adverse impact on Students studying for the TQ;

14.1.7 it is required, pursuant to the Conditions of Recognition, to notify Ofqual of any event that has occurred (or is likely to occur) which it has cause to believe could have an “Adverse Effect” (as defined in the Conditions of Recognition);

14.1.8 any of the circumstances in clause 15.7 (*Ending or extending this Contract*) occur; or

14.1.9 a Critical Service Failure occurs.

14.2 If:

14.2.1 the Supplier has failed to make the Submission for the relevant Interim Milestone on or prior to the Submission Date for that relevant Interim Milestone;

14.2.2 the Authority reasonably believes that:

(i) the Supplier is not likely to achieve IfATE Approval by the Final Approval Milestone Date;

(ii) the Authority is likely to need to withdraw IfATE Approval;

(iii) Ofqual is likely to need to withdraw Ofqual Recognition;

14.2.3 the Authority has obtained information giving rise to reasonable concerns about the ability of the Supplier to deliver the Services and the Authority has provided such information to the Supplier and given the Supplier a reasonable opportunity (in the circumstances) to respond to such information and any such response fails to address such concerns to the satisfaction of the Authority;

14.2.4 the Supplier fails, in the opinion of Ofqual, to comply with any Condition of Recognition;

- 14.2.5 the Supplier is under investigation and/or subject to regulatory enforcement by Ofqual or has had any direction issued by Ofqual in respect of it;
- 14.2.6 the Supplier fails to comply with and/or implement (as the case may be) the whole or any part of the Implementation and Delivery Plan in any material respect;
- 14.2.7 the Supplier fails to deliver the Services in accordance with the Resource Plan in any material respect;
- 14.2.8 the circumstances referred to in paragraph 2.3.2 of Schedule 15 (*Monitoring of Performance*) occur;
- 14.2.9 a Supplier Termination Event has occurred; and/or
- 14.2.10 any act or omission of the Supplier in relation to the TQ in breach of this Contract occurs which shall or may have a material adverse impact on Students and/or the TQ including any such act or omission which:
 - (i) gives rise to prejudice to Students or potential Students; or
 - (ii) adversely affects:
 - (A) the ability of the Supplier to undertake the development, delivery or award of the TQ in accordance with its Conditions of Recognition;
 - (B) the standards of the TQ which the Supplier makes available or proposes to make available; or
 - (C) public confidence in the TQ,

the Authority may issue written notification of Designated Action to the Supplier, following which the Supplier shall comply with the Designated Action in accordance with any timeframe stated in such notification. In the event that, for any reason, the Supplier is unable to comply with the Designated Action notification, the Supplier shall promptly notify the Authority and shall explain the reason why it is unable to so comply.

- 14.3 In the event of a Critical Service Failure, in addition to the rights of the Authority under clause 14.2 (*What may happen if there are issues with your provision of the Services*)

and 15.3 (*Ending or extending this Contract*), the Authority may by serving written notice on the Supplier:

- 14.3.1 suspend and/or restrict any elements (in full or part) of the Services for the remainder of the Term, including a permanent prohibition or restriction on the Supplier from providing the Services (including making the TQ and/or any Products available to Approved Providers):
 - (i) to Cohorts (including any Exclusive Cohort) in respect of which Students are already registered for the TQ; and/or
 - (ii) in respect of any further Cohorts (including any Exclusive Cohort);
- 14.3.2 reduce the Term by one or more periods of 12 months as specified in such notice and accordingly remove one or more Cohorts from the Exclusive Cohorts; and/or
- 14.3.3 require the Supplier to comply with specified performance improvement conditions in relation to the Services, failing which the Term will reduce by one or more periods of 12 months as specified in such notice and the final Cohort will then be removed from the Exclusive Cohorts.
- 14.4 Nothing in this Contract (and no action by the Authority) shall be construed so as to limit or restrict the ability of Ofqual to take action under its statutory powers and in the event of any Dispute arising out of or in connection with Ofqual Recognition and/or any Condition of Recognition the provisions of clause 38.7 (*Resolving disputes*) will apply.
- 14.5 The Supplier shall provide (and shall procure that its Subcontractors provide) all information and cooperation as is required by the Authority to enable the Authority to investigate any alleged breach by the Supplier of its obligations under this Contract.
- 14.6 The Authority may withdraw IfATE Approval by notice in writing to the Supplier in circumstances where the requirements for IfATE Approval are no longer met by the Supplier. The Authority shall notify the Supplier in advance in writing of its proposal to withdraw IfATE Approval and shall provide a reasonable opportunity for the Supplier to make representations in relation to such proposal, and the Authority shall take such representations into account in determining whether to proceed to withdraw IfATE Approval.

15 Ending or extending this Contract

15.1 This Contract ends on the End Date.

Extending this Contract

15.2 The Authority can extend this Contract for an Extension Period by giving the Supplier written notice prior to the start of the Academic Year in which the final Exclusive Cohort commences the TQ.

When the Authority can end this Contract

15.3 The Authority has the right to immediately terminate this Contract.

15.3.1 If a Supplier Termination Event occurs, by issuing a Termination Notice to the Supplier, unless the Supplier Termination Event occurs as a result of a breach of this Contract by the Authority, but only insofar as the Authority's breach is not itself caused by a breach by the Supplier of the Supplier's obligations under this Contract.

15.3.2 If following completion of the OSC T Level TQ Review, a decision is taken by IfATE, in collaboration with the Department, to withdraw the OSC TQ from the T Level Programme, the Authority has the right to immediately terminate this Contract by issuing a Termination Notice to the supplier.

15.3.3 For the avoidance of doubt, any Termination Notice issued in accordance with clause 15.3.2 shall be issued no later than 29 November 2024.

15.4 Nothing in Clause 38 (Resolving Disputes) shall prevent or restrict the Authority from exercising its rights under clause 15.3.1 and 15.3.2.

What happens if this Contract ends

15.5 Where the Authority terminates this Contract, all of the following apply:

15.5.1 the Supplier shall apply to Ofqual, in accordance with the instructions of the Authority, for its Ofqual Recognition in respect of the TQ to be withdrawn;

15.5.2 the accumulated rights of the Authority are not affected;

- 15.5.3 the Authority grants to the Supplier a non-exclusive worldwide, royalty free irrevocable licence to use the IfATE Data solely to the extent that such IfATE Data consists of: (i) information relating to the identities of Providers and persons engaged by them, which it shall be entitled to use for any purpose; and (ii) Student Related Data provided that no individual Student can be identified from such Student Related Data, which it shall be entitled to use for research purposes in order to develop or improve upon any Supplier qualification (including material prepared, and training provided, in support of such qualification);
- 15.5.4 the Supplier must promptly return (or, where required by the Authority, delete) the IfATE Data except where required to retain copies by Law, the Conditions of Recognition, or for the purposes of exercising its rights under the licence granted under clause 15.4.3;
- 15.5.5 the Supplier must promptly return any of the Authority's property provided to it under this Contract;
- 15.5.6 the Supplier must at no cost to the Authority reasonably co-operate in the re-procurement and/or handover of the Services (including to a Replacement Supplier);
- 15.5.7 the Supplier must comply with the relevant provisions of Schedule 12 (*Exit Management*); and
- 15.5.8 this clause 15.4 and the following clauses survive the termination of this Contract: clauses 9, 12.3, 13, 16, 18, 19, 20, 22, 38 and 39 and any clauses and/or Schedules which are expressly or by implication intended to continue.

When the Supplier can end this Contract

- 15.6 The Supplier can terminate this Contract by issuing a Termination Notice if the Authority fails to pay any Charges which have fallen due under this Contract and which are directly payable by the Authority within 30 days of the date of a Reminder Notice issued by the Supplier in respect of such sum.
- 15.7 If the Supplier terminates this Contract under clause 15.5:

15.7.1 the Authority must promptly pay all outstanding Charges referred to in clause 15.5 to the Supplier; and

15.7.2 clauses 15.4.1 to 15.4.8 shall apply.

When Sub-Contracts can be ended

15.8 At the Authority's request, the Supplier must terminate (or procure the termination of (as the case may be)) any Sub-Contracts in any of the following events:

15.8.1 there is a change of Control of the relevant Subcontractor which is not pre-approved in writing by the Authority and which the Authority believes shall or may have an adverse impact on the Services;

15.8.2 the acts or omissions of the relevant Subcontractor have caused or materially contributed to a right of the Authority to terminate this Contract;

15.8.3 a Supplier Termination Event is caused or contributed to by the relevant Subcontractor or where any analogous events referred to in limbs (b), (d), (e), (f), (g), (h), (j) or (l) of the definition of Supplier Termination Event occurs in respect of the Subcontractor; or

15.8.4 the relevant Subcontractor sub-contracts any of its obligations in relation to the Services in breach of the requirements of this Contract.

16 How much each Party can be held responsible for

16.1 Subject to the following provisions of this clause 16 each Party's total aggregate liability under this Contract (whether in tort, contract or otherwise) for each claim or series of connected claims is no more than £1,000,000.

16.2 No Party is liable to the other for:

16.2.1 any indirect, special or consequential Loss; or

16.2.2 loss of profits, turnover, savings, business opportunities or damage to goodwill (in each case whether direct or indirect), provided always that, subject to clause 16.1, the Supplier acknowledges that the Authority may, amongst other things, recover from the Supplier the following Losses

incurred by the Authority, the Department and/or the ESFA, to the extent that they arise as a result of a Default by the Supplier:

- (i) any additional operational and/or administrative costs and expenses, including costs relating to time spent by or on behalf of the Authority in dealing with the consequences of the Default;
- (ii) any wasted expenditure or charges;
- (iii) the additional cost of procuring Replacement Services for the remainder of the Contract Period, which shall include any incremental costs associated with such Replacement Services above those which would have been payable under this Contract;
- (iv) any compensation or interest paid to a third party by the Authority; and
- (v) any fine or penalty pursuant to Law and any costs in defending any proceedings which result in such fine or penalty.

16.3 The Authority does not give any warranty or undertaking as to the relevance, completeness, accuracy or fitness for purpose of any data information and/or documentation disclosed by or on behalf of the Authority prior to or after the Effective Date and neither the Authority nor any of its employees or agents shall be liable (howsoever arising) for any inaccuracy, omission, unfitness for purpose or inadequacy of any kind whatsoever in any such data information and/or documentation.

16.4 Nothing in this Contract shall operate to exclude or limit the liability of either Party in relation to the following:

- 16.4.1 its liability for death or personal injury caused by its negligence, or that of its employees, agents or subcontractors;
- 16.4.2 bribery or fraud or fraudulent misrepresentation by it or its employees; or
- 16.4.3 any liability that cannot be excluded or limited by Law.

- 16.5 Each Party must use its reasonable endeavours to mitigate any Losses which it suffers under or in connection with this Contract, including where any such Losses are covered by an indemnity.
- 16.6 When calculating the Supplier's liability under clause 16.1, Losses covered by Required Insurances will not be taken into consideration.

17 Insurance

- 17.1 Without prejudice to its obligations to the Authority under this Contract, including its indemnity obligations, the Supplier shall take out and maintain at its own cost, or procure the taking out and maintenance of, the Required Insurances. The Supplier shall ensure that each of the Required Insurances is effective no later than the date on which the relevant risk commences.
- 17.2 The Required Insurances shall be maintained in accordance with Good Industry Practice and (so far as is reasonably practicable) on terms no less favourable than those generally available to a prudent contractor in respect of risks insured in the international insurance market from time to time.
- 17.3 The Required Insurances shall be taken out and maintained with insurers who are: (a) of good financial standing; (b) appropriately regulated; and (c) of good repute in the international insurance market.
- 17.4 The Supplier shall not take any action or fail to take any action or (insofar as is reasonably within its power) permit anything to occur in relation to it which would entitle any insurer to refuse to pay any claim under any of the Required Insurances.
- 17.5 Where the Supplier has failed to purchase any of the Required Insurances or maintain any of the Required Insurances in full force and effect, the Authority may elect (but shall not be obliged) following written notice to the Supplier to purchase the relevant Required Insurances, and the Authority shall be entitled to recover the reasonable premium and other reasonable costs incurred in connection therewith as a debt due from the Supplier.
- 17.6 The Supplier shall upon the Effective Date and within 15 Working Days after the renewal or replacement of each of the Required Insurances, provide evidence, in a form satisfactory to the Authority, that the Required Insurances are in full force and

effect and meet in full the requirements of this clause 17. Receipt of such evidence by the Authority shall not in itself constitute acceptance by the Authority or relieve the Supplier of any of its liabilities and obligations under this Contract.

- 17.7 The Supplier shall ensure that the public and products liability policy forming part of the Required Insurances shall contain an indemnity to principals clause under which the Authority shall be indemnified in respect of claims made against the Authority in respect of death or bodily injury or third party property damage arising out of or in connection with the Services and for which the Supplier is legally liable.

18 Data protection and information

- 18.1 Each Party shall comply with the Data Protection Legislation.
- 18.2 The Supplier must ensure that Personal Data is Processed in accordance with Schedule 9 (*Data Handling and Security Management*).
- 18.3 The Supplier must not remove any ownership or security notices in or relating to the IfATE Data.
- 18.4 The Supplier must make accessible back-ups of all IfATE Data, stored in an agreed off-site location. The Supplier must send the Authority copies every six Months of the Ancillary Materials and the Key Materials (in each case to the extent that these have not already been provided to the Authority), and any further information falling within the definition of IfATE Data as may be requested by the Authority in writing from time to time.
- 18.5 The Supplier must ensure that any Supplier system holding any IfATE Data, including back-up data, is a secure system that complies with the Security Policy and the relevant provisions of Schedule 9 (*Data Handling and Security Management*).
- 18.6 If at any time the Supplier suspects or has reason to believe that the IfATE Data provided or generated under this Contract is corrupted, lost or sufficiently degraded, then the Supplier must notify the Authority and immediately suggest remedial action.
- 18.7 If the IfATE Data is corrupted, lost or sufficiently degraded so as to be unusable the Authority may either or both:

- 18.7.1 tell the Supplier to restore or get restored IfATE Data as soon as practical but no later than 5 Working Days from the date that the Authority receives notice, or the Supplier finds out about the issue, whichever is earlier; and/or
 - 18.7.2 restore the IfATE Data itself or using a third party.
- 18.8 The Supplier must pay each Party's reasonable costs of complying with clause 18.7 unless the Authority is at fault.
- 18.9 The Supplier:
 - 18.9.1 must provide the Authority with all IfATE Data in an agreed open format within 10 Working Days of a written request;
 - 18.9.2 must have documented processes to guarantee prompt availability of IfATE Data if the Supplier stops trading;
 - 18.9.3 must securely destroy all Storage Media that has held IfATE Data at the end of life of that media using Good Industry Practice;
 - 18.9.4 must securely erase all IfATE Data and any copies it holds when asked to do so by the Authority unless required by Law to retain it; and
 - 18.9.5 indemnifies the Authority against any and all Losses suffered or incurred by the Authority if the Supplier and/or any Key Subcontractor breaches this clause 18 and/or any Data Protection Legislation.

19 What must be kept confidential

Confidential Information

- 19.1 Each Party must, subject to the following provisions of this clause 19;
 - 19.1.1 keep all Confidential Information it receives confidential and secure;
 - 19.1.2 not disclose, use or exploit the Confidential Information disclosed by the Disclosing Party without the Disclosing Party's prior written consent, except for the purposes anticipated under this Contract; and

- 19.1.3 immediately notify the Disclosing Party if it suspects unauthorised access, copying, use or disclosure of the Confidential Information.
- 19.2 Notwithstanding clause 19.1, a Party may disclose Confidential Information which it receives from the Disclosing Party in any of the following instances:
- 19.2.1 where disclosure is required by applicable Law or by a court with the required jurisdiction, if the Recipient Party (to the extent that it is permitted to do so by such applicable Law or by such court) notifies the Disclosing Party in advance of disclosure of the full circumstances, the affected Confidential Information and extent of the disclosure;
 - 19.2.2 if the Recipient Party already had the information without obligation of confidentiality before it was disclosed to it by the Disclosing Party;
 - 19.2.3 if the information was given to it by a third party without obligation of confidentiality;
 - 19.2.4 if the information was in the public domain at the time of the disclosure;
 - 19.2.5 if the information was independently developed without access to the Confidential Information of the Disclosing Party;
 - 19.2.6 to its auditors or for the purposes of regulatory requirements;
 - 19.2.7 on a confidential basis, to its professional advisers on a need-to-know basis;
 - 19.2.8 to the Serious Fraud Office where the Recipient Party has reasonable grounds to believe that the Disclosing Party is involved in activity that may be a criminal offence under the Bribery Act 2010; and/or
 - 19.2.9 where disclosure is permitted in accordance with Schedule 4 (*Co-operation*).
- 19.3 The Supplier may disclose Confidential Information on a confidential basis to Supplier Staff on a need-to-know basis to allow the Supplier to meet its obligations under this Contract. The Supplier must ensure that the Supplier Staff enter into a direct confidentiality agreement with the Authority at the Authority's request.

- 19.4 The Authority may disclose Confidential Information in any of the following cases:
- 19.4.1 on a confidential basis to the employees, agents, consultants and contractors of the Authority;
 - 19.4.2 on a confidential basis to any Crown Body, any successor body to a Crown Body or any company that the Authority transfers or proposes to transfer all or any part of its business to;
 - 19.4.3 where permitted by the Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009, (including to the Department, ESFA or Ofqual and as contemplated by clause 5.15 (*Developing the TQ and achieving IfATE Approval*));
 - 19.4.4 if the Authority (acting reasonably) considers disclosure necessary or appropriate to carry out its public functions;
 - 19.4.5 where requested by Parliament;
 - 19.4.6 under clauses 4.10 (*Pricing and payments*) and 20 (*When information can be shared*); or
 - 19.4.7 save for Exit Information, where the information was generated as part of the provision of the Services.
- 19.5 For the purposes of clauses 19.2 to 19.4 references to disclosure on a confidential basis means disclosure under a confidentiality agreement or arrangement including terms as strict as those required in this clause 19.

Student Related Data

- 19.6 The Supplier must:
- 19.6.1 keep all Student Related Data confidential and secure;
 - 19.6.2 immediately notify the Authority if it suspects unauthorised access, copying, use or disclosure of the Student Related Data.
- 19.7 The Supplier shall not store, copy, disclose, or use the Student Related Data except as necessary for the performance by the Supplier of its obligations under this Contract or as otherwise expressly authorised in writing by the Authority.

Transparency Information and other disclosures

- 19.8 Transparency Information and any information which is exempt from disclosure by clause 20 (*When information can be shared*) is not Confidential Information.
- 19.9 The Supplier must not make any press announcement or publicise this Contract or the output of the Services (including the Student Related Data) without the prior written consent of the Authority and must take all reasonable steps to ensure that Supplier Staff do not either.

20 When information can be shared

- 20.1 The Supplier acknowledges that:
- 20.1.1 the Transparency Reports; and
 - 20.1.2 the content of this Contract, including any changes to this Contract agreed during the Term, except for (i) any information which is exempt from disclosure in accordance with the provisions of the FOIA, which shall be determined by the Authority; and (ii) Commercially Sensitive Information,
- (together the “**Transparency Information**”) is not Confidential Information.
- 20.2 The Supplier must tell the Authority within 48 hours if it receives a Request For Information.
- 20.3 Within the timescales required by the Authority, the Supplier must give the Authority full co-operation and information needed so the Authority can:
- 20.3.1 publish the Transparency Information; and
 - 20.3.2 comply with any Request for Information.
- 20.4 The Supplier acknowledges that the Authority may be required under the FOIA and EIRs to disclose information (including Confidential Information and Commercially Sensitive Information) without consulting or obtaining consent from the Supplier. However, to the extent that it is permitted to do so (in accordance with the Secretary of State’s section 45 Code of Practice on the Discharge of the Functions of Public Authorities under Part 1 of the FOIA), the Authority shall, in relation to any Request for

Information relating to Confidential Information or Commercially Sensitive Information of the Supplier:

20.4.1 notify the Supplier of such Request for Information as soon as is reasonably practicable; and

20.4.2 allow the Supplier to make representations in relation to any exemptions the Supplier considers may apply to the disclosure of its information under the Request for Information and take such representations into account when making its decision of what it will disclose.

20.5 Notwithstanding any other provision in this Contract, the Authority shall be responsible for determining in its absolute discretion whether any Commercially Sensitive Information and/or any other information is exempt from disclosure in accordance with the FOIA and/or the EIRs.

21 Invalid parts of this Contract

If any part of this Contract is held to be void or otherwise unenforceable by any court of competent jurisdiction, such part shall to the extent necessary to ensure that the remaining provisions of this Contract are not void or unenforceable be deemed to be deleted and the validity and/or enforceability of the remaining provisions of this Contract shall not be affected.

22 No other terms apply

The provisions incorporated into this Contract are the entire agreement between the Parties. This Contract replaces all previous statements and agreements whether written or oral. No other provisions apply.

23 Other people's rights in this Contract

23.1 The Department may enforce any of the Authority's rights under this Contract in relation to which the Department is to benefit. The Department's consent is not required to amend this Contract.

23.2 Save as provided in clause 23.1 or expressly stated in this Contract, no third parties shall be entitled to enforce any term of this Contract.

24 Circumstances beyond either Party's control

24.1 Any Party affected by a Force Majeure Event is excused from performing its obligations under this Contract while the inability to perform continues, if it both:

24.1.1 provides a Force Majeure Notice to the other Party; and

24.1.2 uses all reasonable measures to reduce the impact of the Force Majeure Event.

24.2 The Authority can terminate this Contract if the provision of the Services is materially affected by a Force Majeure Event which lasts for 90 days continuously.

24.3 Where the Authority terminates under clause 24.2:

24.3.1 each Party must cover its own Losses; and

24.3.2 subject to clause 24.3.1, clause 15.4 applies.

24.4 Neither Party can rely on clause 24.1 where the inability to perform its obligations arises, directly or indirectly, due to the exit from the European Union by the United Kingdom.

24.5 The Supplier may not rely on clause 24.1 to the extent that the inability to perform its obligations arises directly or indirectly out of a failure by the Supplier to comply with its Business Continuity Plan.

25 Relationships created by this Contract

25.1 This Contract does not create a partnership, joint venture or employment relationship. The Supplier must represent itself accordingly and ensure the Supplier Staff do so.

26 Giving up contract rights

26.1 A partial or full waiver or relaxation of the terms of this Contract by one Party is only valid if it is stated to be a waiver in writing to the other Party.

27 Transferring responsibilities

27.1 The Supplier must not assign, transfer or otherwise dispose of its rights, obligations and/or liabilities under the whole or any part of this Contract without Approval.

- 27.2 The Authority can assign, novate or transfer this Contract or any part of it to any Crown Body, public sector body or private sector body which performs the functions of the Authority.
- 27.3 The Supplier must enter into a novation agreement in the form that the Authority specifies where the Authority wishes to exercise its rights under clause 27.2.
- 27.4 The Supplier can terminate this Contract novated under clause 27.2 to a private sector body where an Insolvency Event occurs in respect of that private sector body.
- 27.5 The Supplier remains responsible for all acts and omissions of the Supplier Staff as if they were its own.

28 Changing this Contract

- 28.1 If any change is required which is an Inclusive TQ Change, clause 8 (*TQ Changes*) shall apply in relation to such change, and this clause 28 shall not apply to any Inclusive TQ Change.
- 28.2 Either Party can request a Variation to this Contract, including the addition or removal of one or more Occupational Specialist Components.
- 28.3 The Supplier cannot unreasonably withhold or delay their consent to a Variation to this Contract.
- 28.4 The Supplier must provide an Impact Assessment either:
- 28.4.1 with the Variation Form, where the Supplier requests the Variation; or
 - 28.4.2 within the time limits included in a Variation Form where the Authority requests the Variation.
- 28.5 If the Variation cannot be agreed or resolved by the Parties, the Authority can either:
- 28.5.1 agree that this Contract continues without the Variation; or
 - 28.5.2 treat such failure as a Dispute which shall be addressed through the Dispute Resolution Procedure.

- 28.6 A Variation of this Contract is only effective if agreed in writing and signed by both Parties.
- 28.7 If there is a General Change in Law, the Supplier must bear the risk of the change and is not entitled to ask for an increase to the Charges and/or the Fees in respect of that change.
- 28.8 If there is a Specific Change in Law or one is likely to happen during the Contract Period, the Supplier must give the Authority notice of the likely effects of the Specific Change in Law as soon as reasonably practical. The Supplier must also say if it thinks any Variation is needed either to the Services, the Products and/or this Contract and provide evidence:
- 28.8.1 that the Supplier has kept costs as low as possible and/or maximised any cost savings (as the case may be) including any Subcontractor costs; and
- 28.8.2 of how it has affected or will affect the Supplier's costs and/or those of any Subcontractor.
- 28.9 Any Variation because of a Specific Change in Law must be implemented using clauses 28.1 to 28.6.
- 28.10 If another awarding organisation has a contract with the Authority for the provision of services similar to the Services to deliver a different technical qualification as part of the T Levels Programme and that other awarding organisation suffers a Supplier Termination Event following which its contract with the Authority is terminated or the relevant contract is otherwise lawfully terminated, the Supplier agrees that the Authority shall have the option to request that the Supplier takes over the delivery of that different technical qualification and any related services as a Variation, which will be implemented using clauses 28.1 to 28.6. The Charges and Fees relating to such a Variation shall be agreed between the Parties as part of the Impact Assessment for the relevant Variation, each Party acting reasonably and promptly, prior to the Supplier commencing work on the Variation. The relevant Charges and Fees shall:
- 28.10.1 be a reasonable cost for implementing the Variation in the circumstances;

28.10.2 take into account the charges and fees that the other awarding organisation was charging in relation to that different technical qualification prior to suffering the Supplier Termination Event; and

28.10.3 take into account and be calculated using:

- (i) for personnel related costs and other relevant charges which are set out in the Rate Card, the applicable Rate Card rates; and
- (ii) reasonable charges for any non-personnel related costs which are not included in the Rate Card and which will be incurred by the Supplier to implement the Variation; and
- (iii) the same basis and the same logic used by the Supplier to determine the relevant costs, Charges and Fees for the Services.

29 How to communicate about this Contract

29.1 All notices under this Contract must be in writing and are considered effective on the Working Day of delivery as long as delivered before 5:00 pm on a Working Day. Otherwise the notice is effective on the next Working Day. Unless expressly stated in this Contract or otherwise communicated in writing by the Authority, an email is not effective notice unless also sent by post or delivered by hand on the same day. For the avoidance of doubt, this clause 29.1 does not apply to a Variation, which must be implemented in accordance with clauses 28.2 to 28.6.

29.2 Subject to clause 29.1, notices to the Authority must be sent to the Authority Authorised Representative's address and email address, and all notices must be copied to the Authority's Head of Commercial Delivery Management [REDACTED] and the Authority's Head of Legal [REDACTED]

29.3 Subject to clause 29.1, notices to the Supplier must be sent to the Supplier Authorised Representative's address and email address.

29.4 This clause does not apply to the service of legal proceedings or any documents in any legal action, arbitration or dispute resolution.

30 Dealing with claims

- 30.1 If a Beneficiary is notified of or otherwise becomes aware of a Claim then it must notify the Indemnifier as soon as reasonably practical and no later than 10 Working Days after such notification or date of first awareness.
- 30.2 At the Indemnifier's cost the Beneficiary must both:
- 30.2.1 allow the Indemnifier to conduct all negotiations and proceedings to do with a Claim; and
- 30.2.2 give the Indemnifier reasonable assistance with the Claim if requested.
- 30.3 The Beneficiary must not make admissions about the Claim or enter into any agreement or compromise in relation to the Claim without the prior written consent of the Indemnifier which cannot be unreasonably withheld or delayed.
- 30.4 The Indemnifier must consider and defend the Claim diligently using competent legal advisors and in a way that does not damage the Beneficiary's reputation (or, in the case of the Authority as a Beneficiary, the reputation of the Authority, the Department and/or the ESFA or the wider T Levels Programme).
- 30.5 The Indemnifier must not settle or compromise any Claim without the Beneficiary's prior written consent which it must not unreasonably withhold or delay.
- 30.6 Each Beneficiary must take all reasonable steps to minimise and mitigate any losses that it suffers because of the Claim.
- 30.7 If the Indemnifier pays the Beneficiary money under an indemnity and the Beneficiary later recovers money which is directly related to the relevant Claim, the Beneficiary must immediately repay the Indemnifier the lesser of either:
- 30.7.1 the sum recovered minus any legitimate amount spent by the Beneficiary when recovering this money; or
- 30.7.2 the amount the Indemnifier paid the Beneficiary for the Claim.

31 Preventing fraud, bribery and corruption

- 31.1 The Supplier must not during the Term:

- 31.1.1 commit a Prohibited Act or any other criminal offence in regulations 38(8), 38(9) and/or 38(10) of the Regulations; and/or
 - 31.1.2 do or allow anything which would cause the Authority, including any of its employees, consultants, contractors, subcontractors or agents to breach any of the Relevant Requirements or incur any liability under them.
- 31.2 The Supplier must during the Term:
 - 31.2.1 create, maintain and enforce adequate policies and procedures to ensure it complies with the Relevant Requirements to prevent a Prohibited Act and require its Subcontractors to do the same;
 - 31.2.2 keep full records to show it has complied with its obligations under this clause 31 and give copies to the Authority on request; and
 - 31.2.3 if required by the Authority, within 20 Working Days of the Effective Date, and then annually, certify in writing to the Authority, that it has complied with this clause 31, including compliance of Supplier Staff, and provide reasonable supporting evidence of this on request, including its policies and procedures.
- 31.3 The Supplier must immediately notify the Authority if it becomes aware of any breach of clauses 31.1 or 31.2, or has any reason to think that it, or any of the Supplier Staff, has either:
 - 31.3.1 been investigated or prosecuted for an alleged Prohibited Act;
 - 31.3.2 been debarred, suspended, proposed for suspension or debarment, or is otherwise ineligible to take part in procurement programmes or contracts because of a Prohibited Act by any Crown Body;
 - 31.3.3 received a request or demand for any undue financial or other advantage of any kind related to this Contract; or
 - 31.3.4 suspected that any person or Party directly or indirectly related to this Contract has committed or attempted to commit a Prohibited Act.

31.4 If the Supplier notifies the Authority as required by clause 31.3, the Supplier must respond promptly to the Authority's further enquiries, co-operate with any investigation and allow the Audit of any relevant books, records and documentation.

31.5 In any notice the Supplier gives under clause 31.4 it must specify the:

31.5.1 Prohibited Act;

31.5.2 identity of the party who it thinks has committed the Prohibited Act; and

31.5.3 action it has decided to take.

32 Equality, diversity, human rights and modern slavery

32.1 The Supplier must perform its obligations under this Contract (including those in relation to the Services), in accordance with:

32.1.1 all applicable equality Law (whether in relation to race, sex, gender reassignment, religion or belief, disability, sexual orientation, pregnancy, maternity, age or otherwise); and

32.1.2 any other requirements and instructions which the Authority reasonably imposes related to equality Law.

32.2 The Supplier must perform its obligations under this Contract (including those in relation to the Services) giving consideration to the Authority's Equity, Diversity and Inclusion toolkit as published on the Authority's website or provided to the Supplier from time to time.

32.3 The Supplier must take all necessary steps, and inform the Authority of the steps taken, to prevent anything that is considered to be unlawful discrimination by any court or tribunal, or the Equality and Human Rights Commission (or any successor organisation) when working on this Contract.

32.4 The Supplier must use Good Industry Practice to ensure that there is no slavery or human trafficking in its supply chains and must notify the Authority immediately if it becomes aware of any actual or suspected incidents of slavery or human trafficking in its supply chains.

- 32.5 The Supplier must at all times conduct its business in a manner that is consistent with any anti-slavery policy of the Authority and shall provide to the Authority any reports or other information that the Authority may request as evidence of the Supplier's compliance with this clause 32.4 and/or as may be requested or otherwise required by the Authority in accordance with any Authority anti-slavery policy.

33 Health and safety

- 33.1 The Supplier must perform its obligations meeting the requirements of:
- 33.1.1 all applicable Law regarding health and safety;
 - 33.1.2 the Authority's current health and safety policy, as provided to the Supplier, to the extent that Supplier Staff are located at any Authority premises in the course of performing the Services under this Contract.

34 Environment

- 34.1 The Supplier must ensure that Supplier Staff are aware of and comply with the Environmental Policy.

35 Tax

- 35.1 The Supplier must not breach any tax or social security obligations and must enter into a binding agreement to pay any late contributions due, including where applicable, any interest or any fines.
- 35.2 Where the Supplier or any Supplier Staff are liable to be taxed or to pay National Insurance contributions in the UK relating to payment received under this Contract, the Supplier must both:
- 35.2.1 comply with the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 and all other statutes and regulations relating to income tax, the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 (including IR35) and National Insurance contributions; and
 - 35.2.2 indemnify the Authority against any Income Tax, National Insurance and social security contributions and any other liability, deduction, contribution, assessment or claim arising from or made during or after the Term in

connection with the provision of the Services by the Supplier or any Supplier Staff.

36 Conflict of interest

- 36.1 The Supplier must take action to ensure that neither the Supplier nor the Supplier Staff are placed in the position of an actual or potential Conflict of Interest.
- 36.2 The Supplier must promptly notify and provide details to the Authority if a Conflict of Interest happens or is expected to happen.
- 36.3 The Authority can terminate this Contract immediately by giving notice in writing to the Supplier or take any steps it thinks are necessary where there is or may be an actual or potential Conflict of Interest.

37 Reporting a breach of this Contract

- 37.1 As soon as it is aware of it, the Supplier and Supplier Staff must report to the Authority any actual or suspected breach of:
 - 37.1.1 Law; or
 - 37.1.2 clauses 31 to 36 (inclusive).
- 37.2 The Supplier must not retaliate against any of the Supplier Staff who in good faith report a breach listed in clause 37.1 to the Authority or a Prescribed Person.

38 Resolving disputes

- 38.1 If there is a Dispute, nominated senior representatives of each Party who have authority to settle the Dispute will, within 28 days of a written request from the other Party, meet in good faith to resolve the Dispute.
- 38.2 If the Dispute is not resolved at that meeting, the Parties can attempt to settle it by mediation using the Centre for Effective Dispute Resolution (“CEDR”) Model Mediation Procedure current at the time of the Dispute. If the Parties cannot agree on a mediator, the mediator will be nominated by CEDR. If either Party does not wish to use, or continue to use mediation, or mediation does not resolve the Dispute, the Dispute must be resolved using clauses 38.3 to 38.5.

38.3 Unless the Authority refers the Dispute to arbitration using clause 38.4, the Parties irrevocably agree that the courts of England and Wales have the exclusive jurisdiction to:

38.3.1 determine the Dispute; and/or

38.3.2 grant interim remedies, or any other provisional or protective relief.

38.4 The Supplier agrees that the Authority has the exclusive right to refer any Dispute to be finally resolved by arbitration under the London Court of International Arbitration Rules current at the time of the Dispute. There will be only one arbitrator. The seat or legal place of the arbitration will be London and the proceedings will be in English.

38.5 The Authority has the right to refer a Dispute to arbitration even if the Supplier has started or has attempted to start court proceedings under clause 38.3, unless the Authority has agreed to the court proceedings or participated in them. Even if court proceedings have started, the Parties must do everything necessary to ensure that the court proceedings are stayed in favour of any arbitration proceedings if they are started under clause 38.4.

38.6 The Supplier cannot suspend the performance of this Contract during any Dispute.

38.7 To the extent that a Dispute relates to whether or not the Supplier has complied with a Condition of Recognition and/or requirement of Ofqual Recognition, the Parties agree that they shall request that Ofqual shall make the final decision as to whether the requirements of that Condition of Recognition and/or Ofqual Recognition have been met and any such decision by Ofqual shall be binding on both Parties.

39 Which law applies

This Contract and any issues arising out of, or connected to it, are governed by English law.

Signed by

WJEC CBAC LIMITED

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

Signature:

[REDACTED]

Signed by

THE INSTITUTE FOR APPRENTICESHIPS AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

Signature:

[REDACTED]

Schedule 1

Definitions and Interpretation

1 Interpretation

- 1.1 In this Contract, unless the context otherwise requires, capitalised expressions shall have the meanings set out in this Schedule 1 (*Definitions and Interpretation*) or the relevant Schedule in which that capitalised expression appears.
- 1.2 If a capitalised expression does not have an interpretation in this Schedule or any other Schedule, it shall, in the first instance, be interpreted in accordance with the common interpretation within the relevant market sector where appropriate. Otherwise, it shall be interpreted in accordance with the dictionary meaning.
- 1.3 In this Contract, unless the context otherwise requires:
- 1.3.1 the singular includes the plural and vice versa;
 - 1.3.2 reference to a gender includes the other gender and the neuter;
 - 1.3.3 references to a person include an individual, company, body corporate, corporation, unincorporated association, firm, partnership or other legal entity or Crown Body;
 - 1.3.4 references to a legal entity (other than the Supplier) shall include unless otherwise expressly stated any statutory successor to such entity and/or the relevant functions of such entity, and references to the Department shall include, where relevant, the ESFA;
 - 1.3.5 a reference to any Law includes a reference to that Law as amended, extended, consolidated or re-enacted from time to time;
 - 1.3.6 any reference to this Contract or to any other document shall include any variation, amendment or supplement to such document;
 - 1.3.7 the words “**including**”, “**other**”, “**in particular**”, “**for example**” and similar words shall not limit the generality of the preceding words and shall be construed as if they were immediately followed by the words “**without limitation**”;

- 1.3.8 references to “**writing**” include typing, printing, lithography, photography, display on a screen, electronic and facsimile transmission and other modes of representing or reproducing words in a visible form, and expressions referring to writing shall be construed accordingly;
- 1.3.9 references to “**clauses**” and “**Schedules**” are, unless otherwise provided, references to the clauses of and schedules to the Core Terms and references in any Schedule to parts, paragraphs, annexes and tables are, unless otherwise provided, references to the parts, paragraphs, annexes and tables of the Schedule in which these references appear;
- 1.3.10 references to “**paragraphs**” are, unless otherwise provided, references to the paragraph of the appropriate Schedules unless otherwise provided; and
- 1.3.11 the headings in this Contract are for ease of reference only and shall not affect the interpretation or construction of this Contract.

2 Definitions

- 2.1 In this Contract, unless the context otherwise requires, the following words shall have the following meanings:

“**Academic Year**” means 1 August to 31 July in the following calendar year;

“**Additional Service**” means each additional service listed in Schedule 6 (*Pricing Schedule*) and detailed in Annex 10 to the Service Requirements;

“**Affected Party**” means the party seeking to claim relief in respect of a Force Majeure Event;

“**Affiliates**” means in relation to a body corporate, any other entity which directly or indirectly Controls, is Controlled by, or is under direct or indirect common Control of that body corporate from time to time;

“**Ancillary Materials**” means all information and materials (other than Key Materials) to which the Authority and/or a Future Supplier would require access for use for the Portability Purposes, and any other materials which would be required on or to facilitate succession to a Future Supplier in a seamless manner in relation to the TQ offered or Operated by the Supplier. Ancillary Materials shall include, without limitation:

- (a) Student results including grades;
- (b) statistical analysis for grading (excludes the systems supporting the analysis);
- (c) lists of Providers;
- (d) marked Student evidence (with moderation outcomes);
- (e) documentation which provides an overview or analysis of Student performance (including chief examiner and chief moderator reports), which include but are not limited to, examples of student responses to assessment questions and/or tasks as well as narrative explaining why students did well/ less well on individual items/ components/ subcomponents);
- (f) data on Student credits;
- (g) data on Student appeals;
- (h) data on special considerations for Students;
- (i) the Assessment Strategy;
- (j) Student registrations;
- (k) draft materials in preparation for forthcoming assessments;
- (l) the Key Dates Schedule (in respect of forthcoming assessments);
- (m) lists, with contact details, of people contracted by the Supplier to perform or oversee activities which are necessary for the conduct and quality assurance of assessments for the TQ;
- (n) materials from completed assessments, such as completed Students' examination answer booklets; and
- (o) TQ Live Assessment Materials;

“Approval” means the prior written consent of the Authority and “Approve” and “Approved” shall be construed accordingly;

“Approved Assessment Strategy” shall have the meaning given in Schedule 2 (*Service Requirements*);

“Approved Initial TQ Deliverables” means the Initial TQ Deliverables approved by the Authority in accordance with clause 5.13 (*Developing the TQ and achieving IfATE Approval*) or clause 8.10 or 8.11 (*TQ Changes*) (as the case may be) as such deliverables are reviewed and updated in accordance with this Contract;

“Approved Provider” means an Eligible Provider that has been granted Provider Approval in accordance with clause **7.1** (*Interaction with Providers*) and in respect of which such Provider Approval has not been revoked pursuant to clause **7.2** (*Interaction with Providers*);

“Approved Provider’s Quality Assurance Process” means the quality assurance process referred to in, and meeting the requirements of, the relevant part of the Product Description for the TQ Specification;

“Approved TQ Specification” means the TQ Specification approved by the Authority in accordance with clause 5.13 (*Developing the TQ and achieving IfATE Approval*) or clause **8.10** or **8.11** (*TQ Changes*) (as the case may be);

“Assessment Strategy” means the assessment strategy referred to in, and meeting the requirements of, the Product Description for the Assessment Strategy, which unless otherwise agreed in writing with the Authority must be consistent with the relevant details forming part of the Supplier’s Response;

“Assessors” means any assessor appointed by the Supplier to assess performance by Students in respect of the TQ Live Assessment Materials;

“Audit” means the Authority's right to:

- (a) verify the accuracy of the Charges and any other amounts payable by the Authority (including proposed or actual variations to them in accordance with this Contract);
- (b) verify the costs of the Supplier (including the costs of all Subcontractors and any third party suppliers) in connection with the provision of the Services (including the supply of the Products);
- (c) verify the Supplier's and each Subcontractor's compliance with the applicable Law;
- (d) identify or investigate actual or suspected breach of clauses 31 to **Error! Unknown switch argument.**, impropriety or accounting mistakes or any breach or threatened breach of security and in these circumstances the Authority shall have no obligation to inform the Supplier of the purpose or objective of its investigations;
- (e) verify the Supplier’s compliance with Schedule 9 (*Data Handling and Security Management*);

- (f) identify or investigate any circumstances which may impact upon the financial stability of the Supplier, and/or any Subcontractors and/or its or their ability to provide the Services including to supply the Products;
- (g) obtain such information as is necessary to fulfil the Authority's obligations to supply information for Parliamentary, ministerial, judicial or administrative purposes including the supply of information to the Comptroller and Auditor General;
- (h) review any books of account and the internal contract management accounts kept by the Supplier in connection with this Contract;
- (i) carry out the Authority's internal and statutory audits and to prepare, examine and/or certify the Authority's annual and interim reports and accounts;
- (j) enable the National Audit Office to carry out an examination pursuant to Section 6(1) of the National Audit Act 1983 of the economy, efficiency and effectiveness with which the Authority has used its resources;
- (k) verify the accuracy and completeness of any Management Information delivered or required by this Contract; and/or
- (l) obtain such information as is necessary to undertake a review and/or assessment of the performance of the whole or any part of the T Levels Programme;

“Auditor” means any, or any combination, of:

- (m) the Authority's internal and external auditors;
- (n) the Authority's statutory or regulatory auditors;
- (o) the Comptroller and Auditor General, its staff and/or any appointed representatives of the National Audit Office;
- (p) HM Treasury or the Cabinet Office;
- (q) any party formally appointed by the Authority to carry out audit or similar review functions; and
- (r) successors or assigns of any of the above;

“Authority Authorised Representative” means the person referred to in Schedule 20 as such or the representative appointed by the Authority from time to time in relation to this Contract as notified in writing (which may, in the case of this specific notification, be by email only) to the Supplier;

“Authority Procedural Review” means the Authority’s procedural review process as published on the Authority’s web site from time to time;

“Awarding Organisation” means a body recognised by Ofqual as a provider of certain qualifications;

“Background IPR” means any IPR owned by a party prior to the Effective Date or created or developed by a party independently of this Contract, but does not include IPR in Key Materials;

“Beneficiary” means a Party having (or claiming to have) the benefit of an indemnity under this Contract;

“Breach of Security” means the occurrence of:

- (s) any unauthorised access to or use of the Services and/or the Products, the sites from which the Services are delivered (and/or where the Products are developed, and/or stored) and/or any information and communication technology, information or data (including the Confidential Information and the IfATE Data) used by the Authority and/or the Supplier in connection with this Contract; and/or
- (t) the loss and/or unauthorised disclosure of any information or data (including the Confidential Information and the IfATE Data), including any copies of such information or data, used by the Authority and/or the Supplier in connection with this Contract,

in either case as may be more particularly set out in the Security Policy;

“Business Continuity Plan” means the business continuity and disaster recovery plan relating to this Contract, as set out in Schedule 10 (*Business Continuity*);

“Cabinet Office Statement” means the Cabinet Office Statement of Practice – Staff Transfers in the Public Sector 2000 (as revised 2013) as may be amended or replaced;

“Change in Law” means any change in Law which impacts on the provision of the Services (including the supply of the Products) and/or the performance of this Contract which comes into force after the Effective Date;

“Charges” means:

- (a) the Development Charge payable to the Supplier by the Authority in accordance with clause 4.1.1 (*Pricing and payments*);

- (b) in respect of any Exclusive TQ Change, the amount (exclusive of any applicable VAT) agreed or determined in respect of such Exclusive TQ Change in accordance with clause 8.6 (*TQ Changes*); and
- (c) in respect of any other Variation, the amount agreed pursuant to clause 28 (*Changing this Contract*) in respect of such Variation;

“Claim” means any claim for which it appears that a Beneficiary is, or may become, entitled to indemnification under this Contract;

“Cohort” means a group of Students who are registered by an Approved Provider with the Supplier to commence the TQ in the relevant Academic Year;

“Commercially Sensitive Information” means the Confidential Information listed in Schedule 18 (*Commercially Sensitive Information*) comprising of commercially sensitive information relating to the Supplier, its IPR or its business which the Supplier has indicated to the Authority that, if disclosed by the Authority, would cause the Supplier significant commercial disadvantage or material financial loss;

“Comparable Supply” means the supply of services to the Authority or another customer or client of the Supplier that are the same as or similar to the Services (including the supply of products that are the same as or similar to the Products) including services relating to qualifications in England outside the T Levels Programme;

“Conditions of Recognition” means the conditions of Ofqual Recognition imposed on the Supplier by Ofqual including any general level conditions, qualification level conditions, subject level conditions and special conditions;

“Confidential Information” means, subject to clause 19.8 (*What must be kept confidential*), any information, however it is conveyed, that relates to the business, affairs, developments, trade secrets, Know-How, personnel and suppliers of the Authority or the Supplier, including IPRs, together with information derived from the above, and any other information clearly designated as being confidential (whether or not it is marked as **“confidential”**) or which ought reasonably to be considered to be confidential. Confidential Information shall not include Student Related Data;

“Conflict of Interest” means a conflict between the financial or personal duties of the Supplier or the Supplier Staff and the duties owed to the Authority under this Contract, in the reasonable opinion of the Authority. This includes where:

- (a) the Supplier's interests in any activity undertaken by the Supplier, on its behalf, or by an Affiliate of the Supplier have the potential to lead the Supplier to act contrary to the Supplier's interests in the development, delivery and award of the TQ in accordance with the Conditions of Recognition;
- (b) a person who is connected to the development, delivery or award of the TQ by the Supplier has interests in any other activity which have the potential to lead that person to act contrary to his or her interests in that development, delivery or award in accordance with the Conditions of Recognition, or
- (c) an informed and reasonable observer would conclude that either of these situations was the case;

“Continuing Activities” means activities of the Supplier under this Contract in relation to the TQ which continue following the end of the second Academic Year for the final Exclusive Cohort, such as retakes, appeals, and ongoing records management;

“Contract” means this contract;

“Contract Month” means each calendar month, provided that:

- (a) the first Contract Month shall commence on and from the Effective Date and shall end on the last day of the calendar month in which the Effective Date occurs; and
- (b) the last Contract Month shall commence on and from the first day of the calendar month in which the End Date occurs and shall end on the End Date;

“Contract Period” means the period for which this Contract would remain in force (taking into account any current Extension Period) if not terminated earlier;

“Control” means the possession by a person, directly or indirectly, of the power to direct or cause the direction of the management and/or policies of the other person (whether through the ownership of voting shares, by contract or otherwise) and **“Controlled”** shall be construed accordingly;

“Controller” has the same meaning as in the GDPR;

“Core Terms” means the terms set out in the main body of this Contract;

“Critical Service Failure” means:

- (a) the Ofqual Recognition of the Supplier to make the TQ available to Approved Providers for delivery to Students is withdrawn;

- (b) a failure by the Supplier to make the Final Submission by the Final Approval Milestone Date or the failure of any Final Submission (or Final Re-Submission) to meet the requirements necessary to achieve IfATE Approval (in each case other than where such failure results from a breach of this Contract by the Authority);
- (c) a failure by the Supplier to make a Final Re-Submission within the time period required by clause 5.13.2(*Developing the TQ and achieving IfATE Approval*) (other than where such failure results from a breach of this Contract by the Authority);
- (d) the Authority withdraws IfATE Approval (having previously awarded IfATE Approval) in accordance with this Contract;
- (e) any failure by the Supplier to perform a Designated Action within the specified timeframe for that Designated Action (other than where such failure results from a breach of this Contract by the Authority);
- (f) any Supplier Termination Event which has occurred in respect of the Supplier in its role as an Awarding Organisation for any part of the T Levels Programme outside this Contract;
- (g) any Breach of Security which either (i) results in material personal data being lost or compromised or shared without authorisation; or (ii) is not notified to the Authority promptly (and in any event within one Working Day);
- (h) the Supplier breaches its obligations relating to the confidentiality of assessment papers (prior to the relevant assessment date) and/or Student results (prior to the relevant publication date); and
- (i) any other event, matter or circumstance which is expressed to be (or deemed to be) a Critical Service Failure in this Contract;

“Crown Body” means the government of the United Kingdom (including the Northern Ireland Assembly and Executive Committee, the Scottish Executive and the National Assembly for Wales), including government ministers and government departments and bodies, persons, commissions or agencies from time to time carrying out functions on its behalf;

“Data Protection Legislation” means:

- (a) the GDPR;
- (b) the Data Protection Act 2018 to the extent that it relates to processing of personal data and privacy; and
- (c) all applicable Law about the processing of personal data and privacy;

“Default” means any breach of the obligations of the Supplier (including abandonment of this Contract in breach of its terms) or any other default (including material default), act, omission, negligence or statement of the Supplier, of its Subcontractors or any Supplier Staff howsoever arising in connection with or in relation to the subject-matter of this Contract and in respect of which the Supplier is liable to the Authority;

“Deliverable” means all information and data the Supplier creates, identifies for use, or uses as part of or for the Operation of the TQ, including Products and Management Information;

“Department” means the Secretary of State for Education;

“Designated Action” means an action which the Authority requires the Supplier to take within a specified timeframe to obtain and/or maintain IfATE Approval and/or to ensure ongoing compliance of the Supplier with the terms of this Contract and such action may include:

- (a) working in a prescribed way with Authority personnel and/or a third party appointed by the Authority to achieve certain specified performance and/or progress improvements;
- (b) taking appropriate remedial actions in the event that any Initial Development Services and/or interim Products provided during the Development Phase are not in line with the trajectory set out in the Implementation and Delivery Plan;
- (c) temporarily suspending and/or restricting any elements (in full or part) of the Services (including the supply of any Products);
- (d) complying with increased performance monitoring, provision of information and/or increased audit;
- (e) complying with any reasonable instructions of the Authority to help to mitigate actual and/or potential risks associated with delivery of the T Levels Programme; and/or
- (f) providing reasonable cooperation to other Awarding Organisations and third party suppliers of the Authority appointed in connection with the T Levels Programme;

“Development Charge” means the amount (exclusive of any applicable VAT) referred to as the “Qualification development charge” in Schedule 6 (*Pricing Schedule*);

“Development Phase” – The period between commencement of the Contract and the Approval of the TQ, being the period during which the TQ is developed by the Supplier;

“Development Phase Report” means the report referred to in the second row of the first column in the Table in Annex 9 to the Service Requirements and containing the information set out in the second row of the second column of that Table;

“Devolved Administration” means the government of Scotland, Northern Ireland and/or Wales;

“Disclosing Party” means the Party directly or indirectly providing Confidential Information to the other Party in accordance with clause 19 (*What must be kept confidential*);

“Dispute” means any claim, dispute or difference which arises out of or in connection with this Contract or in connection with the negotiation, existence, legal validity, enforceability or termination of this Contract, whether the alleged liability shall arise under English law or under the law of some other country and regardless of whether a particular cause of action may successfully be brought in the English courts;

“Dispute Resolution Procedure” means the dispute resolution procedure set out in clause 38 (*Resolving disputes*);

“Documentation” means descriptions of the Services (including the Products) and KPIs, technical specifications, user manuals, training manuals, operating manuals, process definitions and procedures, system environment descriptions and all such other documentation (whether in hardcopy or electronic form) that is required to be supplied by the Supplier to the Authority under this Contract as:

- (d) would reasonably be required by a competent third party capable of Good Industry Practice contracted by the Authority to develop, configure, build, deploy, run, maintain, upgrade and test the individual systems that are utilised to supply the Services or Products;
- (e) is required by the Supplier in order to supply the Services or Products; and/or
- (f) has been or shall be generated for the purpose of supplying the Services or Products;

“Early Exit” means any termination of this Contract that occurs prior to the Supplier achieving IfATE Approval;

“Effective Date” means the date on which the last Party to sign has signed this Contract;

“Effective Date of Variation” means the date on which the Variation Form comes into effect;

“EIRs” means the Environmental Information Regulations 2004;

“Eligible Provider” means any Provider referred to in the list referenced in Part 1 of Annex 8 to the Service Requirements in respect of the relevant Cohort, as such list may be updated from time to time by the Authority, or notified in writing to the Supplier in accordance with Part 2 of Annex 8 to the Service Requirements;

“Emergency Exit” means any termination of this Contract other than an Early Exit that is a:

- (g) termination of the whole or part of this Contract prior to the Expiry Date (as extended by any Extension Period); or
- (h) wrongful termination or repudiation of this Contract by either Party;

“Employee Liability” means all claims, actions, proceedings, orders, demands, complaints, investigations (save for any claims for personal injury which are covered by insurance) and any award, compensation, damages, tribunal awards, fine, loss, order, penalty, disbursement, payment made by way of settlement and costs, expenses and legal costs reasonably incurred in connection with a claim or investigation including in relation to the following:

- (i) redundancy payments including contractual or enhanced redundancy costs, termination costs and notice payments;
- (j) unfair, wrongful or constructive dismissal compensation;
- (k) a failure to comply with TUPE;
- (l) compensation for discrimination on grounds of sex, race, disability, age, religion or belief, gender reassignment, marriage or civil partnership, pregnancy and maternity or sexual orientation or claims for equal pay;
- (m) compensation for less favourable treatment of part-time workers or fixed term employees;
- (n) outstanding debts and unlawful deduction of wages including any PAYE and National Insurance in relation to payments made by the Authority or the Replacement Supplier to a Transferring Supplier Employee which would have been payable by the Supplier or the Subcontractor if such payment should have been made prior to the Service Transfer Date and also including any payments arising in respect of pensions;
- (o) claims whether in tort, contract or statute or otherwise;
- (p) any investigation by the Equality and Human Rights Commission or other enforcement, regulatory or supervisory body and of implementing any requirements which may arise from such investigation;

“Employer” means any employer who has or is likely to employ Students who have successfully obtained a T Level qualification;

“Employer and Provider Engagement Strategy” means a clear and detailed strategy detailing the approach to engaging with Employers and Providers in relation to the design, development, delivery, validation and update of the TQ and the Services, including the approach to sharing early and/or amended drafts of the Initial TQ Deliverables and TQ Deliverables with Employers and Providers (as applicable);

"Employer Set Project Grade Exemplar Responses" means actual marked examples of Students' assessment evidence, selected after awarding, as referred to in Service Requirement 5.1, which; meet the requirements for grade A and grade E; are produced (and reviewed each Academic Year) in consultation with Employers; and are accompanied by an explanatory commentary;

"Employer Set Project Guide Exemplar Responses" means indicative guide examples of Students' assessment evidence as referred to in Service Requirement 5.1, which; the Supplier judges would be likely to meet the minimum requirements for grade A and grade E; are produced in consultation with Employers; and are accompanied by an explanatory commentary;

“End Date” means the earlier of:

- (a) the Expiry Date (as extended by any Extension Period implemented by the Authority under clause 15 (*Ending or extending this Contract*) or as reduced by the Authority in accordance with clause 14.3.2 (*What may happen if there are issues with your provision of the Services*); or
- (b) if this Contract is terminated before the date specified in (a) above, the date of termination of this Contract;

“Enhanced Entry Fee” shall have the meaning given in paragraph 2.3 of Schedule 6A (Adaptive Pricing);

“Entry Fee” shall have the meaning as referred to at subsection (a) of the definition of Fees;

"Entry Transition Period" means the period from the Effective Date of this Contract to the End Date of the Authority's Contract with the Former Supplier, eg from the point when the Supplier has been awarded a contract for provision of the TQ, but a contract with the Former Supplier remains in place for existing Students;

“Entry Transition Plan” means the plan produced as part of the Supplier’s Tender, and included in Schedule 5 (*Supplier’s Response*), where relevant, and updated by the Supplier as contemplated by Schedule 4 (*Co-Operation*);

“Environmental Policy” means to conserve energy, water, wood, paper and other resources, reduce waste and phase out the use of ozone depleting substances and minimise the release of greenhouse gases, volatile organic compounds and other substances damaging to health and the environment, including any written environmental policy of the Authority;

“Equality and Human Rights Commission” means the UK Government body named as such as may be renamed or replaced by an equivalent body from time to time;

“ESFA” means the Education and Skills Funding Agency;

“Exclusive Cohort” has the meaning given in clause 2.2 (*Appointment and exclusivity*);

“Exclusive TQ Change” means:

- (q) the addition of one or more new Occupational Specialist Component(s) which are to be added to the TQ following the Initial Content Date; and/or
- (r) the removal of one or more Occupational Specialist Component(s); and/or
- (s) a TQ Change which is requested by the Authority as a result of revision to a relevant Standard arising out of a statutory review of such Standard by the Authority under section A2D3 of the Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009;

“Exemplification Materials” means the Guide Standard Exemplification Materials and the Grade Standard Exemplification Materials;

“Exit Information” has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.2 of Schedule 12 (*Exit Management*);

“Exit Plan” means the plan produced and updated by the Supplier during the Term in accordance with paragraphs 1 and 2 of Schedule 12 (*Exit Management*);

“Expiry Date” means 2 years following expiry of the final Academic Year for the final Exclusive Cohort;

“Extension Entry Fee” shall have the meaning given in paragraph 3.1.2 of Schedule 6A (*Adaptive Pricing*);

“Extension Period” means a period equal to that required to provide the Services (including the supply of any Products) to extend the contract –

- (a) for one further Cohort, such period to commence at the start of the Academic Year immediately following the end of the Academic Year in which the fifth Exclusive Cohort commences the TQ; and, at the Authority’s discretion;
- (b) for a second further Cohort, such period to commence at the start of the Academic Year immediately following the end of the Academic Year in which the sixth Exclusive Cohort commences the TQ; and at the Authority’s discretion;
- (c) for a third further Cohort, such a period to commence at the start of the Academic Year immediately following the end of the Academic Year in which the seventh Exclusive Cohort commences the TQ;

“Extension Review” shall have the meaning given in paragraph 1.1.2 of Schedule 6A (Adaptive Pricing);

“Fees” means:

- (a) in respect of the provision of the Provider Services (other than the Additional Services), the amount (exclusive of any applicable VAT) referred to as “Entry fee” in Schedule 6 (*Pricing Schedule*) payable per registered Student to the Supplier by the Approved Providers in accordance with clause 4.1.2 (*Pricing and payments*); and
- (b) the Additional Services, the amount (exclusive of any applicable VAT) applicable to the relevant Additional Service as set against that Additional Service in Schedule 6 (*Pricing Schedule*) payable to the Supplier by the Approved Providers in accordance with clause 4.1.2 (*Pricing and payments*);
- (c) in each case, as such fees are adjusted in accordance with clauses 4.12 and 4.13 (*Pricing and payments*);

“First Extension” shall have the meaning given in paragraph 3.1 of Schedule 6A (Adaptive Pricing);

“Final Approval Milestone” means the Milestone set out in the third row of the Table in Annex 7 to the Service Requirements;

“Final Approval Milestone Date” means the date set out against the Final Approval Milestone in the second column of the Table at Annex 7 to the Service Requirements;

“Final Milestone Payment” means an amount equal to 30% of the Development Charge;

“Final Re-Submission” means the relevant documentation and/or additional information that the Supplier is required to re-submit in accordance with clause 5.13.2 (*Developing the TQ and achieving IfATE Approval*);

“Final Submission” means the Submission applicable to the Final Approval Milestone;

“Final Updated Projection” shall have the meaning given in paragraph 3.1.1 of Schedule 6A (Adaptive Pricing);

“FOIA” means the Freedom of Information Act 2000 as amended from time to time and any subordinate legislation made under that Act from time to time together with any guidance and/or codes of practice issued by the Information Commissioner or relevant Government department in relation to such legislation;

“Force Majeure Event” means, subject to clause 24.4 (*Circumstances beyond either Party’s control*), any event outside the reasonable control of either Party affecting its performance of its obligations under this Contract arising from acts, events, omissions, happenings or non-happenings beyond its reasonable control and which are not attributable to any wilful act, neglect or failure to take reasonable preventative action by that Party, including acts of God, riots, war or armed conflict, acts of terrorism, acts of government, local government or regulatory bodies, fire, flood, storm or earthquake, or disaster but excluding any industrial dispute relating to the Supplier or the Supplier Staff or any other failure in the Supplier’s or a Subcontractor’s supply chain;

“Force Majeure Notice” means a written notice served by the Affected Party on the other Party stating that the Affected Party believes that there is a Force Majeure Event;

“Former Supplier” means the Awarding Organisation that is operating or operated the T Level technical education qualification under the Original Contract;

“Former Supplier’s TQ” means a technical education qualification forming part of the T Levels Programme which is replaced by the TQ which is the subject of this Contract;

“Former Supplier’s TQ Specification” means the Specification of Content, the Scheme of Assessment and the Approved Provider’s Quality Assurance Process, designed, developed and delivered by a Former Supplier that meets all of the requirements of the Product Description for the TQ Specification; including any TQ Changes required by the Authority notified to the Former Supplier;

“Future Supplier” means any Awarding Organisation appointed, at any point in the future and including any Replacement Supplier, to operate one or more T Level technical education qualifications by or at the direction of the Authority from time to time, and where the Authority is operating a T Level technical education qualification, shall also include the Authority;

“GDPR” means the General Data Protection Regulation (Regulation (EU) 2016/679);

“General Change in Law” means a Change in Law where the change is of a general legislative nature (including taxation or duties of any sort affecting the Supplier) or which also affects and/or relates to a Comparable Supply;

“Good Industry Practice” means standards, practices, methods and procedures conforming to the Law and the exercise of the degree of skill and care, diligence, prudence and foresight which would reasonably and ordinarily be expected from a skilled and experienced person or body engaged within the relevant industry or business sector;

“Grade Standard Exemplification Materials” means the exemplification materials referred to in, and meeting the requirements of, the relevant part of the Product Description for the Exemplification Materials;

“Guide Standard Exemplification Materials” means the exemplification materials referred to in, and meeting the requirements of, the relevant part of the Product Description for the Exemplification Materials and Approved by the Authority;

“IfATE Approval” means approval by the Authority pursuant to section -A2D3 of the Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 for the TQ to be made available to Approved Providers and/or Students based on the TQ meeting the requirements of paragraph 2.1 or 2.3 of Part 1 of the Services Requirements as applicable to the satisfaction of the Authority;

“IfATE Data” means:

- (a) the data, text, drawings, diagrams, images or sounds (together with any database made up of any of these) which are embodied in any electronic, magnetic, optical or tangible media, including any of the Authority's Confidential Information, and which:
 - (i) are supplied to the Supplier by or on behalf of the Authority; or
 - (ii) the Supplier is required to generate, process, store or transmit pursuant to this Contract;
- (b) any Personal Data for which the Authority is the Controller; or

(c) Student Related Data;

“Impact Assessment” means an assessment of the impact of a Variation request completed in good faith, including:

- (d) details of the impact of the proposed Variation on the Services (including the supply of the Products) and the Supplier's ability to meet its other obligations under this Contract;
- (e) details of the cost of implementing the proposed Variation;
- (f) details of the ongoing costs required by the proposed Variation when implemented, including any increase or decrease in the Charges and/or the Fees (as applicable), any alteration in the resources and/or expenditure required by either Party and any alteration to the working practices of either Party;
- (g) a timetable for the implementation, together with any proposals for the testing of, the Variation; and
- (h) such other information as the Authority may reasonably request in (or in response to) the Variation request;

“Implementation and Delivery Plan” means the outline Implementation and Delivery Plan prepared by the Supplier as part of the Supplier's Response for implementation of the Services and supply of the Products (including to meet the Milestones) and which, as at the Effective Date, is set out in Schedule 3 (*Implementation*), as such plan is, subject to paragraph 2.5 of Part 1 of the Service Requirements, developed and amended from time to time to fully meet the requirements of the Product Description for the “Implementation and Delivery Plan”;

“Inclusive TQ Change” means any TQ Change that is not an Exclusive TQ Change;

“Indemnifier” means a Party from whom an indemnity is sought under this Contract;

“Information Commissioner” means the UK's independent authority which deals with ensuring information relating to rights in the public interest and data privacy for individuals is met, whilst promoting openness by public bodies;

“Initial Content Date” has the meaning given in clause 8.2 (*TQ Changes*);

“Initial Development Services” shall have the meaning given in paragraph 2.1 of Part 1 of the Service Requirements;

“Initial Projection” shall have the meaning given in paragraph 2.3 of Schedule 6A (Adaptive Pricing);

“Initial TQ Deliverables” means each of:

- (i) The TQ Specification;
- (j) TQ Specimen Assessment Materials;
- (k) the Provider Approval Criteria; and
- (l) the Assessment Strategy;

“Insolvency Event” means:

- (a) in respect of a company:
 - (i) a proposal is made for a voluntary arrangement within Part I of the Insolvency Act 1986 or of any other composition scheme or arrangement with, or assignment for the benefit of, its creditors; or
 - (ii) a shareholders' meeting is convened for the purpose of considering a resolution that it be wound up or a resolution for its winding-up is passed (other than as part of, and exclusively for the purpose of, a bona fide reconstruction or amalgamation); or
 - (iii) a petition is presented for its winding up (which is not dismissed within fourteen (14) Working Days of its service) or an application is made for the appointment of a provisional liquidator or a creditors' meeting is convened pursuant to section 98 of the Insolvency Act 1986; or
 - (iv) a receiver, administrative receiver or similar officer is appointed over the whole or any part of its business or assets; or
 - (v) an application order is made either for the appointment of an administrator or for an administration order, an administrator is appointed, or notice of intention to appoint an administrator is given; or
 - (vi) it is or becomes insolvent within the meaning of section 123 of the Insolvency Act 1986; or
 - (vii) being a “small company” within the meaning of section 382(3) of the Companies Act 2006, a moratorium comes into force pursuant to Schedule A1 of the Insolvency Act 1986; or
- (b) in respect of an individual or partnership, any event analogous to those listed in limbs (a) (i) to (vii) (inclusive) occurs in relation to that individual or partnership; or

- (c) any event analogous to those listed in limbs (a) (i) to (vii) (inclusive) occurs under the law of any other jurisdiction;

“Intellectual Property Rights” or “IPR” means:

- (i) copyright, rights related to or affording protection similar to copyright, rights in databases, patents and rights in inventions, semi-conductor topography rights, trade marks, rights in internet domain names and website addresses and other rights in trade or business names, goodwill, designs, Know-How, trade secrets and other rights in Confidential Information;
- (ii) applications for registration, and the right to apply for registration, for any of the rights listed at (a) that are capable of being registered in any country or jurisdiction; and
- (iii) all other rights having equivalent or similar effect in any country or jurisdiction;

“Interim Milestone” means each of the interim Milestones specified in the Table in Annex 7 to the Service Requirements;

“Interim Milestone Payment” means:

- (i) in respect of Interim Milestone 1, an amount equal to 30% of the Development Charge;
- (ii) in respect of the Interim Milestone 2, an amount equal to 40% of the Development Charge;

“IPR Claim” means any claim of infringement or alleged infringement (including the defence of such infringement or alleged infringement) of any IPR, used to provide the Services and/or supply the Products or otherwise provided and/or licensed by the Supplier (or to which the Supplier has provided access) to the Authority in the fulfilment of its obligations under this Contract;

“Issues Log” means the issues log referred to in, and meeting the requirements of, the Product Description for the Issues Log;

“Key Dates Schedule” means a schedule of key dates in relation to the roll-out and operation of the TQ and other technical education qualifications across the T Levels Programme including registration dates and deadlines, assessment dates, and dates for publication of results, which is based on the indicative key dates schedule in Annex 5 to the Service

Requirements and is agreed in relation to the T Levels Programme between Awarding Organisations pursuant to Schedule 4 (Co-operation) and Approved by the Authority;

“Key Materials” means materials the IPR in which the Authority reasonably requires ownership of for the Portability Purposes. Examples of where the Authority may reasonably require ownership of the IPR include because the Authority or a Future Supplier (or, where relevant, a potential Future Supplier) may need to copy or otherwise reproduce such materials (in whole or in part), to supply or communicate the same, or to be able control the use (in whole or in part) of such materials by third parties, or to authorise others to do so.

Key Materials shall include:

- (i) specifications of content for each TQ including core and all specialist components;
- (ii) assessment guidelines (for Providers);
- (iii) quality assurance requirements (for Providers);
- (iv) specimen assessment materials;
- (v) standards exemplification materials;
- (vi) supplementary specimen assessment materials;
- (vii) employer set project guide exemplar responses;
- (viii) employer set project grade exemplar responses;
- (ix) updates or redevelopments of specifications of content;
- (x) updates and redevelopments of any Key Materials; and
- (xi) any materials equivalent to the above to which a Skilled Future Supplier would reasonably require access for the Portability Purposes;

Key Materials shall not include:

- 1. Support Materials, insofar as they are not part of any of the expressly included items listed above;
- 2. question banks, insofar as they are not part of any of the expressly included items listed above and are not developed for the TQ; and
- 3. any systems and platforms used to support the delivery of the TQ, provided that the relevant TQ content or data held in or processed by such systems and/or platforms can be extracted without requiring further processing post-extraction (and the Supplier can demonstrate that they can be so extracted) to enable use of the relevant content and/or data by a Skilled Future Supplier in

conjunction with a non-proprietary or generally commercially available system or platform;

“Key Personnel” means the individuals identified as such in the Annex to Schedule 7 (*Staff (including Key Personnel)*) as at the Effective Date or as amended from time to time in accordance with paragraph 1.2 of Schedule 7 (*Staff (including Key Personnel)*);

“Key Roles” means the roles stated in the Annex to Schedule 7 (*Staff (including Key Personnel)*) as at the Effective Date or as amended from time to time in accordance with paragraph 1.2 of Schedule 7 (*Staff (including Key Personnel)*);

“Key Sub-Contract” means each Sub-Contract with a Key Subcontractor;

“Key Subcontractor” means any Subcontractor:

- (a) which is relied upon to deliver any material part of the Services (including to supply any Products); and/or
- (b) which, in the opinion of the Authority performs (or would perform if appointed) a critical role in the provision of all or any part of the Services (including the supply of any Products),

and which, as at the Effective Date, are listed in Annex 1 to Schedule 8 (*Supply Chain (including approved Subcontractors)*);

“Know-How” means all ideas, concepts, schemes, information, knowledge, techniques, methodology, and anything else in the nature of know-how relating to the Services and/or the Products;

“KPI” means a key performance indicator applicable to the provision of the Services (including the supply of the Products), as set out in the first column of the Table attached at Annex 1 to Schedule 15 (*Monitoring of Performance*);

“KPI Improvement Plan” shall have the meaning given in paragraph 2.2 of Schedule 15 (*Monitoring of Performance*);

“Law” means any law, subordinate legislation within the meaning of Section 21(1) of the Interpretation Act 1978, bye-law, enforceable right within the meaning of Section 2 of the European Communities Act 1972, regulation, order, regulatory policy, mandatory guidance or code of practice, judgment of a relevant court of law, or directives or requirements with which the Supplier is bound to comply;

“Losses” means all losses, liabilities, damages, costs, expenses (including reasonable legal fees), disbursements, costs of investigation, litigation, settlement, judgment, interest and penalties whether arising in contract, tort (including negligence), breach of statutory duty, misrepresentation or otherwise and **“Loss”** shall be interpreted accordingly;

“Management Information” means the management information to be delivered to the Authority by the Supplier, as set out or referred to in Annex 9 to the Service Requirements;

“Mid-term Review” shall have the meaning given in paragraph 1.1.1 of Schedule 6A (Adaptive Pricing);

“Milestone” means an event or task to be performed as part of the provision of the Services (and/or the supply of the Products) by a specific date as described in the first column of the Table in Annex 7 to the Service Requirements;

“Moderation” means the Supplier assessment process designed to ensure that, where Approved Provider marking is undertaken in accordance with the Approved Assessment Strategy, such marking is scrutinised by a Moderator to ensure that it is in line with expected standards and Students’ marks are adjusted where necessary, and **“Moderate”** will be construed accordingly;

“Moderator” means a moderator, external to the Approved Provider, employed or engaged by the Supplier to moderate marking undertaken by assessors employed or engaged by the Approved Provider of Students’ performance in respect of the TQ Live Assessment Materials;

“Month” means a calendar month and **“Monthly”** shall be interpreted accordingly;

“National Insurance” means contributions required by the National Insurance Contributions Regulations 2012 (SI 2012/1868) made under section 132A of the Social Security Administration Act 1992;

“Notified Sub-contractor” means a Sub-contractor to whom Transferring Former Supplier Employees will transfer on a Relevant Transfer Date;

“Occupation” means a set of jobs where the main tasks and duties are characterised by a high degree of similarity, where a “job” is a role connected to a specific employment contract in a workplace;

“Occupational Map” means, for each Route, a map which groups Occupations according to where there is a requirement for shared technical knowledge, skills, and behaviours, and identifies the Occupations for which Standards exist;

“Occupational Standard” means the description of the Occupation and the outcomes (knowledge, skills and behaviours) which a Student will be expected to attain to successfully achieve competence in that Occupation, as approved and published by the Authority;

“Occupational Specialist Component” means each occupational specialist component of the TQ as referred to in the Former Supplier’s TQ Specification and/or if relevant, the Outline Content;

“Ofqual” means the Office of Qualifications and Examinations Regulation, a statutory body created under the Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009, as amended by the Education Act 2011, to regulate qualifications, examinations and assessments in England;

“Ofqual Recognition” means recognition of the Supplier by Ofqual in respect of the TQ under section 132 of the Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009;

“Ongoing Development Services” shall have the meaning given in paragraph 2.3 of Part 1 of the Service Requirements;

“Operate” in relation to a qualification means to provide the Services or a material part of the Services, or services replacing the Services or a material part of the Services, or of an equivalent character to the Services or a material part of the Services in relation to any other qualification (whether a TQ or not); and “Operation” and other cognate terms shall have a corresponding meaning;

“Operational Delivery Report” means the report referred to in the third row of the first column in the Table in Annex 9 to the Service Requirements and containing the information set out in the third row of the second column of that Table;

“Ordinary Exit” means any termination of this Contract (other than an Early Exit) that occurs as a result of the expiry of the Contract on the Expiry Date (as extended by any Extension Period);

“Original Contract” means the contract entered into between the Authority and the Former Supplier for the provision of Services (including the supply of any Products) for the TQ prior to

the Effective Date of this Contract and remains in place until the end of the Entry Transition Period;

“OSC T Level TQ Review” shall mean a review of the viability and sustainability of the OSC T Level TQ. The OSC T Level TQ Review is expected to consider, but not be limited to, the number of Students registered to commence the TQ in any of the Former Supplier’s Exclusive Cohorts.

“Outline Content” means the outline content developed for the TQ by the Authority;

“Parliament” takes its natural meaning as interpreted by Law;

“Party” means the Authority or the Supplier and **“Parties”** means both of them where the context permits;

“Pathway” means a sub-set of a Route, which groups common sets of Occupations into a number of occupational clusters together;

“Performance Monitoring Methodology” means the required evidence and measurement methodology that is to be applied by the Supplier to assess its performance of the relevant part of the Services (including the supply of any Products) to which the KPI in question relates, as such evidence and measurement methodology are set out in the fifth and sixth columns (respectively) of the Table attached at Annex 1 to Schedule 15 (*Monitoring of Performance*);

“Performance Monitoring Period” means the period set out against the relevant KPI in the fourth column of the Table attached at Annex 1 to Schedule 15 (*Monitoring of Performance*);

“Performance Review Meeting” shall have the meaning given in paragraph 3.2 of Schedule 15 (*Monitoring of Performance*);

“Personal Data” means “personal data” (as defined in the GDPR) that are processed under this Contract;

“Portability Purposes” means in order:

- a) to secure a smooth transition to a Skilled Future Supplier;
- b) to enable the Authority to procure a Skilled Future Supplier (including inviting competition and/or tenders), and for a potential Skilled Future Supplier to compete

- openly and effectively in any future competition or tender for, delivery and/or Operation of the TQ currently delivered by the Supplier and/or a Replacement TQ;
- c) to enable a Skilled Future Supplier to deliver and/or Operate the TQ and/or a Replacement TQ; to enable the Authority and/or any Skilled Future Supplier to carry out or have carried out any Continuing Activities; and/or
 - d) to enable a Skilled Future Supplier to supply, to Providers, the TQ and/or Replacement TQ and sufficient information and materials (including Support Materials) for Providers to deliver the TQ in a Transparent manner;

“Post-Results Services” means the Services described in and/or provided pursuant to paragraph 9 of Part 1 of the Service Requirements, including the Additional Services;

“Pre-Delivery Phase” means the period between the Approval of the TQ and the first teaching of the TQ by Providers, being the period during which Supplier and Providers prepare for delivery;

“Prescribed Person” means a legal adviser, an MP or an appropriate body which a whistleblower may make a disclosure to as detailed in 'Whistleblowing: list of prescribed people and bodies', 5 October 2019, available online at:

<https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/blowing-the-whistle-list-of-prescribed-people-and-bodies--2/whistleblowing-list-of-prescribed-people-and-bodies>;

“Processor” has the same meaning as in the GDPR and **“Processing”**; and **“Processed”** shall be interpreted accordingly;

“Product” means each product listed in the first column of the Table in Part 3 of the Service Requirements;

“Product Description” means the description of the Authority’s minimum requirement for the relevant Product set out in the second column of the Table in Part 3 of the Service Requirements, together with such further information, data and/or content as should reasonably be expected by the Supplier having regard to the Authority’s requirements under this Contract and the Supplier’s obligations under clause 3.1 (*How the Services must be supplied*);

“Prohibited Acts” means:

- (a) to directly or indirectly offer, promise or give any person working for or engaged by the Authority or any other public body a financial or other advantage to:

- (i) induce that person to perform improperly a relevant function or activity; or
 - (ii) reward that person for improper performance of a relevant function or activity;
- (b) to directly or indirectly request, agree to receive or accept any financial or other advantage as an inducement or a reward for improper performance of a relevant function or activity in connection with this Contract; or
- (c) committing any offence:
 - (i) under the Bribery Act 2010 (or any legislation repealed or revoked by such Act); or
 - (ii) under legislation or common law concerning fraudulent acts; or
 - (iii) defrauding, attempting to defraud or conspiring to defraud the Authority or other public body; or
- (d) any activity, practice or conduct which would constitute one of the offences listed under (c) above if such activity, practice or conduct had been carried out in the UK;

“Provider” means an organisation that has a grant agreement and/or a contract in place with the ESFA to provide qualifications to Students or that provides such services on a privately funded basis;

“Provider Approval” means approval of the Eligible Provider in accordance with clause 7.1 (*Interaction with Providers*);

“Provider Approval Criteria” means the approval criteria referred to in, and meeting the requirements of, the Product Description for the Provider Approval Criteria;

“Provider Contract” means a contract between an Approved Provider and the Supplier in respect of the TQ meeting the requirements set out in Schedule 17 (*Provider Contract requirements*);

“Provider Services” means the Services, other than the Initial Development Services and the Ongoing Development Services;

“Rate Card” means the Supplier’s rate card as set out in Schedule 6 (*Pricing Schedule*);

“Reasonable Adjustments” shall have the meaning given in SR 2.4 of Service Requirement 2 (as defined in the Service Requirements);

“Recipient Party” means the Party which receives or obtains directly or indirectly Confidential Information;

“Reduced Entry Fee” shall have the meaning given in paragraph 2.4 of Schedule 6A (Adaptive Pricing);

“Reduced Extension Entry Fee” shall have the meaning given in paragraph 3.3 of Schedule 6A (Adaptive Pricing);

“Regulated” means the regulation by Ofqual of a qualification which has been Accredited and **“Regulation”** shall be authorised accordingly;

“Regulations” means the Concession Contracts Regulations 2016;

“Relevant Competence” means being a reasonably skilled and competent Awarding Organisation with access to appropriate tools, systems and platforms to operate technical qualifications;

“Relevant Employees” means those employees whose contracts of employment transfer with effect from the Relevant Transfer Date to the Authority or a Replacement Supplier by virtue of the application of TUPE;

“Relevant Requirements” means all applicable Law relating to bribery, corruption and fraud, including the Bribery Act 2010 and any guidance issued by the Secretary of State for Justice pursuant to section 9 of the Bribery Act 2010;

“Relevant Transfer” means a transfer of employment to which TUPE applies;

“Relevant Transfer Date” means in relation to a Relevant Transfer, the date upon which the Relevant Transfer takes place;

“Reminder Notice” means a written notice sent in accordance with clause 4.8 (*Pricing and payments*) given by the Supplier to the Authority providing notification that payment has not been received on time, which must be addressed to the Authority Authorised Representative, must set out the sum due, must reference this Contract and clause 4 (*Pricing and payments*) and attach a copy of the relevant valid invoice;

“Replacement Subcontractor” means a Subcontractor of the Replacement Supplier to whom Transferring Supplier Employees will transfer on a Service Transfer Date (or any Subcontractor of any such Subcontractor);

“Replacement Services” means any services (including the supply of products) which are the same as or substantially similar to any of the Services and which the Authority receives in substitution for any of the Services following the expiry or termination or Partial Termination of this Contract, whether those services are provided by the Authority internally and/or by any third party;

“Replacement Supplier” means any third party provider of Replacement Services appointed by or at the direction of the Authority from time to time, or where the Authority is providing Replacement Services on its own account, shall also include the Authority;

“Replacement TQ” means a technical education qualification forming part of the T Levels Programme to replace either: (i) the TQ which is the subject of this Contract; or (ii) the equivalent technical qualification which is the subject of a contract with a Future Supplier;

“Request for Information” means a request for information or an apparent request for information relating to this Contract or an apparent request for such information under the FOIA or the EIRs;

“Required Insurances” means the insurances that must be held by the Supplier as required by the Authority meeting the requirements set out in Schedule 19 (*Required Insurances*);

“Resource Plan” means the Resource Plan prepared by the Supplier as part of the Supplier’s Response in relation to the Supplier Staff that shall be utilised (and the manner in which such Supplier Staff shall be utilised) by the Supplier in the performance of the Services and which, as at the Effective Date, is set out in Schedule 3 (*Implementation*), as such plan is, subject to paragraph 2.5 of Part 1 of the Service Requirements, developed and amended from time to time to fully meet the requirements of the Product Description for the “Resource Plan”;

“Re-Submission” shall have the meaning given in clause 5.11.2(i) (*Developing the TQ and achieving IfATE Approval*);

“Risk Register” means the risk register referred to in, and meeting the requirements of, the Product Description for the Risk Register;

“Route” means the broadest category of Occupations in an Occupational Map, typically covering an industrial area;

“Route Panel” means the Authority’s panel responsible for managing the development of the TQ Specification, details of which can be found at:

<https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/t-level-panels-membership>;

“Scheme of Assessment” means the scheme of assessment referred to in, and meeting the requirements of, the relevant part of the Product Description for the TQ Specification;

“Security Policy” means the Authority’s security policy, in force as at the Effective Date (a copy of which has been supplied to the Supplier), as updated from time to time and notified to the Supplier;

“Serious Fraud Office” means the UK Government body named as such as may be renamed or replaced by an equivalent body from time to time;

“Services” means the services as described in the Service Requirements (including the Additional Services);

“Service Failure” shall have the meaning given in paragraph 2.2 of Schedule 15 (*Monitoring of Performance*);

“Service Requirements” means the Authority’s requirements for the Services (including the supply of the Products) as set out in Schedule 2 (*Service Requirements*);

“Service Transfer” means any transfer of the Services (or any part of the Services), for whatever reason, from the Supplier or any Subcontractor to a Replacement Supplier or a Replacement Subcontractor;

“Service Transfer Date” means the date of a Service Transfer;

“Skilled Future Supplier” means a Future Supplier with Relevant Competence;

“Social Value” means the additional social benefits that can be achieved in the delivery of the Contract, set out in the Supplier’s Response and/or Supplier’s Tender;

“Special Consideration” shall have the meaning given in SR 2.5 of Service Requirement 2 (as defined in the Service Requirements);

“Specific Change in Law” means a Change in Law that relates specifically to the business of the Authority and which would not affect a Comparable Supply where the effect of that Specific Change in Law on the Services and/or the Products and/or the performance of this Contract is not reasonably foreseeable at the Effective Date. Any change in any Condition of Recognition shall not be a Specific Change in Law;

“Specification of Content” means the specification of the content referred to in, and meeting the requirements of, the relevant part of the Product Description for the TQ Specification;

“Staffing Information” means in relation to all persons identified on the Supplier’s Provisional Supplier Personnel List or Supplier’s Final Supplier Personnel List, as the case may be, such information as the Authority may reasonably request (subject to all applicable provisions of the Data Protection Legislation), but including in an anonymised format:

- (a) their ages, dates of commencement of employment or engagement, gender and place of work;
- (b) details of whether they are employed, self-employed contractors or consultants, agency workers or otherwise;
- (c) the identity of the employer or relevant contracting Party;
- (d) their relevant contractual notice periods and any other terms relating to termination of employment, including redundancy procedures, and redundancy payments;
- (e) their wages, salaries, bonuses and profit sharing arrangements as applicable;
- (f) details of other employment-related benefits, including (without limitation) medical insurance, life assurance, pension or other retirement benefit schemes, share option schemes and company car schedules applicable to them;
- (g) any outstanding or potential contractual, statutory or other liabilities in respect of such individuals (including in respect of personal injury claims);
- (h) details of any such individuals on long term sickness absence, parental leave, maternity leave or other authorised long term absence;
- (i) copies of all relevant documents and materials relating to such information, including copies of relevant contracts of employment (or relevant standard contracts if applied generally in respect of such employees); and

- (j) any other Employee Liability Information” as such term is defined in regulation 11 of TUPE;

“Stakeholders” means the Authority, the Department, ESFA, Ofqual, Providers, Employers and members of the Route Panels;

“Standards” means the Occupational Standards, consisting of a description of the Occupation and the outcomes (knowledge, skills and behaviours) which a Student will be expected to attain to successfully achieve competence in that Occupation, as approved and published by the Authority;

“Storage Media” means the part of any device that is capable of storing and retrieving data;

“Student” means an individual undertaking (or who wishes to undertake) a formal programme of study with an Approved Provider for the T Level of which the TQ forms part;

“Student Information” means information or data relating to an individual Student whether or not the Student can be identified from that information or data;

“Student Related Data” means any information or data relating to Students (including any Student Information) and/or any Provider which is generated and/or acquired by and/or otherwise comes into the possession of the Supplier and/or any Supplier Staff as a result of the performance of the Supplier’s obligations under this Contract;

“Sub-Contract” means any contract or agreement (or proposed contract or agreement), pursuant to which a third party:

- (a) provides the Services and/or supplies any Products (or any part of them) and/or performs the whole or any part of this Contract;
- (b) provides facilities or services necessary for the provision of the Services and/or the supply of any Products (or any part of them) and/or the performs the whole or any part of this Contract; and/or
- (c) is responsible for the management, direction or control of the provision of the Services and/or supply of any Products (or any part of them) and/or the performance of the whole or any part of this Contract;

“Subcontractor” means any person other than the Supplier (and/or an Assessor who is self-employed or who provides services to the Supplier through that Assessor’s own personal service company), who is a party to a Sub-Contract and the servants or agents of that person;

“Submission” means, in respect of the relevant Milestone, the Products set out against that Milestone in the third column of the Table in Annex 7 to the Service Requirements;

“Submission Date” means, in respect of the relevant Milestone, the date set out against that Milestone in the second column of the Table in Annex 7 to the Service Requirements;

“Submission Issues Log” means the issues log referred to in, and meeting the requirements of, the Product Description for the Submission Issues Log;

“Subsequent Transfer” has the meaning given in paragraph 8.1 of Schedule 12 (*Exit Management*);

“Supplementary Specimen Assessment Materials” means a full suite of sample questions and tasks for the Core Component and Occupational Specialist Component(s) (in addition to the TQ Specimen Assessment Materials), as referred to in Service Requirement 5.1.;

“Supplier Authorised Representative” means the person referred to in Schedule 20 as such or the representative appointed by the Supplier from time to time in relation to this Contract as notified in writing (which may, in the case of this specific notification, be by email only) to the Authority;

“Supplier Personnel” means all employees of the Supplier (and any subcontractor) who are wholly or mainly engaged in or assigned to the provision of the Services or any relevant part of the Services including the development of the Products;

“Supplier Staff” means all directors, officers, employees, agents, consultants and contractors of the Supplier (including any Assessor who is self-employed or who provides services to the Supplier through that Assessor’s own personal service company), any Subcontractor engaged in the performance of the Supplier’s obligations under this Contract and any company or organisation noted in the Supplier’s Tender as forming part of the consortium which submitted the Supplier’s Tender (**“Consortium Member”**) and all directors, officers, employees, agents, consultants and contractors of any such Subcontractor and/or any such Consortium Member engaged in the performance of the Supplier’s obligations under this Contract;

“Supplier’s Final Supplier Personnel List” means a list provided by the Supplier of all Supplier Personnel whose will transfer under TUPE on the Service Transfer Date;

“Supplier’s Provisional Supplier Personnel List” means a list prepared and updated by the Supplier of all Supplier Personnel who are at the date of the list wholly or mainly engaged in or assigned to the provision of the Services or any relevant part of the Services which it is envisaged as at the date of such list will no longer be provided by the Supplier;

“Supplier’s Response” means that part of the Supplier’s Tender (including any method statements) which is at Schedule 5 (*Supplier’s Response*);

“Supplier’s Tender” means the Supplier’s selection questionnaire and tender responses submitted in response to the Authority’s advertisement in the Find a Tender Service (as referred to in the Recitals to this Contract) for a provider of the Services and supplier of the Products, as clarified in writing by the Supplier to the Authority prior to the date of this Contract in response to any request for clarification issued by the Authority;

“Supplier Termination Event” means:

- (a) the Supplier (i) commits a material Default which is irremediable; or (ii) commits a material Default which is capable of remedy, but which has not been remedied by the Supplier within 30 days of being notified in writing to do so by the Authority;
- (b) a Conflict of Interest arises in connection with the delivery of the Services (and/or the supply of the Products) to which no mitigation acceptable to the Authority can be promptly identified;
- (c) where a right of termination is expressly reserved in this Contract;
- (d) the Supplier is in material Default in respect of any data handling and/or security requirements set out in clauses 13, 18, 19 or Schedule 9 (*Data Handling and Security Management*) (where applicable);
- (e) an Insolvency Event occurring in respect of the Supplier
- (f) a change of Control of the Supplier
 - (i) the Authority has given its prior written consent (not to be unreasonably withheld or conditioned) to the particular change of Control, which subsequently takes place as proposed; or
 - (ii) the Authority has not served its notice of objection within 6 months of the later of the date on which the change of Control took place or the date on which the Authority was given notice of the change of Control;
- (g) a material failure by the Supplier to comply with legal obligations in the fields of environmental, social or labour law;

- (h) the departure from the Supplier of any of its senior officers or Key Personnel where the Authority has reasonable grounds to believe that such departure will impact or could potentially impact the delivery of the Services and/or the supply of any Products unless the Authority has not served its notice of objection within 6 months of the date on which the Authority was informed by the Supplier of such departure;
- (i) the Supplier assigns, transfers or otherwise disposes of its rights, obligations and/or liabilities or seeks to assign, transfer or otherwise dispose of its rights, obligations and/or liabilities under the whole or any part of this Contract to a third party in breach of the terms of this Contract (including in breach of the requirements of paragraph 1 of Schedule 8 (*Supply Chain (including approved Subcontractors)*));
- (j) the Supplier is in Default under clause 31.1 (*Preventing Fraud, Bribery and Corruption*);
- (k) the Supplier provided incorrect or misleading information as part of the Supplier's Tender;
- (l) the Supplier or any Subcontractor or Affiliate through its act or omission brings the Authority, the Department and/or the ESFA and/or the T Levels Programme into disrepute and/or diminishes the trust the public places in the Authority, the Department and/or the ESFA;
- (m) Not used
- (n) an occurrence of any of the circumstances in regulations 44(1) (a) to (c) of the Regulations;
- (o) this Contract has been substantially modified in breach of regulation 43(10) of the Regulations;
- (p) the Authority discovers that the Supplier was in one of the situations in regulations 38(8) to 38(10) of the Regulations at the time this Contract was awarded;
- (q) the Court of Justice of the European Union uses Article 258 of the Treaty on the Functioning of the European Union ("**TFEU**") to declare that this Contract should not have been awarded to the Supplier because of a serious breach of the TFEU or the Regulations;
- (r) a Critical Service Failure occurs; or
- (s) the Supplier fails to comply with clause 35.2 (*Tax*) or fails to provide details of steps being taken and mitigating factors pursuant to clause 35.2 (*Tax*) which in the reasonable opinion of the Authority are acceptable;

“Support Materials” means teaching support materials intended for a Provider or Student audience, such as textbooks, and any other materials which the Authority agrees in writing to be Support Materials;

“Target Service Level” means the target performance level set out against the relevant KPI in the third column of the Table attached at Annex 1 to Schedule 15 (*Monitoring of Performance*);

“Technical Qualifications Explanatory Note” means an explanation of TQs, their purpose and how they are delivered;

“Term” means the period commencing on the Effective Date and ending on the End Date;

“Termination Notice” means a written notice of termination given by one Party to the other, notifying the Party receiving the notice of the intention of the Party giving the notice to terminate this Contract on a specified date and setting out the grounds for termination;

“Third Party” means any supplier of services fundamentally the same as the Services (either in whole or in part) immediately before the Effective Date;

“Third Party IPR” means Intellectual Property Rights owned by a third party which is or will be used by the Supplier for the purpose of providing the Services and/or supplying the Products;

“Transferring Former Supplier Employees” means those employees of the Former Supplier to whom TUPE will apply on a Relevant Transfer Date;

“TQ” means the technical education qualification element of the T Level in respect of the Pathway that is (amongst other things) designed, developed and delivered under this Contract;

“TQ Assignment and Licence” means the assignment and licence in respect of certain Intellectual Property Rights in relation to the TQ in the form set out in Schedule 14 (*Form of Assignment and Licence*);

“TQ Change” means any change or variation to the content of the TQ;

“TQ Content Updating Schedule” means the schedule of dates set out in Annex 6 to the Service Requirements (or such other dates as may be agreed by the Authority from time to

time) applicable to the relevant Inclusive TQ Change or Exclusive TQ Change (as the case may be);

“TQ Core Component” means the core component of the TQ referred to in the Former Supplier’s TQ Specification and/or if relevant, the Outline Content;

“TQ Deliverables” means:

- (a) in the period prior to the Supplier making available the Grade Standard Exemplification Materials referred to in paragraph 6.2.2 of Part 1 of the Service Requirements, the Approved Initial TQ Deliverables and the Approved Guide Standard Exemplification Materials; and
- (b) in the period following the Supplier making available the Grade Standard Exemplification Materials referred to in paragraph 6.2.2 of Part 1 of the Service Requirements:
 - (i) the Approved Initial TQ Deliverables; and
 - (ii) the Grade Standard Exemplification Materials,

in each case, as amended in accordance with this Contract;

“TQ Development Meeting” shall have the meaning given in clause 5.4 (*Developing the TQ and achieving IfATE Approval*);

“TQ Live Assessment Materials” shall have the meaning given in Schedule 2 (*Service Requirements*);

“TQ Specification” means the Specification of Content, the Scheme of Assessment and the Approved Provider’s Quality Assurance Process;

“TQ Specimen Assessment Materials” means the specimen assessment materials referred to in, and meeting the requirements of, the Product Description for the TQ Specimen Assessment Materials;

“T Level” means the technical study programme known as a “T Level”;

“T Level Awarding Organisations” shall have the meaning given in paragraph 1.1 of Schedule 4 (*Co-operation*);

“T Level Branding Guidelines” means the Authority’s written guidelines prescribing the permitted form and manner in which the trade marks (the “*Mark*” as defined within the T Level Trade Mark Licence) may be used and setting out how the Supplier branding may be used in relation to materials used in the operation of the TQ or to promote the TQ, a copy of which is set out in the document entitled T Level Branding Guidelines, including any amendments or additions notified by the Authority to the Supplier from time to time, provided that the Authority shall where possible provide reasonable notice in writing to the Supplier of any proposed amendments or additions to such guidelines;

“T Level Panel” means the group of Employers, professionals and practitioners appointed to advise on the content of the T Level of which the TQ forms part;

“T Level Trade Mark Licence” means the trade mark licence granted pursuant to Schedule 16 (*Logos and Trademarks – T Level Trade Mark Licence*);

“T Levels Programme” means the programme of technical education in England managed by the Authority and known as “T Levels”;

“Transferable Contracts” means Sub-Contracts, or other agreements which are necessary to enable the Authority or any Replacement Supplier to provide the Services and/or develop, maintain or supply the Products or the Replacement Services, including all relevant Documentation;

“Transferring Supplier Employee” means those employees whose contract of employment will be transferred to the Authority or a Replacement Supplier pursuant to TUPE on expiry or termination of this Contract;

“Transition Period” means the period from a Replacement Supplier or Future Supplier commencing any aspects of development or delivery of the TQ to the End Date, eg from the point when the Replacement Supplier or Future Supplier has been awarded a contract for provision of the TQ, but while this Contract remains in place for existing Students;

“Transparency Information” has the meaning given to it in clause 20 (*When information can be shared*);

“Transparency Reports” means: (i) the Management Information relating to the Services and performance of this Contract which the Supplier is required to provide to the Authority in accordance with the reporting requirements set out in the Service Requirements; and (ii) the

output of any survey commissioned by the Authority in connection with the performance of the Supplier under this Contract;

“Transparent” means that Students and Employers will regard the TQ delivered by a Future Supplier as materially the same as the TQ delivered and operated by the (existing) Supplier;

“TUPE” means the Transfer of Undertakings (Protection of Employment) Regulations 2006 (2006/246) and/or any other regulations or other legislation enacted for the purpose of implementing or transposing the Acquired Rights Directive (77/187/EEC, as amended by Directive 98/50 EC and consolidated in 2001/23/EC) into English law;

“TUPE Information” has the meaning given in paragraph 8.5 of Schedule 12 (*Exit Management*);

“Updated Projection” shall have the meaning given in paragraph 2.1 of Schedule 6A (Adaptive Pricing);

“Variation” means any variation or change to this Contract which is not an Inclusive TQ Change;

“Variation Form” means the form set out in Schedule 11 (*Change Management*);

“VAT” means value added tax in accordance with the provisions of the Value Added Tax Act 1994; and

“Working Day” means any day other than a Saturday or Sunday or public holiday in England and Wales.

Schedule 2

Service Requirements

The content for this Schedule is contained in separate files at;

S2_GEN2W1_OC_Service_Requirements

S2_A3_GEN2W1_OC_TQ_Spec

Schedule 2

Service Requirements

S2_GEN2W1_OC_Service_Requirements

Schedule 2

Service Requirements

Definitions

In this Service Requirements, the following terms shall have the following meanings:

“Appeal” shall have the meaning given in SR 8.2 in Service Requirement 8;

“Approved Assessment Strategy” means the Assessment Strategy approved by the Authority in accordance with clause 5.13 (*Developing the TQ and achieving IfATE Approval*) or clause 8 (*TQ Changes*) (as the case may be), subject to paragraph 2.6 of Part 1 of the Service Requirements, as amended from time to time in accordance with this Contract;

“Approved Guide Standard Exemplification Materials” means the Guide Standard Exemplification Materials approved by the Authority in accordance with clause 5.13 (*Developing the TQ and achieving IfATE Approval*) subject to paragraph 2.6 of Part 1 of the Service Requirements, as amended from time to time in accordance with this Contract;

“Component” means the TQ Core Component or any Occupational Specialist Component (as the case may be) and **“Components”** shall mean both or all of them (as the context may require);

“Employer Set Project” means a project set collaboratively between the Supplier and Employers, as more particularly referred to in Service Requirement 2;

“External Examination” means each assessment by examination which is:

- (a) set by the Supplier;
- (b) designed to be taken simultaneously by all Students taking the relevant assessment at a time (subject to compliance with the requirements of the Key Dates Schedule for the relevant Academic Year) determined by the Supplier;
- (c) taken under conditions specified by the Supplier (including conditions relating to the supervision of Students taking the relevant assessment and the duration of the assessment); and
- (d) marked by the Supplier.

“First Teach Cohort” means the first group of Students to be assessed on the TQ;

“Guided Learning” means the activity of a Student being taught or instructed by, or otherwise participating in education or training under the immediate guidance or supervision of a lecturer, supervisor, tutor or other appropriate provider of education or training. For these purposes the activity of ‘participating in education or training’ shall be treated as including the activity of being assessed if the assessment takes place under the immediate guidance or supervision of a lecturer, supervisor, tutor or other appropriate provider of education or training;

“Occupational Entry Competence” means that level of competence that:

- (a) signifies that a Student is well-placed to develop full occupational competence, with further support and development, once in employment;
- (b) is as close to full occupational competence as can be reasonably expected of a Student studying the TQ in a classroom-based setting (e.g. in the classroom, workshops simulated working and (where appropriate) supervised working environments); and
- (c) signifies that a Student has achieved the level for a pass in relation to the relevant Occupational Specialist Component;

“Qualification Purpose” means the purpose of the TQ set out in Annex 1 of this Service Requirements;

“Service Definition Table” means the Table set out in Part 2 of this Service Requirements;

“Service Requirement 1” means that part of the Services (including the requirements for and the outcomes to be achieved by the Supplier as a result of the performance of that part of the Services) set out or referred to under the heading of “Service Requirement 1: Designing, developing and managing TQ Content” in the Service Definition Table;

“Service Requirement 2” means that part of the Services (including the requirements for and the outcomes to be achieved by the Supplier as a result of the performance of that part of the Services) set out or referred to under the heading of “Service Requirement 2: Assessment Design and Delivery” in the Service Definition Table;

“Service Requirement 3” means that part of the Services (including the requirements for and the outcomes to be achieved by the Supplier as a result of the performance of that part of the Services) set out or referred to under the heading of “Service Requirement 3: Grading and Awarding” in the Service Definition Table;

“Service Requirement 4” means that part of the Services (including the requirements for and the outcomes to be achieved by the Supplier as a result of the performance of that part of the Services) set out or referred to under the heading of “Service Requirement 4: Provider Approval” in the Service Definition Table;

“Service Requirement 5” means that part of the Services (including the requirements for and the outcomes to be achieved by the Supplier as a result of the performance of that part of the Services) set out or referred to under the heading of “Service Requirement 5: Provider Support” in the Service Definition Table;

“Service Requirement 6” means that part of the Services (including the requirements for and the outcomes to be achieved by the Supplier as a result of the performance of that part of the Services) set out or referred to under the heading of “Service Requirement 6: Student registration and Student entry” in the Service Definition Table;

“Service Requirement 7” means that part of the Services (including the requirements for and the outcomes to be achieved by the Supplier as a result of the performance of that part of the Services) set out or referred to under the heading of “Service Requirement 7: TQ Results” in the Service Definition Table;

“Service Requirement 8” means that part of the Services (including the requirements for and the outcomes to be achieved by the Supplier as a result of the performance of that part of the Services) set out or referred to under the heading of “Service Requirement 8: TQ Post-Results Services” in the Service Definition Table;

“Service Requirement 9” means that part of the Services (including the requirements for and the outcomes to be achieved by the Supplier as a result of the performance of that part of the Services) set out or referred to under the heading of “Service Requirement 9: Reporting” in the Service Definition Table;

“TQ Critical Path Diagram” means the diagram setting out the critical path for the design, development and delivery of the TQ attached at Annex 4 to the Service Requirements;

“TQ Live Assessment Materials” means the live assessment materials referred to in, and meeting the requirements of, the Product Description for the TQ Live Assessment Materials.

Part 1 – Overview of the Service Requirements

1 Introduction

1.1 This Part 1 of this Service Requirements sets out:

- 1.1.1 at paragraph 2, that part of the Services relating to the design, development and delivery of the Initial TQ Deliverables and Guide Standard Exemplification Materials and the review and update of such Initial TQ Deliverables and/or the TQ Deliverables (as the case may be), including the Initial Development Services and the Ongoing Development Services;
- 1.1.2 at paragraph 3, that part of the Services relating to the Provider Approval and monitoring services (as detailed in that paragraph 3);
- 1.1.3 at paragraph 4, that part of the Services relating to the support to be provided to Eligible Providers and Approved Providers (as detailed in that paragraph 4);
- 1.1.4 at paragraph 5, that part of the Services relating to Student registration and Student assessment entry (including Additional Services) (as detailed in that paragraph 5);
- 1.1.5 at paragraph 6, that part of the Services relating to the design and delivery of the TQ Live Assessment Materials (as detailed in that paragraph 6);
- 1.1.6 at paragraph 7, that part of the Services relating to grading and awarding in respect of each Student's performance in respect of the TQ Live Assessment Materials (as detailed in that paragraph 7);
- 1.1.7 at paragraph 8, that part of the Services relating to the provision of results (as detailed in that paragraph 8);
- 1.1.8 at paragraph 9, that part of the Services relating to the provision of Post-Results Services (including Additional Services) (as detailed in that paragraph 9);
- 1.1.9 at paragraph 10, that part of the Services relating to the reporting of Management Information (as detailed in that paragraph 10); and

- 1.1.10 at paragraph 11, such other services as may be necessary to support and/or are associated with the provision of the Services (as detailed in that paragraph 11).
- 1.2 Paragraphs 2 (*Initial TQ Deliverables and development services*) to 9 (*TQ Post-Results Services*) shall be read in conjunction with the TQ Critical Path Diagram.
- 1.3 The Supplier shall design, develop, obtain IfATE Approval for, and deliver to Approved Providers in England, the technical qualification element of the T Level for the relevant Pathway under this Contract, including, without prejudice to its obligations in clause 3.1.8 (*How the Services must be supplied*), performing all of the Services set out in this Service Requirements.
- 1.4 Unless otherwise stated in this Service Requirements, the Supplier shall organise and deliver the Services:
- 1.4.1 to ensure that the activities contemplated by the Key Dates Schedule for the relevant Academic Year and/or the TQ Content Updating Schedule (and which rely on the performance of the whole or any part of the Services) can be carried out and completed in accordance with such Key Dates Schedule and/or the TQ Content Updating Schedule (as the case may be);
- 1.4.2 in accordance with the Implementation and Delivery Plan;
- 1.4.3 in accordance with the Resource Plan;
- 1.4.4 in accordance with the Approved Assessment Strategy; and
- 1.4.5 (at all times) taking into account the aims of the Qualification Purpose.
- 1.5 The Supplier shall, subject to paragraphs 2.5 and 2.6 (*Initial TQ Deliverables and development services*) and paragraph 6.3 (*TQ live assessment design and delivery*) and without prejudice to paragraph 2.1 to 2.4 (*Initial TQ Deliverables and development services*) (inclusive), provide a copy of any Products that are developed, amended, updated and/or supplemented from time to time by the Supplier in accordance with this Contract to the Authority as soon as reasonably practicable following such development, amendment, update and/or supplement.
- 1.6 If there is any conflict and/or inconsistency between the provisions of this Service Requirements and the Conditions of Recognition, the Conditions of Recognition shall prevail.

- 1.7 Without prejudice to paragraph 1.4.1, the Supplier shall organise and deliver the Services to ensure that all applicable parts of the Services are provided at such times and in such manner as shall be necessary to facilitate the delivery of the number of assessment series for the TQ as shall be contemplated by the Key Dates Schedule for the relevant Academic Year, subject always to the provisions of paragraphs 1.8 to 1.10 (inclusive).
- 1.8 The Supplier shall ensure that there shall be at least one, but not more than two, assessment series in each Academic Year in respect of each of the assessments for:
- 1.8.1 the TQ Core Component (comprising the External Examination and the Employer Set Project); and
- 1.8.2 the Occupational Specialist Components.
- 1.9 The Supplier acknowledges that the assessments in each Academic Year for the TQ Core Component and the Occupational Specialist Components referred to in paragraph 1.8 may be, but are not required to be, held in the same assessment series and so therefore can be for example:
- 1.9.1 provided in a single assessment series (encompassing both such assessments for the TQ Core Component and the Occupational Specialist Components); or
- 1.9.2 provided in two assessment series (for each of such assessments for the TQ Core Component and the Occupational Specialist Components) being a total of four assessment series.
- 1.10 The Supplier shall ensure that:
- 1.10.1 each Student takes all of the assessments for the TQ Core Component referred to in paragraph 1.8.1;
- 1.10.2 each Student takes all of the assessments for each individual Occupational Specialist Component referred to in paragraph 1.8.2 in the same assessment series;
- 1.10.3 a Student may, subject to paragraphs 1.10.1 and 1.10.2, take the assessments for the TQ Core Component and the Occupational Specialist Components referred to in paragraph 1.8 in different assessment series (including assessment series in different Academic Years); and

- 1.10.4 its approach to the scheduling of the assessments shall be set out in its Assessment Strategy.

2 Initial TQ Deliverables and development services

Initial Development Services

- 2.1 Without prejudice to the Supplier's obligations in clause 3.1 (*How the Services must be supplied*) and clause 5 (*Developing the TQ and achieving IfATE Approval*), the Supplier shall design, develop and deliver the Initial TQ Deliverables in accordance with (and meeting all of the requirements of):
- 2.1.1 the Product Description for each item forming part of the Initial TQ Deliverables;
 - 2.1.2 the Former Supplier's TQ Specification and/or ,if relevant, the Outline Content;
 - 2.1.3 the requirements set out in the third column of Service Requirement 1, Service Requirement 2, Service Requirement 3 and Service Requirement 4;
 - 2.1.4 the Implementation and Delivery Plan (including the Supplier's obligation to work with and consult (and take into account the outcome of such working with and consultation of) a representative sample of Providers and Employers (as required by that Implementation and Delivery Plan);
 - 2.1.5 the Resource Plan;
 - 2.1.6 the Assessment Strategy; and
 - 2.1.7 Annex 7 (*Initial Development Milestones*) to this Service Requirements,
- and, in each case, to ensure the delivery of a high quality technical education qualification element of the T Level for the relevant Pathway and that the outcomes referred to in the first column of Service Requirement 1, Service Requirement 2, Service Requirement 3 and Service Requirement 4 are achieved (the "**Initial Development Services**").
- 2.2 The Supplier shall procure that, without prejudice to its obligations in clause 5.13.2 (*Developing the TQ and achieving IfATE Approval*), the Initial TQ Deliverables

(meeting all of the requirements of paragraph 2.1) shall be delivered to the Authority on or prior to the Final Approval Milestone Date.

Ongoing Development Services

2.3 The Supplier shall procure that (without prejudice to the Supplier's obligations in clause 3.1 (*How the Services must be supplied*) and clause 5.3 (*Developing the TQ and achieving IfATE Approval*) and notwithstanding the achievement of IfATE Approval in respect of the Initial TQ Deliverables) throughout the Term the TQ Deliverables meet (and continue to meet) all of the requirements of:

- 2.3.1 the Product Description for each item forming part of the TQ Deliverables;
- 2.3.2 the Former Supplier's TQ Specification and, if relevant, the Outline Content;
- 2.3.3 the requirements set out in the third column of Service Requirement 1, Service Requirement 2, Service Requirement 3 and Service Requirement 4;
- 2.3.4 the Implementation and Delivery Plan (including the Supplier's obligation to work with and consult (and take into account the outcome of such working with and consultation of) a representative sample of Providers and Employers (as required by that Implementation and Delivery Plan));
- 2.3.5 the Resource Plan;
- 2.3.6 the Approved Assessment Strategy; and
- 2.3.7 clause 8 (*TQ Changes*) and Annex 6 (*TQ Content Updating Schedule*) to this Service Requirements,

and in each case, to ensure the continued delivery of a high quality technical education qualification element for the T Level for the relevant Pathway and that the outcomes referred to in the first column of Service Requirement 1, Service Requirement 2, Service Requirement 3 and Service Requirement 4 are achieved (the "**Ongoing Development Services**").

2.4 The Supplier shall procure that the TQ Deliverables (as amended, supplemented or replaced in accordance with clause 8 (*TQ Changes*) and Annex 6 (*TQ Content Updating Schedule*) to this Service Requirements) shall be delivered to the Authority

on or prior to the applicable date specified on the Key Dates Schedule for the relevant Academic Year or TQ Content Updating Schedule (as applicable).

Updating the Implementation and Delivery Plan and the Resource Plan

- 2.5 Subject to the provisions of paragraph 3 (*Key Personnel*) of Schedule 7 (*Staff including Key Personnel*), the Parties acknowledge and agree that the Implementation and Delivery Plan and the Resource Plan are intended to be live documents that may need to flex from time to time to ensure the continued successful delivery of the Services to the standards required by this Contract and the Supplier shall, throughout the Term, review, amend and update (as necessary) each of the Implementation and Delivery Plan and the Resource Plan to ensure that such Implementation and Delivery Plan and Resource Plan takes into account (and (where applicable) mitigates the effects of) all relevant factors that have impacted or may impact upon the successful delivery of the Services to the standards required by this Contract, provided always that where any such review, amendment and/or update would (or is reasonably likely to) operate to reduce and/or otherwise diminish the Authority's rights and/or remedies and/or the Supplier's liabilities contemplated by this Contract (including where, but for such review, amendment and/or update, the Supplier would (or would be reasonably likely to) be in Default under this Contract), the Supplier shall:

2.5.1 submit such proposed reviewed, amended and/or updated Implementation and Delivery Plan and/or Resource Plan (as the case may be) to the Authority for Approval; and

2.5.2 where the Supplier does not obtain such Approval, the Implementation and Delivery Plan and/or Resource Plan (as the case may be) shall be deemed not to have been so reviewed, amended and/or updated to the extent that such review, amendment and/or update would (or would be reasonably likely to) operate to so reduce the Authority's rights and/or remedies and/or the Supplier's liabilities under this Contract.

Updating the Approved Initial TQ Deliverables and TQ Deliverables

- 2.6 The Supplier shall, notwithstanding the achievement of IfATE Approval in relation to the Initial TQ Deliverables and subject to the provisions of clauses 8.4 and 8.5 (*TQ Changes*) and Annex 6 (*TQ Content Updating Schedule*) to this Service Requirements (which shall apply in respect of the annual review referred to in such clauses 8.4 and 8.5 (*TQ Changes*)), be required to keep under review, and entitled to amend and update, the Approved Initial TQ Deliverables and the TQ Deliverables throughout the

Term to ensure that the Supplier continues to meet its obligations under paragraph 2.3, provided always that the Supplier shall:

- 2.6.1 notify the Authority (as part of the Operational Delivery Report) of any proposed amendments and/or updates to such Approved Initial TQ Deliverables and/or TQ Deliverables; and
- 2.6.2 comply with the applicable requirements of clauses 8.10 and 8.11 (*TQ Changes*) prior to making available any such amended and/or updated Approved Initial TQ Deliverables and/or TQ Deliverables to Approved Providers and provided further that the words “*by the relevant date prescribed by the TQ Content Updating Schedule*” in such clauses 8.10 and 8.11 shall be deemed to be deleted for the purposes of this paragraph 2.6.

3 TQ Provider Approval and monitoring services

- 3.1 Without prejudice to the Supplier’s obligations in clause 3.1 (*How the Services must be supplied*), the Supplier shall, following IfATE Approval:
 - 3.1.1 provide that part of the Services referred to in the third column of Service Requirement 4 to ensure that the outcomes referred to in the first column of Service Requirement 4 are achieved; and
 - 3.1.2 monitor the delivery by Approved Providers of the TQ (and the Approved Provider’s continuing satisfaction of all of the requirements of the Provider Approval Criteria) in accordance with the monitoring arrangements set out in the Approved Assessment Strategy.¹
- 3.2 Without prejudice to the Supplier’s obligations in clause 3.1 (*How the Services must be supplied*) and paragraph 10.1 (*Reporting*) below, the Supplier shall notify the Authority (and provide full details of the circumstances) as soon as reasonably practicable where:
 - 3.2.1 it reasonably believes that an Eligible Provider may not become an Approved Provider;
 - 3.2.2 an Eligible Provider does not become an Approved Provider;

¹ These proposed arrangements should form part of the Supplier Response.

- 3.2.3 it reasonably believes that an Approved Provider may cease to be an Approved Provider;
 - 3.2.4 an Approved Provider ceases to be an Approved Provider; and/or
 - 3.2.5 the monitoring referred to in paragraph 3.1.2 reveals (and/or the Supplier otherwise becomes aware of):
 - (i) any failure by the Approved Provider to comply with the Approved Provider's Quality Assurance Process in the applicable Provider Contract;
 - (ii) any event, matter or circumstance which has had (or is reasonably likely to have) an adverse impact on Students (including as a result of an Appeal referred to in Service Requirement 8) and/or shall or may bring the T Level Programme into disrepute; and/or
 - (iii) any malpractice and/or maladministration on the part of the Approved Provider (including where any confidential TQ Live Assessment Materials (and/or the content of or information about such TQ Live Assessment Materials) is lost, stolen or transmitted).
- 3.3 The Supplier shall, as soon as reasonably practicable following the occurrence or identification of any matter referred to in paragraph 3.2, notify the Eligible Provider or Approved Provider (as the case may be) of any steps that are necessary to be taken by such Eligible Provider or Approved Provider (as the case may be) to remedy such matters and/or such failure and shall (as soon as reasonably practicable) notify the Authority (and provide full details) of such steps, together with details of the action that the Supplier will be taking to:
- 3.3.1 procure that the Eligible Provider or Approved Provider (as the case may be) takes such steps; and/or
 - 3.3.2 mitigate the effects of such failure and/or matters.
- 3.4 The Supplier shall:
- 3.4.1 use all reasonable endeavours to procure that the Eligible Provider or Approved Provider (as the case may be) takes the steps referred to in paragraph 3.3; and

3.4.2 take the action referred to in paragraph 3.3,

together with, in either case, such further steps and/or action as the Authority may reasonably require following the notification referred to in paragraph 3.3.

3.5 The Supplier shall (in such manner (including as to timing) as the Authority may reasonably require) keep the Authority updated as to:

3.5.1 the progress by the Eligible Provider or Approved Provider (as the case may be) with the taking of the steps referred to in paragraph 3.3 (including (where applicable) whether the event, matter or circumstance giving rise to the requirement for the taking of such steps has been (or is reasonably likely to be) remedied); and

3.5.2 the action that the Supplier is taking and has taken in accordance with paragraph 3.4,

provided always that where the Supplier fails to comply with its obligations in paragraphs 3.2 to 3.4 (inclusive), such failure shall (notwithstanding the provisions of clauses 14.2.1 to 14.2.10 (*What may happen if there are issues with your provision of the Services*)) be deemed to give rise to a right for the Authority to issue written notification of Designated Action to the Supplier, to which the provisions this Contract (including clause 14.2 (*What may happen if there are issues with your provision of the Services*)) shall apply.

4 TQ Provider support services

4.1 Without prejudice to the Supplier's obligations in clause 3.1 (*How the Services must be supplied*) and Schedule 4 (*Co-operation*), the Supplier shall, throughout the Term, provide that part of the Services referred to in, and in accordance with, the third column of Service Requirement 5 to:

4.1.1 ensure that the outcomes referred to in the first column of Service Requirement 5 are achieved; and

4.1.2 following achievement of IfATE Approval, facilitate the implementation by Providers of the TQ in accordance with the Approved TQ Specification.

4.2 The Supplier shall, subject always to clause 4.12 and 4.13 (*Pricing and payments*), in respect of:

- 4.3 the Fees for the first Academic Year for the first Exclusive Cohort, make available details of the Fees to Eligible Providers and Approved Providers as soon as reasonably practicable;
- 4.4 the Fees for the second Academic Year, make available details of the Fees to Eligible Providers and Approved Providers no later than 30 April prior to the start of the second Academic Year; and
- 4.5 the third and each subsequent Academic Year, publish details of the Fees to Approved Providers no later than 30 April prior to the start of the relevant Academic Year.

5 Student registration and Student entry

- 5.1 The Supplier shall procure that Approved Providers have processes in place (and implement such processes) to ensure that, on or prior to the relevant date specified on the Key Dates Schedule for the relevant Academic Year, each Student is correctly registered for the TQ and in the manner contemplated by Service Requirement 6.
- 5.2 The Supplier shall procure that Approved Providers have processes in place (and implement such processes) to ensure that, on or prior to the relevant date specified on the Key Dates Schedule for the relevant Academic Year, each Student is correctly entered for assessment in respect of:
 - 5.2.1 the TQ Core Component; and
 - 5.2.2 each Occupational Specialist Component,
 for which they are undertaking assessment.
- 5.3 The Supplier shall, following a request from an Approved Provider, provide the Additional Services referred to as “Late entry or entry amendment”, “Late registration or registration amendment”, “Very late entry or entry amendment” or “Very late registration or registration amendment” (as the case may be) in accordance with the applicable requirements set out against that Additional Service in Annex 10 (*Additional Services*) to this Service Requirements.
- 5.4 Without prejudice to the Supplier’s obligations in clause 3.1 (*How the Services must be supplied*) and paragraph 10.1 (*Reporting*) below, the Supplier shall ensure that, following IfATE Approval and (as applicable) in each Contract Month throughout the remainder of the Term, details of the registrations and assessment entries referred to in paragraph 5.1 and 5.2 are reported to the Authority in the Management Information

that is provided in respect of the Contract Month in which such registrations and/or entries are made, such reports to meet the requirements set out in the third column of each of Service Requirement 6 and Service Requirement 9 to ensure that the outcomes referred to in the first column of each of Service Requirement 6 and Service Requirement 9 are achieved.

5.5 Without prejudice to the Supplier's obligations in clause 3.1 (*How the Services must be supplied*) and elsewhere in this Service Requirements, the Supplier shall, as soon as reasonably practicable after:

5.5.1 becoming aware of any Approved Provider that is not registering any Students for the TQ (as contemplated by paragraph 5.1) and/or not entering Students for assessment (as contemplated by paragraph 5.2); and/or

5.5.2 becoming concerned as to the number of Students being registered for the TQ and/or being entered for assessment,

notify the Authority (together with full details) of such matter and/or concern.

6 TQ live assessment design and delivery

6.1 The Supplier shall (without prejudice to its obligations in clause 3.1 (*How the Services must be supplied*)):

6.1.1 on or prior to the relevant date specified on the Key Dates Schedule for the relevant Academic Year, design, develop and make available to Approved Providers the TQ Live Assessment Materials;

6.1.2 during the period specified on the Key Dates Schedule for the relevant Academic Year, administer the delivery by the Approved Providers of the TQ Live Assessment Materials and mark (or (where applicable) procure the marking and/or Moderation of) Student assessment evidence generated by the application and/or use (as the case may be) of such TQ Live Assessment Materials; and

6.1.3 during the period specified on the Key Dates Schedule for the relevant Academic Year and following a request from an Approved Provider, administer the delivery by that Approved Provider of the TQ Live Assessment Materials in respect of the Additional Services referred to as "Retakes" in accordance with the applicable requirements set out against that Additional Service in Annex 10 (*Additional Services*) of this Service

Requirements and mark (or (where applicable) procure the marking and/or Moderation of) Student assessment evidence generated by the application and/or use (as the case may be) of such TQ Live Assessment Materials,

in each case, in accordance with the then current Approved Assessment Strategy, subject to paragraph 6.2, the then current Approved Guide Standard Exemplification Materials or Grade Standard Exemplification Materials (as the case may be) and the requirements set out in the third column of Service Requirement 2 so as to ensure that the outcomes referred to in the first column of Service Requirement 2 are achieved.

6.2 The Supplier shall:

6.2.1 in respect of the First Teach Cohort for the relevant element of the Occupational Specialist Component, require the implementation and use by Approved Providers (including any assessors employed or engaged by any such Approved Provider and any Moderators where permitted in accordance with the Approved Assessment Strategy) and Assessors of the Approved Guide Standard Exemplification Materials for the purposes of assessing each Student's performance in respect of the TQ Live Assessment Materials; and

6.2.2 following grading of Student performance in respect of the TQ Live Assessment Materials undertaken by the First Teach Cohort of the relevant element of the Occupational Specialist Component and for each subsequent Cohort, develop, make available and require the implementation and use by Approved Providers (including any assessors employed or engaged by any such Approved Provider and any Moderators where permitted in accordance with the Approved Assessment Strategy) and Assessors of the Grade Standard Exemplification Materials.

6.3 The Supplier shall provide a copy of the TQ Live Assessment Materials to the Authority as soon as reasonably practicable following the date on which such TQ Live Assessment Materials are first made available to Students.

7 TQ grade awarding

7.1 Following completion of the live assessments referred to in paragraphs 6.1.2 and 6.1.3 (*TQ live assessment design and delivery*) in the relevant Academic Year, the Supplier shall (as soon as reasonably practicable but not later than the date specified on the Key Dates Schedule for the relevant Academic Year for such live assessments for that

Academic Year) assign a grade to each Student (to reflect the relevant marks awarded to each such Student) in respect of their performance in the assessment for the TQ Core Component and each Occupational Specialist Component that each such Student has undertaken in accordance with the requirements set out in the third column of Service Requirement 3 and so as to ensure that the outcomes referred to in the first column of Service Requirement 3 are achieved.

8 TQ results

8.1 The Supplier shall (as soon as reasonably practicable following completion of its obligations in paragraph 7.1 (*TQ grade awarding*), but not later than the date specified on the Key Dates Schedule for the relevant Academic Year), provide the results for each Student in the Cohort to the Authority or to the Authority's nominee (as notified by the Authority to the Supplier from time to time) in accordance with paragraph 8.2, such results to include details of:

8.1.1 the mark and grade awarded for the TQ Core Component;

8.1.2 the mark and grade awarded for each Occupational Specialist Component;
and

8.1.3 such information and/or data as is required (including grade boundaries) by the Authority to award an overall grade for the T Level,

in each case, in respect of each TQ assessment that the relevant Student has undertaken.

8.2 Without prejudice to the Supplier's obligations in clause 3.1 (*How the Services must be supplied*) and paragraph 10.1 (*Reporting*) below, the Supplier shall ensure that the results referred to in paragraph 8.1 are provided to the Authority or to the Authority's nominee (as notified by the Authority to the Supplier from time to time) and reported to the Authority in the Management Information that is provided in respect of the Contract Month in which such results are required to be provided in accordance with paragraph 8.1, such results and report to meet the requirements set out in the third column of each of Service Requirement 7 and Service Requirement 9 to ensure that the outcomes referred to in the first column of each of Service Requirement 7 and Service Requirement 9 are achieved.

8.3 The Supplier shall (on the date specified on the Key Dates Schedule for the relevant Academic Year) provide to the Approved Provider a breakdown of attainment to allow

any Approved Provider and/or Student to make informed decisions about applications for (amongst other things) marking reviews and/or appeals (including a Review of Marking and/or Appeal as referred to in Annex 10 (*Additional Services*) to this Service Requirements), such breakdown (subject always to the provisions of clauses 13.10 to 13.12 (*Intellectual Property Rights*) (inclusive)) to be presented in such manner and/or format as shall not be capable of being regarded, interpreted and/or represented as a formal qualification certificate or statement of achievement.

9 TQ Post-Results Services

9.1 The Supplier shall, following the provision of the results referred to in paragraph 8.1 (*TQ results*) and, in respect of each Cohort, for a period expiring at the end of 2 Academic Years following the end of the final Academic Year for each such Cohort:

9.1.1 respond to enquiries about results; and

9.1.2 following a request from an Approved Provider made in accordance with the applicable Key Dates Schedule(s) referred to in paragraph 9.2, provide the relevant Additional Services requested by that Approved Provider (other than the Additional Services referred to in paragraph 5.3 (*Student registration and Student entry*) and 6.1.3 (*TQ live assessment design and delivery*), to which the provisions of those paragraphs shall apply) in accordance with the applicable requirements set out against the relevant Additional Services in Annex 10 (*Additional Services*) to this Service Requirements, (including as referred to in, and in accordance with, the third column of Service Requirement 8 to ensure that the outcomes referred to in the first column of Service Requirement 8 are achieved).

9.2 The Parties acknowledge and agree that the time period within which an Approved Provider may request the provision of the Additional Services referred to in paragraph 9.1.2 in relation to a Student that has undertaken an assessment (including an assessment that is a “Retake”, as referred to in Annex 10 (*Additional Services*)) in an assessment series (the “**Relevant Assessment Series**”) shall be as set out in the Key Dates Schedule(s) for the relevant Academic Year(s) applicable to the Relevant Assessment Series (including any Key Dates Schedule applicable to and/or regulating the provision of Additional Services in respect of assessments undertaken in the Relevant Assessment Series), provided always that nothing in this paragraph 9.2 shall operate to:

9.2.1 prevent or restrict (or be deemed to give rise to a right of the Supplier to prevent or restrict) any “Retakes” from being undertaken (or from being requested to be undertaken) in accordance with paragraph 6.1.3; and/or

9.2.2 extend the period referred to in paragraph 9.1.

10 Reporting

10.1 The Supplier shall (without prejudice to its obligations in clause 3.1 (*How the Services must be supplied*)) in each Contract Month throughout the Term, report to the Authority in accordance with (and provide such information as is required by) the requirements set out in the third column of Service Requirement 9 to ensure that the outcomes referred to in the first column of Service Requirement 9 are achieved.

11 Overarching services

11.1 The Supplier shall:

11.1.1 maintain, update and provide to the Authority (as required by clause 5.5.1 and paragraph 3.1 of Schedule 15 (*Monitoring of Performance*)) each of the Risk Register and the Issues Log;

11.1.2 implement, carry out and complete such steps (and within such time) as the Authority shall reasonably require arising out of the review of the Risk Register and/or the Issues Log pursuant to clause 5.5.1 (*Developing the TQ and achieving IfATE Approval*) and paragraph 3.1 of Schedule 15, (*Monitoring of Performance*) provided always that where the Supplier fails to implement, carry out and complete such steps in accordance with such requirements (including within such time), such failure shall (notwithstanding the provisions of clauses 14.2.1 to 14.2.10 (*What may happen if there are issues with your provision of the Services*)) be deemed to give rise to a right for the Authority to issue written notification of Designated Action to the Supplier, to which the provisions of this Contract (including clause 14.2 (*What may happen if there are issues with your provision of the Services*)) shall apply.

11.2 The Supplier shall provide all of the back-office systems and business processes necessary to enable the delivery of the Services, including IT systems, data security systems, accounting and administrative services.

11.3 The Supplier shall:

- 11.3.1 actively promote the T Level for which it is the TQ provider, coordinated in partnership with, and with the Approval of, the Authority; and
- 11.3.2 adhere to the Authority's guidelines in respect of all publicity and marketing material produced by the Supplier (or its Subcontractors) in relation to the T Level for which it is the TQ provider.
- 11.4 The Supplier shall, following any reasonable request from the Authority:
 - 11.4.1 participate in and support any promotional activities intended to increase the uptake of T Levels by Providers and/or Students; and
 - 11.4.2 without prejudice to its obligations in Schedule 4 (*Co-operation*) and Schedule 15 (*Monitoring of Performance*), attend and participate in any such meetings as the Authority may reasonably convene from time to time in connection with the T Levels Programme.

12 Efficiency

NOT USED

13 Social Value Commitments

- 13.1 The Supplier must ensure it takes reasonable measures to meets its Social Value commitments, in full compliance with its response to Q9.6 of the Award Questionnaire in their tender submission.

Part 2 - Service Definition Table

This Part 2 sets out the outcomes each Service must deliver and the minimum requirements the Supplier must meet when delivering each Service.

Service Requirement 1: Designing, developing and managing TQ content			
Outcomes	SR1.1	1	During the Initial Development, any removal of TQ Specification material from the Specification of Content must be justified and validated by a sufficient and representative sample of Employers. Where the Supplier considers that it is necessary to remove content present in the existing TQ Specification, it shall provide a clear and detailed rationale as part of its Assessment Strategy included with the Submission for Interim Milestone 1 (and any subsequent milestones) to the Authority. Evidence from a representative sample of employers relevant to the sector must also be provided to support any proposals to remove any TQ Specification material from the Specification of Content.-The Authority shall consider whether such content may be removed from the Specification of Content, provided always that the Authority's decision as to whether such content may be removed from the Specification of Content shall be final.
<p>The Specification of Content is sufficiently clear and appropriately detailed to ensure Approved Providers can properly prepare Students for the TQ assessments.</p> <p>The knowledge, understanding, skills and behaviours specified in the Former Supplier's TQ Specification and, if relevant, the Outline Content in relation to the TQ Core Component are up-to-date and have been validated by employers to ensure that the TQ has continued currency among</p>	Maintenance of the Specification of Content	2	During the Initial Development, the inclusion of additional material must be justified and validated by a sufficient and representative sample of Employers as agreed by the Authority. The Supplier shall ensure that the Specification of Content does not include entirely new content, as distinct from updated content, that is not included in the existing TQ Specification, unless otherwise agreed by the Authority. Where the Supplier considers that it is necessary to include entirely new content, it shall provide a clear and detailed rationale as part of its Assessment Strategy included with the Submission for Interim Milestone 1 (and any subsequent milestones) to the Authority. Evidence from a representative sample of employers relevant to the sector must also be provided to support any proposals to remove any TQ Specification material from the Specification of Content. The Authority shall consider whether such new content may be included as part of the Specification of Content, provided always that the Authority's decision as to whether such new content may be included as part of the Specification of Content shall be final. The Supplier must show that new content must be covered at an appropriate depth for a level 3 qualification.

<p>Employers and other end-users (including higher education providers).</p> <p>The knowledge, understanding, skills and behaviours specified in the Former Supplier's TQ Specification and, if relevant, the Outline Content in relation to each Occupational Specialist Component are up-to-date and ensure that the TQ has continued currency among Employers and other end-users (including higher education providers).</p>		<p>3 During the delivery period the Supplier must ensure that the Specification of Content :</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) enables accurate interpretation of the Specification of Content by Approved Providers (including to facilitate a clear and consistent understanding by Approved Providers of what is required to be taught and assessed for the TQ and to enable Approved Providers to determine (i) the level of competence required for staff who assess learning and (ii) any other physical requirements (such as facilities and hardware) integral to successful learning for the TQ); (b) supports Student progression and adaptability; (c) enables Students to achieve Occupational Entry Competence in relation to each Occupational Specialist Component; and (d) ensures that English, mathematics and digital content is integrated within the rest of the content in such manner as shall ensure such content is delivered and assessed in appropriate occupationally specific contexts. <p>4 Components should follow the same structure as set out in the existing TQ Specification. The Supplier shall not move elements of the existing TQ Specification which relate to one Component into another Component, unless otherwise agreed by the Authority. Where the Supplier considers that it is necessary to move content from one Component to another, it shall provide a clear and detailed rationale as part of its Assessment Strategy for Submission at Interim Milestone 1 to the Authority and the Authority shall consider whether such content may be moved, provided always that the Authority's decision as to whether such content may be moved shall be final.</p> <p>5 The TQ has two types of Component. The Supplier shall ensure that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (e) the TQ has only two types of Component and is not unitised any further, such that only the TQ Core Component and each Occupational Specialist Component are formally graded;
--	--	---

		<p>(f) the TQ Core Component clearly assesses the core knowledge, understanding, skills and behaviours relevant to all occupations within the T Level; and</p> <p>(g) each Occupational Specialist Component clearly assesses the occupationally specific knowledge, understanding, skills and behaviours relevant to the occupations within the T Level.</p>
	6	<p>The TQ must not be biased towards any Occupational Specialist Component. Where there is more than one Occupational Specialist Component for the TQ, the Supplier shall ensure that the TQ Core Component is not biased towards any particular Occupational Specialist Component. This is to ensure fairness for all Students, to support learning in their chosen Occupational Specialist Component.</p>
	7	<p>The TQ and its Components must be appropriately titled. The Supplier shall ensure that the TQ and the Components reflect the titling conventions in the Former Supplier's TQ Specification and, if relevant, the Outline Content. The Supplier shall agree any amendments to the titling conventions of the TQ with the Authority and shall then use only this agreed title to refer to the TQ.</p>
	8	<p>The Specification of Content must support fair access to attainment, including for Students with special educational needs and/or disabilities. Without prejudice to the Supplier's obligations in clause 3.1.7 (<i>How the Services must be supplied</i>) and clause 32 (<i>Equality, diversity, human rights and anti-slavery</i>), the Supplier shall comply with all applicable Law and shall ensure that the Specification of Content is inclusive, including providing for Reasonable Adjustments and Special Consideration (as defined in SR 2.4 and SR 2.5 (respectively) below). The Supplier shall provide evidence that it has considered and addressed all such applicable Law relating to delivery of fair access to the TQ.</p>
	9	<p>Set recommended Guided Learning hours for each part of each Component. The Supplier shall ensure that the Specification of Content details the recommended Guided Learning hours for each part of the TQ Core Component and each Occupational Specialist Component, including the recommended Guided Learning hours for both delivery and assessment of each such part of each such Component, provided that (i) such recommended hours are between a minimum of 900 hours and a maximum of 1400 hours and (ii) the maximum number of hours within the recommended range for the TQ Core Component are no more than 50%, and no</p>

		<p>less than 20%, of the overall time for the TQ. The Supplier shall provide a clear and detailed rationale for such recommended Guided Learning hours as part of its Assessment Strategy included with the Submission for the Final Approval Milestone to the Authority, or earlier at the Authority's request, and the Authority shall consider whether such proposed recommended Guided Learning hours may be included as part of the Specification of Content, provided always that the Authority's decision as to whether such recommended Guided Learning hours may be included as part of the Specification of Content shall be final.</p> <p>10 Combination of Occupational Specialist Components. Where a T Level features more than one Occupational Specialist Component these should be specified as options from which a Student will typically select one Occupational Specialist Component. Where a Student is required to study two Occupational Specialist Components, the Supplier shall specify any prohibited combinations of Occupational Specialist Components, for example where there is overlap between the Occupational Specialist Component content or where there would be insufficient time to study a particular combination. The Supplier shall make it clear that Approved Providers can select the Occupational Specialist Component(s) they wish to deliver within these rules. Where rules of combination are given, the Supplier shall provide a clear and detailed rationale as part of its Assessment Strategy for Submission at Interim Milestone 1 which explains how any combinations are compatible and achievable within the duration of the TQ.</p> <p>11 Where, in exceptional circumstances, the Supplier proposes to give Students the option to study more than two Occupational Specialist Components, it must provide a clear and detailed rationale as part of its Assessment Strategy for Submission at Interim Milestone 1 to the Authority and the Authority shall consider whether such rules of combination are appropriate, provided always that the Authority's decision as to whether such rules of combination are appropriate shall be final.</p>
Service Requirement 2: Assessment design and delivery		
Outcomes The TQ provides for optimal assessment and reliable evidence	SR 2.1 Assessment quality	<p>1 The Supplier shall ensure that:</p> <p>(a) the Scheme of Assessment, the TQ Specimen Assessment Materials and the TQ Live Assessment Materials provide the optimum balance of the assessment principles set out below; and</p>

<p>of a Student's attainment in relation to the knowledge, understanding, skills and behaviours specified in the Former Supplier's Specification of Content and, if relevant, the Outline Content.</p> <p>The TQ supports fair access to attainment for all Students who take the TQ.</p>		<p>(b) the Assessment Strategy sets out a detailed rationale to explain how the TQ Specification, the TQ Specimen Assessment Materials and the TQ Live Assessment Materials meet these assessment principles.</p> <p>Assessment principles</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Validity. The extent to which the TQ assessments (including the TQ Specimen Assessment Materials and the TQ Live Assessment Materials) effectively measure what they are intended to measure. This includes the extent to which TQ assessments (including the TQ Specimen Assessment Materials and the TQ Live Assessment Materials) allow Students to produce assessment evidence for the TQ that clearly corresponds to the Specification of Content and ensures the Specification of Content is not under-represented or misrepresented. 2 Reliability. This is about consistency and so concerns the extent to which the various stages in the TQ assessment process generate outcomes that would be replicated were the assessment repeated. The reliability of an assessment is affected by a range of factors, such as the sampling of assessment tasks and inconsistency in marking by human assessors. Reliability is critical to ensuring standards of attainment are equivalent over time (comparable performance). 3 Comparable performance. The extent to which the same grade for a Component with the same title indicates a comparable level of Student performance across Approved Providers (nationally) and over time. 4 Minimising bias. Ensuring that a TQ assessment (including the TQ Specimen Assessment Materials and the TQ Live Assessment Materials) does not produce unreasonably adverse outcomes for Students who share a particular characteristic. The Supplier should seek to ensure all Students are treated fairly and the assessment (including the TQ Specimen Assessment Materials and the TQ Live Assessment Materials) complies with all applicable Law. 5 Minimising malpractice. Ensuring the TQ design (including the TQ Specimen Assessment Materials and the TQ Live Assessment Materials) and processes relating to the delivery of the TQ assessments limit malpractice, including attempts by candidates to communicate with each
---	--	---

		<p>other during an assessment and failures by Provider staff to comply with Supplier instructions regarding storage of Student assessment evidence.</p> <p>6 Appropriate demand. This relates to the level of difficulty of a TQ assessment task (including within the TQ Specimen Assessment Materials and the TQ Live Assessment Materials) and the requirements of the relevant part of the Specification of Content which is to be assessed and any expectations of performance at specified grades. Demand should be appropriate to a level 3 qualification.</p> <p>7 Manageability. The feasibility of carrying out the TQ assessment processes. A manageable assessment process is one that has reasonable expectations of Students, Approved Providers and (where appropriate) Employers. This will be based on the impact of the assessment process on Students, Approved Providers and (where appropriate) Employers as against the usefulness of the outcomes.</p>
	<p>SR 2.2</p> <p>General assessment delivery requirements</p>	<p>The Supplier shall:</p> <p>1 specify when the TQ assessments can be undertaken during the relevant Academic Year (taking into account any dates prescribed by the Key Dates Schedule for the relevant Academic Year) so that Students have sufficient time to generate assessment evidence and/or demonstrate the required knowledge, understanding, skills and behaviours;</p> <p>2 notwithstanding the number of Assessors (and Moderators where permitted in accordance with the Approved Assessment Strategy) identified in the Implementation and Delivery Plan and/or the Resource Plan, ensure a sufficient number of qualified and trained Assessors (and such Moderators) are available to assess Students' assessment evidence for the TQ;</p> <p>3 train Assessors (and Moderators where permitted in accordance with the Approved Assessment Strategy) so that their judgements in relation to the TQ assessments are consistent and accurate and applied in line with the standards defined by or through such training;</p>

		<p>4 sample the marking of live TQ assessments (to ensure accuracy and consistency) and, where such marking is not accurate and/or consistent, take all such steps as are necessary to ensure that such marking is accurate and consistent;</p> <p>5 ensure the TQ Live Assessment Materials are made available to Approved Providers in English (online and/or in hard copy (as applicable));</p> <p>6 ensure the TQ Live Assessment Materials are available at the right time (online and/or in hard copy (as applicable)) in accordance with this Contract;</p> <p>7 ensure that TQ Live Assessment Materials are free from errors and where any errors are identified in the TQ Live Assessment Materials they are dealt with appropriately, including through the issue of an erratum and by taking all such actions as are necessary to ensure that Students are not disadvantaged as a result of such errors;</p> <p>8 where Student assessment evidence for the TQ is required to be generated under supervised conditions:</p> <p>(a) ensure that the nature of the supervised conditions and the hours for such supervised conditions are detailed in the TQ Specification; and</p> <p>(b) provide a clear and detailed rationale as part of its Assessment Strategy for Submission at Interim Milestone 4 to the Authority and the Authority shall consider whether such hours are appropriate, provided always that the Authority's decision as to whether such hours are appropriate shall be final;</p> <p>9 ensure that Approved Providers comply with the Approved Provider's Quality Assurance Process, including:</p> <p>(a) keeping Students' assessment evidence for the TQ secure during and after assessment; and</p> <p>(b) verifying that a Student's assessment evidence for the TQ has been solely produced by that Student;</p>
--	--	--

		<p>10 following IfATE Approval, monitor the delivery of the TQ to identify any feature which could disadvantage a group of Students who share a particular characteristic and shall, as soon as reasonably practicable following identification of such a feature, take such steps as are necessary to minimise the feature being an unnecessary barrier to Student attainment;</p> <p>11 monitor and investigate instances of malpractice and/or maladministration relating to the TQ in accordance with paragraph 3 (TQ Provider Approval and monitoring services) of Part 1 of this Service Requirements;</p> <p>12 ensure final marks awarded by Assessors (and Moderator final marks and/or judgements, where permitted in accordance with the Approved Assessment Strategy) in relation to the TQ are collected for each Student and checked for accuracy by the relevant date specified in the Implementation and Delivery Plan; and</p> <p>13 where marking is to be applied to Student assessment evidence for the TQ by Assessors (and/or by assessors employed or engaged by Approved Providers and/or Moderation is to be undertaken in relation to such marking (in circumstances where the Approved Assessment Strategy allows for use of assessors employed or engaged by the Approved Provider)), ensure:</p> <p>(a) such Assessors (and assessors and Moderators) are appropriately trained and competent;</p> <p>(b) such Assessors (and Moderators) have no personal interest in the outcome of the marking; and</p> <p>(c) marking and Moderation is conducted in a way which secures the accuracy of marking and a consistent approach to marking, provided always that where the Supplier determines that such marking and/or Moderation is not being undertaken accurately and consistently, it shall correct any inaccuracies and/or inconsistencies and shall take (or shall (where necessary) procure that the relevant Approved Provider and/or Moderator shall take (as the case may be)) all necessary steps to prevent any future recurrence of such inaccuracy and/or inconsistency.</p>
	SR 2.3	<p>1 The Supplier shall ensure that it has all necessary processes in place to ensure that, where TQ Live Assessment Materials are confidential (including the content of or information about</p>

	Confidentiality of TQ Live Assessment Materials	<p>such TQ Live Assessment Materials), all such TQ Live Assessment Materials remain confidential.</p> <p>2 If, notwithstanding the processes referred to above, a breach of confidentiality in relation to the TQ Live Assessment Materials does occur (including through the loss, theft or transmission of confidential TQ Live Assessment Materials) or is either suspected by the Supplier or alleged by any other person (and where there are reasonable grounds for that suspicion or allegation), such matter shall be notified to the Authority in accordance with paragraph 3.2 of Part 1 of this Service Requirements and the provisions of paragraphs 3.3 to 3.5 (inclusive) of such Part 1 of this Service Requirements shall apply.</p>
	<p>SR2.4</p> <p>Reasonable Adjustments</p>	<p>“Reasonable Adjustments” means such adjustments to and/or exemptions from the TQ Live Assessment Materials (as applicable) as are necessary and reasonable (in the context of what is being assessed) to enable a Student with special educational needs and/or disabilities to demonstrate his or her knowledge, understanding, skills and behaviours to the level of attainment required.</p> <p>The Supplier shall:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 have in place clear arrangements for making Reasonable Adjustments; 2 explain (in the Assessment Strategy) how Reasonable Adjustments will be made to support fair access to attainment; and 3 provide details of such arrangements to Approved Providers, <p>in each case, taking into account and (where applicable) implementing the process, approach and/or system agreed between the T Level Awarding Organisations pursuant to paragraph 2.1.8 of Schedule 4 (Co-operation).</p>
	<p>SR2.5</p> <p>Special Consideration</p>	<p>“Special Consideration” means consideration to be given to a Student who has experienced a temporary illness, injury or other event outside of the Student’s control and which has had, or is reasonably likely to have had, a material effect on that Student’s ability to take a TQ assessment or demonstrate his or her level of attainment in a TQ assessment.</p> <p>The Supplier shall:</p>

		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 have in place clear arrangements for Special Consideration; 2 explain (in the Assessment Strategy) how Special Considerations will be applied to support fair access to attainment; and 3 provide details to Approved Providers of how to request such Special Consideration, <p>in each case, taking into account and (where applicable) implementing the process, approach and/or system agreed between the T Level Awarding Organisations pursuant to paragraph 2.1.8 of Schedule 4 (<i>Co-operation</i>).</p>
	SR 2.6 TQ Core Component assessment design and delivery	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 The TQ assessments must be appropriately weighted. Where there is more than one Occupational Specialist Component for the TQ, the Supplier shall not weight the assessment of the TQ Core Component more heavily towards any one Occupational Specialist Component. This is to ensure fairness for all Students, to support learning in their chosen Occupational Specialist Component. 2 The Supplier shall assess the TQ Core Component using two distinct methods, as follows: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) the core knowledge and understanding shall be assessed using an External Examination; and (b) the core skills and relevant aspects of core knowledge shall be assessed through the Employer Set Project in accordance with paragraph 3 below, <p>in each case, as referred to in the Specification of Content.</p> 3 Evidence generated by a Student in assessments of the Employer Set Project should be marked by an Assessor. However, in very exceptional circumstances set out in the Approved Assessment Strategy, an Approved Provider may be permitted to mark assessment evidence generated by a Student only where the Supplier: (i) puts in place robust arrangements which ensure that such marking achieves valid and reliable outcomes; (ii) uses an approach that is as close to complete independence as possible (such arrangements and approach to be

		<p>detailed in the Approved Assessment Strategy); and (iii) procures that all such marking is subject to Moderation.²</p> <p>4 Assessment objectives. The Supplier shall:</p> <p>(a) set out the assessment objectives for each of the External Examination and the Employer Set Project; and</p> <p>(b) specify the relevant weightings as between the External Examination and the Employer Set Project,</p> <p>in each case, in the Scheme of Assessment.</p> <p>5 Minimum performance requirements for the TQ Core Component must be clearly defined. The Supplier shall ensure that:</p> <p>(a) the External Examination and the Employer Set Project are each assessed using compensatory assessment methods, such that high performance in one part of the TQ Core Component assessment compensates for lower performance in another; and</p> <p>(b) the minimum performance requirements for each judgemental grade required for the TQ Core Component shall reference each of the External Examination and the Employer Set Project.</p> <p>6 Devise the External Examination to assess the full range of knowledge and understanding outlined in the TQ Core Component. The Supplier shall ensure that:</p> <p>(a) the External Examination will sample from the full breadth of relevant parts of the Specification of Content; and</p> <p>(b) an indicative sampling grid for the Term is included within the Assessment Strategy.</p>
--	--	--

² These proposed arrangements should form part of the Supplier's Response.

		<p>7 Assessment of core skills and relevant aspects of knowledge through Employer Set Project. The Supplier shall develop briefs for Employer Set Projects and shall ensure that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) such briefs are developed in collaboration with Employers; (b) each such brief enables a Student to demonstrate core skills and relevant aspects of core knowledge in an occupationally relevant context; and (c) the Assessment Strategy outlines how such briefs will continue to be relevant to the TQ Core Component throughout the Term and how the Supplier will ensure that such Employer Set Projects do not become predictable and how they will keep pace with the needs of industry, <p>in each case, so that new briefs for Employer Set Projects are made available by the Supplier in each Academic Year.</p>
		<p>8 Engage with relevant Employers to set clear project briefs. The Supplier shall:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) engage with Employers to ensure that sufficient project brief(s) is/are made available to enable Students to demonstrate skills across the breadth of the available Occupational Specialist Component(s), provided always that where the Supplier proposes to make available only one project brief in respect of the TQ to Students and/or proposes to utilise a project brief in respect of more than one Occupational Specialist Component, then: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) the Supplier shall provide a detailed rationale for such proposals as part of its Assessment Strategy included with the Submission for Interim Milestone 1 to the Authority; (ii) the Authority shall consider whether such proposals are acceptable; and (iii) the Authority's decision as to whether such proposals are acceptable shall be final; (b) engage with Employers to ensure that each project brief:

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) has clear objectives, which align with the Specification of Content and which aim to motivate Students; (ii) requires Students to solve a real world problem; (iii) enables Students to generate sufficient assessment evidence to meet the objectives referred to in (i) immediately above; (iv) clearly sets out the arrangements and restrictions for Approved Providers to support Students in carrying out and completing the Employer Set Project; and (v) allows sufficient time to enable Students to generate sufficient assessment evidence; and <p>(c) obtain evidence of validation from each Employer involved in setting the brief(s) that they approve such brief(s) (and the Supplier shall make available to the Authority a copy of such evidence). Evidence of employer validation must include, but is not limited to, details of the questions asked of Employers, Employer responses and how the AO addressed Employer feedback.</p>
	<p>SR 2.7</p> <p>Occupational Specialist Component assessment design and delivery</p>	<p>1 Assessment of performance outcomes. The Supplier shall ensure that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) the assessment materials for each Occupational Specialist Component assess all performance outcomes detailed in the Specification of Content for that Occupational Specialist Component; and (b) so far as is reasonably practicable, each assessment is synoptic to reflect how knowledge, understanding, skills and behaviours are drawn together and implemented to develop meaningful occupationally relevant Student assessment evidence, which attests to Occupational Entry Competence, provided always that where the Supplier reasonably determines that it is not possible to assess performance outcomes synoptically, the Supplier shall provide a clear and detailed rationale as part of its Assessment Strategy for Submission at Interim Milestone 1 to the Authority and the Authority shall consider whether it is acceptable not to assess performance outcomes

		<p>synoptically, provided always that the Authority's decision as to whether such approach is appropriate shall be final.</p> <p>2 Evidence generated by a Student in assessments of each Occupational Specialist Component should be marked by an Assessor. However, in very exceptional circumstances set out in the Approved Assessment Strategy, an Approved Provider may be permitted to mark assessment evidence generated by a Student only where the Supplier: (i) puts in place robust arrangements which ensure that such marking achieves valid and reliable outcomes; (ii) uses an approach that is as close to complete independence as possible (such arrangements and approach to be detailed in the Approved Assessment Strategy); and (iii) procures that all such marking is subject to Moderation.³</p> <p>3 Exemplifying the expected standards of attainment. The Supplier shall, for each Occupational Specialist Component, produce Guide Standard Exemplification Materials (which shall be validated by sufficient and representative sample of Employers and Providers as agreed by the Authority)) for the purposes of IfATE Approval and for the First Teach Cohort and, for each Academic Year following grade awarding for the First Teach Cohort, produce Grade Standard Exemplification Materials (which shall be validated by Employers before results are issued) and submitted to the Authority for agreement by no later than the end of September and published by the end of October of that Academic Year, unless otherwise agreed in writing by the Authority.</p>
Service Requirement 3: Grading and Awarding		
Outcomes Grades awarded for the TQ Core Component and each Occupational Specialist Component	SR 3.1	<p>1 The Supplier shall undertake grading and awarding in accordance with the relevant part of the Approved Assessment Strategy.</p>

³ These proposed arrangements should form part of the Supplier's Response.

<p>are reliable and allow Employers and other end-users (including higher education providers) to accurately identify a Student's level of attainment and effectively differentiate their performance.</p> <p>The TQ supports fair access to attainment for all Students who take the TQ.</p> <p>The minimum pass grade standard for each Occupational Specialist Component attests to Occupational Entry Competence, meets Employer expectations, and is as close to full occupational competence as possible.</p>		
Service Requirement 4: Provider Approval		
<p>Outcomes</p> <p>Approved Providers are capable of</p>	<p>SR4.1</p>	<p>1 The Supplier shall receive and process applications from Eligible Providers to become Approved Providers in accordance with the relevant part of the Approved Assessment Strategy.</p>

delivering the TQ to meet the required standards and expectations.		<p>2 The Supplier shall (within 30 Working Days) following receipt of an application for Provider Approval from an Eligible Provider:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) assess that Eligible Provider against the Provider Approval Criteria to determine whether such Eligible Provider satisfies all of the requirements of the Provider Approval Criteria; (b) notify that Eligible Provider of the outcome of its application; and (c) where the Eligible Provider satisfies all of the requirements of the Provider Approval Criteria, grant Provider Approval in respect of such Eligible Provider.
Service Requirement 5: Provider Support		
<p>Outcomes</p> <p>Approved Providers are fully supported to plan and deliver (including to properly prepare Students for assessment) the TQ to meet the required standards and expectations.</p>	SR 5.1	<p>The Supplier shall ensure that Approved Providers are fully supported to promote, plan and deliver the TQ, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 setting out in the TQ Specification and Assessment Guidance for Providers any guidance and support available to the Approved Provider in respect of the TQ, which may include guidance as to sequencing of assessment of any Component; 2 providing a telephone, email and internet facility and ensuring that sufficient, suitably trained contact staff are available to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) answer Approved Providers' queries regarding the Provider Services and/or the TQ (including enquiries and/or queries about results); (b) deal with complaints in relation to the Provider Services and/or the TQ; and (c) ensure that such queries and/or complaints (and any queries about the T Level Programme, including different programme elements and work placements) are directed to the relevant individual at the Supplier, the Authority or other Stakeholder (as applicable);

		<p>3 ensuring that such training, resources and other information relating to the TQ, as is necessary to assist Approved Providers' administration and examination officers, is available, including in relation to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) key dates for administration of the TQ; (b) how to use any systems to upload materials; and (c) which forms should be used to enable Approved Providers to claim completion of the TQ by the relevant Student; <p>4 ensuring that such training, resources and other information relating to the TQ, as is necessary to assist Approved Providers' teaching and learning, is available to ensure the requirements of the TQ are clear and Students can be well prepared for assessment for the TQ, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) exemplifying (through the provision of and training in relation to the application of the Guide Standard Exemplification Materials) the expected standards of performance for the TQ for the First Teach Cohort, so that the Approved Providers are able to design effective courses and have a clear understanding of the quality and standards their Students need to achieve; and (b) the development in accordance with Annex 11 to the Service Requirements, of <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) Supplementary Specimen Assessment Materials; (ii) Employer Set Project Guide Exemplar Responses; (iii) Employer Set Project Grade Exemplar Responses; and (iv) Accompanying Assessment Guidance for Providers; all of which must be suitable to be used by Approved Providers to prepare Students effectively for live TQ assessments; and (c) exemplifying (through the provision of documentation, including chief examiner and chief moderator reports, which provides an overview or analysis of Student performance and includes but is not limited to, examples of student responses to assessment questions and/or tasks) the expected standards of performance for the TQ,
--	--	---

		<p>so that Approved Providers are supported in understanding how students performed at item, sub-component and component level to support future teaching and learning.</p> <p>5 undertaking intermittent reviews to ensure that the support remains fit for purpose, taking account of feedback from Approved Providers and amending the support packages as necessary;</p> <p>6 having in place systems and processes to monitor and report to the Authority details of Approved Provider uptake of the TQ Deliverables (and any other Products and/or documents associated with the TQ), ensuring each and every Approved Provider has accessed and is using the current version of the relevant TQ Deliverable.</p> <p>7 aligning training and resources with any wider FE Professional Readiness to Deliver T Levels training and support offered by the Authority; and</p> <p>8 supporting Approved Providers on agreed promotional activity, as appropriate following any reasonable request from the Authority.</p>
Service Requirement 6: Student registration and Student entry		
Outcomes Unique identification of Students	SR 6.1	The Supplier shall procure that Approved Providers register each Student undertaking the TQ in a way that permits the Student to be clearly and uniquely identified.
Service Requirement 7: TQ Results		
Outcomes Accurate and complete results	SR 7.1	The Supplier shall ensure that all results which it issues are accurate and complete and reflect the outcome of the awarding process.

Service Requirement 8: TQ Post-Results Services		
<p>Outcomes</p> <p>The TQ provides for optimal assessment and reliable evidence of a Student's attainment in relation to the knowledge, understanding, skills and behaviours specified in the Former Supplier's TQ Specification and, if relevant the Outline Content.</p> <p>The TQ supports fair access to attainment for all Students who take the TQ.</p>	<p>SR 8.1</p> <p>Assessment Review</p>	<p>The Supplier shall ensure a transparent and effective process for review of marks (or (where applicable) Review of Moderation (as defined in Annex 10 (<i>Additional Services</i>) to this Service Requirements) for each Component.⁴</p>
	<p>SR 8.2</p> <p>Appeals Process</p>	<p>1 The Supplier shall operate an appeals process, which enables Approved Providers to appeal:</p> <p>(a) the results of TQ assessments undertaken by Students or (in the case of an appeal in respect of an individual Student) results of TQ assessments undertaken by that Student (including in either case the outcome of a Review of Marking and/or Review of Moderation);</p>

⁴ The proposed process should form part of the Supplier Response. This requirement will simply link to the proper implementation of that process.

		<p>(b) any decisions regarding Reasonable Adjustments and/or Special Consideration for Students or (in the case of an appeal in respect of an individual Student) decisions regarding Reasonable Adjustments and/or Special Consideration for that Student; and</p> <p>(c) decisions which have resulted in action taken against that Approved Provider or (in the case of an appeal in respect of an individual Student) that Student in relation to the TQ, in either case, following an investigation into malpractice or maladministration,⁵</p> <p>(together or individually (as the case may be) an “Appeal”).</p> <p>2 Where, as a result of an Appeal, the Supplier identifies that there is or was (as the case may be) a failure in its TQ assessment process affecting more than one Student, it shall:</p> <p>(a) notify the Authority of such failure (including full details of the impact of such failure);</p> <p>(b) identify all Students who have (or who may reasonably be expected to have) been affected by the failure;</p> <p>(c) correct or, where it cannot be corrected, mitigate as far as possible the effect of the failure; and</p> <p>(d) take all such steps as are necessary to ensure that such failure does not recur in the future,</p> <p>and the provisions of paragraphs 3.2 to 3.5 (inclusive) of Part 1 of this Service Requirements shall apply in respect of such failure.</p>
Service Requirement 9: Reporting		
Outcomes Accurate and timely information and data is	SR 9.1	The Supplier shall ensure that the Management Information is provided to the Authority as follows. In the case of:

⁵ The proposed appeals process should form part of the Supplier Responses. This requirement will simply link to the proper implementation of that process.

available throughout the Term		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 the Development Phase Report, in accordance with clause 5.5 (<i>Developing the TQ and achieving IfATE Approval</i>); 2 the Operational Delivery Report, in accordance with paragraph 3.1 of Schedule 15 (<i>Monitoring of Performance</i>); 3 the information and data generated pursuant to paragraph 5 of Part 1 of this Service Requirements, in accordance with paragraph 5.4 of Part 1 of this Service Requirements; 4 the information and data generated pursuant to paragraph 8 of Part 1 of this Service Requirements, in accordance with paragraph 8.2 of Part 1 of this Service Requirements; 5 the information and data relating to the delivery of the Additional Services in accordance with paragraphs 5.3, 6.1.3 and 9.1.2 of Part 1 of this Service Requirements, in each Contract Month; and 6 the information and data relating to adjustment to the Fees pursuant to clauses 4.12 and 4.13 (<i>Pricing and payments</i>), in accordance with clause 4.13.1 (<i>Pricing and payments</i>). 7 the information and data relating to the delivery of the Social Value commitments in accordance with paragraph 13.1 (<i>Social Value Commitments</i>)
-------------------------------	--	--

Part 3 – Product Descriptions

This Part 3 sets out the Product Description for each Product.

Product	Description
Assessment Strategy	<p>A clear and detailed explanation for how the TQ meets the outcomes/overall measures and requirements for each Service.</p> <p>In relation to the design of the TQ, the Assessment Strategy shall include details of and a clear and detailed rationale for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• how the design of the TQ will ensure compliance (including ongoing compliance) with all relevant requirements of this Service Requirements;• (i) individual assessment time for each TQ assessment, for example in terms of covering the required part of the Specification of Content effectively and balancing reliability and manageability, and (ii) combined assessment time for the different TQ assessments;• the number of marks for each individual TQ assessment, for example in terms of covering the required part of the Specification of Content effectively and balancing reliability and manageability;• how the design of the TQ will ensure appropriate compensation taking into account the requirements of SR 2.6 (5) (a) of Service Requirement 2;• the approach to differentiating for the available grade range in each case;• how Students' interests will be protected if there are changes to the Specification of Content;• the Guided Learning hours for each Component, taking into account the requirements of SR 1.1 (9) of Service Requirement 1;

Product	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • if applicable, why Students have been given the option to study more than two Occupational Specialist Components; • the approach to how assessments will be structured, for example in terms of covering the required part of the Specification of Content effectively and achieving the optimum balance of the assessment principles set out in SR 2.1 of Service Requirement 2, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ the number of tasks and assessments in the External Examination; ○ the number of tasks and assessments in the Employer Set Project; ○ the relative weightings of the External Examination and the Employer Set Project; ○ the number of tasks and assessments for each Occupational Specialist Component; ○ for Occupational Specialist Components, why it is not possible to assess performance outcomes synoptically (if applicable); and ○ how the Former Supplier's TQ Specification and, if relevant, the Outline Content will be covered over the life of the Contract including any proposed approach to sampling. • in very exceptional circumstances where the Supplier considers that there is justification for any assessments in relation to the Employer Set Project and/or the Occupational Specialist Components to be marked by an Approved Provider and not externally marked by an Assessor, a detailed rationale which explains why this is necessary in terms of achieving an optimum balance of the assessment principles set out in SR 2.1 of Service Requirement 2 and a detailed explanation of the approach to Moderation. Exceptional circumstances shall include the following factors: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ where the assessment evidence generated by Students is likely to arise spontaneously and/or be ephemeral in nature and where this may lead to significant or insurmountable logistical difficulties in terms of the Supplier arranging to be present for every assessment; ○ where the assessment would require repeat measurement over an extended period of time, potentially including measurement of multiple aspects across multiple Students, rather than measurement on a single occasion and where this may lead to significant or insurmountable logistical difficulties in terms of the Supplier being present for the whole period of the assessment; ○ where the presence of an Assessor could significantly affect the assessment, for example because it may place undue pressure on Students and therefore undermine fairness, or could require the assessment to be designed and/or completed in an artificial way which would undermine validity; and

Product	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ where the presence of an Assessor is not possible owing to issues of sensitivity and/or confidentiality with respect to individuals required to participate in the assessment(s), provided always that the factor(s) giving rise to a claim by the Supplier of the existence of any exceptional circumstances are relevant to the content of the TQ, the risks to the validity or manageability of the assessment arising as a result of such factor(s) are significant and such factor(s) and/or risk(s) cannot be managed or mitigated without marking being undertaken by an Approved Provider; • the approach to coverage of the Former Supplier's TQ Specification and, if relevant the Outline Content, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ how the Former Supplier's TQ Specification and, if relevant the Outline Content has been covered overall and in each TQ assessment; ○ how the Former Supplier's TQ Specification and, if relevant the Outline Content has been elaborated on where necessary; ○ if applicable, why it is necessary to move elements of the Former Supplier's TQ Specification and, if relevant, the Outline Content which relate to one Component into another Component; and ○ if applicable, why it is necessary to include entirely new content that is not included in the Former Supplier's TQ Specification and, if relevant, the Outline Content into the Specification of Content; • the approach to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ mapping of the Specification of Content in TQ Specimen Assessment Materials; ○ coverage of the Specification of Content over time; and ○ ensuring the assessments for the TQ Core Component and each Occupational Specialist Component support fair access to attainment, including the approach to Reasonable Adjustments and Special Consideration; • the assessment objectives and weightings for the External Examination and the Employer Set Project; • the approach to targeting assessment objectives in the External Examination and the Employer Set Project, and to targeting performance outcomes in each Occupational Specialist Component; • the approach to each TQ assessment, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ an explanation of:

Product	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ the range of task types to be used (e.g. multiple-choice, short answer, extended response, practical assignment) and how these will support valid assessment of the Specification of Content; and ▪ the approach to mark scheme and assessment criteria design, including for different task types, and an explanation of how resulting mark schemes and assessment criteria will support reliable application by Assessors (and any assessors employed or engaged by any Approved Provider and any Moderators where permitted in accordance with the Approved Assessment Strategy); ○ sample question/tasks which may be from the TQ Specimen Assessment Materials, and associated mark schemes and assessment criteria, representing the range to be used in each such TQ assessment, with commentaries explaining the approaches; ○ an indicative sampling grid for the External Examination; and ○ how the requirements of SR 2.6 (7) and SR 2.6(8) of Service Requirement 2 have been taken into account. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the approach to availability of TQ assessments, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ when assessments will be scheduled for the External Examination, the Employer Set Project and each Occupational Specialist Component; ○ how the approach is appropriate, including consideration of: the amount and weight of material to be covered; the extent to which different aspects would be covered sequentially or concurrently; how coherence with the overall T Level Programme will be promoted; the need to ensure that enough time is available for sufficient learning to have taken place (including how Approved Providers will be supported so that they enter Students for a Component's assessments in an appropriate Academic Year and in an appropriate assessment series within that Academic Year, in each case, within the two-year programme for the T Level); and how the approach will support standard setting; ○ when the first assessment cycle will be held for the First Teach Cohort, taking into account the need to ensure that standards are set appropriately in the first Academic Year so they are appropriate to be carried forward to future assessment cycles; ○ arrangements for Students to retake, in full, any or all of the External Examination, the Employer Set Project and each Occupational Specialist Component; and ○ the type of assessment (e.g. online and/or paper-based) for the External Examination, Employer Set Project and each Occupational Specialist Component; and

Product	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • quality assuring the design and development of the TQ and its component assessments in line with the requirements set out in the Service Requirements and in line with the Assessment Strategy. <p>Taking into account the approach to availability of TQ assessments, the Assessment Strategy shall include a clear and detailed explanation of any risks that have been identified, how these will be mitigated, and how particular challenges will be addressed, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ensuring comparability of assessments; • minimising predictability of assessments; • ensuring security and confidentiality of assessments; and • in relation to the Employer Set Project, how the Employer Set Projects will continue to be relevant to the TQ Core Component throughout the Term and how they will not become predictable and will keep pace with the needs of industry. <p>In relation to the delivery of the TQ, the Assessment Strategy shall include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • details of and a clear and detailed rationale for how the delivery of the TQ will ensure ongoing compliance with all relevant requirements of this Service Requirements; • clear details of the process for developing TQ assessment materials (including TQ Specimen Assessment Materials and TQ Live Assessment Materials), including different stages and Supplier Staff involved, how evidence regarding functioning of previous assessments is used, any differences by assessment type and item setting arrangements; • clear details of the approach to training individuals who will be responsible for setting TQ assessments and/or items, including ensuring security and mitigating any conflicts of interest; • details of the nature of and number of hours of supervised conditions that will be required to deliver the TQ; • clear details of the approach to training and standardising the approach of Assessors (and any assessors employed or engaged by any Approved Provider and any Moderators where permitted in accordance with

Product	Description
	<p>the Approved Assessment Strategy), together with details of standardisation procedures and any wider training;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • a clear and detailed explanation of how the marking processes for Student assessment evidence for the TQ will operate, including any variation between the External Examination, the Employer Set Project and each Occupational Specialist Component; • a clear and detailed explanation of the process that will be in place: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ to monitor accuracy and consistency of marking by Assessors (and Moderation by Moderators where permitted in accordance with the Approved Assessment Strategy) and issuing of results, and ○ to take remedial action where such process does not deliver accuracy and consistency of marking (and/or Moderation by Moderators where permitted in accordance with the Approved Assessment Strategy) and/or issuing of results; • a clear and detailed explanation of how malpractice will be minimised and addressed and the approach to maintaining security and confidentiality of TQ assessments, including any differences by assessment; • a clear and detailed explanation as to how live issues during assessments for the TQ will be dealt with (i.e. where the design/delivery mitigations have failed); • a clear and detailed explanation as to how results data for each Component and the TQ will be provided to the Authority in line with the Key Dates Schedule for the relevant Academic Year; and • a clear and detailed explanation as to how each Post-Results Service (referred to in paragraph 9 (<i>TQ Post-Results Services</i>) of Part 1 of this Service Requirements) will be delivered.⁶ <p>In relation to Eligible Providers and Approved Providers, the Assessment Strategy shall include a summary of the proposed approach to ensuring that Approved Providers are able to prepare for and undertake the TQ assessments, together with a clear and detailed explanation of:</p>

⁶ The Supplier Response should detail the Supplier's proposals for the Additional Services. This requirement will link to the proper implementation of that part of the Supplier Response.

Product	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> the approach to approving Eligible Providers as Approved Providers, in line with the Provider Approval Criteria; the approach to ensuring that all Approved Providers have appropriate and consistent quality assurance measures in place for the delivery of the TQ and ensuring that such Approved Providers maintain ongoing compliance with those quality assurance measures; the approach to the provision of guidance and training to Approved Providers in connection with the delivery of the TQ assessments for the Employer Set Project and the Occupational Specialist Components; the approach to monitoring Approved Providers in relation to TQ assessments for the Employer Set Project and the Occupational Specialist Components, including how this approach will ensure that such assessments remain fit for purpose on delivery; how Guide Standard Exemplification Materials will be produced, with input from and validated by a sufficient and representative sample of Employers and Providers as agreed by the Authority; and how Grade Standard Exemplification Materials will be produced, and kept under review, with input from validated by a sufficient and representative sample of Employers as agreed by the Authority. <p>In relation to awarding, the Assessment Strategy shall include a clear and detailed explanation of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> the technical methodology employed in the awarding process, including the Supplier Staff involved and their roles; how the decisions from the awarding process are approved within the Supplier and the Supplier Staff involved in this; how comparability between different versions of assessments and different types of assessment (e.g. online vs paper-based) is ensured, both where these are available at the same time and on an ongoing basis;

Product	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • how comparability between any options in the TQ will be ensured; • how any evidence in relation to the comparability of the TQ with the technical education qualification element for other applicable T Levels within the same Route (including those offered by other T Level Awarding Organisations) will be used to inform decisions on standard setting; • how grades are calculated, including judgemental and arithmetic grade boundaries, aggregation of marks between the External Examination and Employer Set Project, and the use of any conversion scales; and • the approach to and range of qualitative and quantitative evidence used to inform grading and awarding decisions and the weight given to different sources, together with: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ a rationale for this approach in the light of the TQ design and Cohort make-up; and ○ details of how this approach will be kept under review and may be adjusted, including any variation between initial standard setting and maintenance of standards, <p>and in relation to such qualitative and quantitative evidence:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ qualitative evidence shall include (for the TQ Core Component and each Occupational Specialist Component as a whole and for each TQ assessment): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ views of senior examiners about the quality of Student assessment evidence for the TQ; ▪ views of senior examiners about the demand of TQ assessments; ▪ performance descriptions informed by Employer views; ▪ Guide Standard Exemplification Materials and Grade Standard Exemplification Materials informed by Employer views; ▪ archive Student assessment evidence for the TQ from previous series (where applicable); and ▪ if necessary, cognate Student assessment evidence for the TQ, for example from related qualifications; and ○ quantitative evidence shall include (for the TQ Core Component and each Occupational Specialist Component as a whole and for each TQ assessment): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ mark distribution; ▪ mean mark; ▪ standard deviation;

Product	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ item-level data, such as facility and discrimination indices; ▪ percentage of Students achieving each grade in previous series; and ▪ information about Students' prior/concurrent attainment. <p>The Assessment Strategy shall also include an explanation as to how innovation will be appropriately tested before implementation to secure on-going compliance by the Supplier with its obligations under this Service Requirements.</p>
Employer and Provider Engagement Strategy	A clear and detailed strategy describing the approach to engaging with, and where applicable training, Employers and Providers in relation to the design, content, delivery, assessment, validation and update of the TQ and the Services, including the approach to sharing early and/or amended drafts of all Initial TQ Deliverables and TQ Deliverables with Employers and Providers (as applicable).
TQ Specification	<p>Specification of Content</p> <p>The Specification of Content shall set out the knowledge, understanding, skills and behaviours that Students need to learn for the TQ Core Component and each Occupational Specialist Component. The Specification of Content for the TQ Core Component and each Occupational Specialist Component must be clear and unambiguous and adequately cover (and where necessary build on) the Former Supplier's TQ Specification and, if relevant, the Outline Content (and not simply replicate it). The Specification of Content shall detail the recommended Guided Learning hours for each Component (including recommended Guided Learning hours for both delivery and assessment of each Component), taking into account the requirements of SR 1.1 (9) of Service Requirement 1.</p> <p>The TQ Specification will be validated by a sufficient and representative number of Employers as agreed by the Authority.</p> <p>Scheme of Assessment</p> <p><i>TQ Core Component – External Examination – knowledge and understanding</i></p> <p>The Scheme of Assessment shall clearly set out (in relation to the External Examination) an explanation for Approved Providers of:</p>

Product	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the assessment objectives and their weightings; • the method and number of assessments (if more than one); • the duration of the/each assessment; • the number of marks in the/each assessment; • how and when the/each assessment will be made available; • the grades available for the TQ Core Component and that these grades are for the External Examination and the Employer Set Project in combination; and • any relevant design features for the External Examination, such as the range of different question types that will be used and any access there will be to stimulus/pre-release materials. <p><i>TQ Core Component – Employer Set Project</i></p> <p>The Scheme of Assessment shall clearly set out (in relation to the Employer Set Project) an explanation for Approved Providers of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the assessment objectives and their weightings; • the assessment tasks available, i.e. options; • the duration of the assessment; • the number of marks for the assessment; • how and when the assessment will be made available; • the assessment criteria that will be applied (including, in very exceptional circumstances set out in the Approved Assessment Strategy, where any assessments in relation to the Employer Set Project are to be marked by an Approved Provider and not externally marked by an Assessor, details of how marks should be allocated); • the conditions under which assessment evidence must be generated; • the forms of assessment evidence that must be retained by the Approved Provider and the expectations around this; • the grades available for the TQ Core Component and that these grades are for the External Examination and Employer Set Project in combination; and • (in very exceptional circumstances set out in the Approved Assessment Strategy, where any assessments in relation to the Employer Set Project are to be marked by an Approved Provider and not externally marked by an Assessor) details of how Moderation will be conducted.

Product	Description
	<p>The Scheme of Assessment shall also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • specify the relevant weightings as between the External Examination and the Employer Set Project; and • outline the minimum performance requirements for each judgemental grade required for the TQ Core Component (and each judgemental grade shall reference both the External Examination and Employer Set Project). <p><i>Occupational Specialist Components</i></p> <p>The Scheme of Assessment shall clearly set out (in relation to each Occupational Specialist Component) an explanation for Approved Providers of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the performance outcomes and how these are mapped to the Former Supplier's Specification of Content and, if relevant, the Outline Content; • the assessment task(s) for the relevant Occupational Specialist Component; • the duration of the assessment; • the number of marks for the assessment; • how and when the TQ Live Assessment Materials will be made available; • the assessment criteria that will be applied (including, in very exceptional circumstances set out in the Approved Assessment Strategy, where any assessments in relation to the relevant Occupational Specialist Component are to be marked by an Approved Provider and not externally marked by an Assessor, details of how marks should be allocated); • the conditions under which Student assessment evidence must be generated; • the forms of Student assessment evidence that must be retained by the Approved Provider and the expectations around this; • any permissions/prohibitions with respect to different Occupational Specialist Components being taken in combination; • the grades available for the relevant Occupational Specialist Component; and • (in very exceptional circumstances set out in the Approved Assessment Strategy, where any assessments in relation to the relevant Occupational Specialist Component are to be marked by an Approved Provider and not externally marked by an Assessor) details of how Moderation will be conducted.

Product	Description
	<p>Approved Provider's Quality Assurance Process</p> <p>This part of the TQ Specification shall set out details of the Approved Provider's role in quality assuring the TQ assessments, to ensure compliance by the Supplier with its quality assurance obligations in the relevant part of the Supplier Response⁷, for example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • authentication – ensuring Students' assessment evidence is their own; • malpractice – for example during controlled conditions; and • any other activity required of Approved Providers by the Supplier to ensure regulatory/contractual requirements are met. <p>Additional Information for Approved Providers</p> <p>The TQ Specification shall also clearly set out:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the Qualification Purpose; and • the prior learning requirements for the TQ (if applicable). <p>The TQ Specification shall also clearly set out, or provide appropriate links to, information regarding:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • calculating grades (e.g. aggregation and scaling); • submitting general queries; • access arrangements, Reasonable Adjustments and Special Consideration; • enquiries about results and Appeals; • retakes; and • any guidance in relation to delivery of the TQ.

⁷ The proposed assurance arrangements should form part of the Supplier Response.

Product	Description
TQ Specimen Assessment Materials	<p>The TQ Specimen Assessment Materials shall comprise examples of assessments that are representative of the approach the Assessment Strategy proposes is used in live operation and shall be produced to the same quality standard. The TQ Specimen Assessment Materials shall cover each of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TQ Core Component – External Examination – sample question paper and mark scheme for the/each assessment, together with mapping to the Former Supplier’s Specification of Content and, if relevant, the Outline Content and sampling approach proposed; • TQ Core Component – Employer Set Project – assessment tasks/requirements for each available option and assessment criteria; and • Occupational Specialist Component – practical assessment tasks/requirements and assessment criteria for each Occupational Specialist Component. <p>TQ Specimen Assessment Materials for all components of the TQ will be validated by a sufficient and representative number of Employers as agreed by the Authority.</p>
TQ Live Assessment Materials	<p>The live assessment materials (modelled on the TQ Specimen Assessment Materials and taking into account (as applicable) performance demonstrated by previous TQ Live Assessment Materials) that are to form the basis of assessment for the TQ for the relevant Academic Year.</p>
Exemplification Materials	<p>Guide Standard Exemplification Materials</p> <p>Guide Standard Exemplification Materials shall include indicative ‘guide’ examples of Student assessment evidence which the Supplier judges would be likely to meet the minimum requirements for Occupational Entry Competence and higher grades in each Occupational Specialist Component. Guide Standard Exemplification Materials will be produced in consultation with and validated by Employers. Guide Standard Exemplification Materials must accurately portray student assessment evidence and may include, but is not limited to, the use of photographic, audio or video evidence accompanied by an explanatory commentary.</p> <p>Grade Standard Exemplification Materials</p> <p>Grade Standard Exemplification Materials shall include actual marked examples of Students’ assessment evidence, selected after awarding, which:</p>

Product	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • have met the minimum requirements for Occupational Entry Competence and higher grades in each Occupational Specialist Component; • are produced (and reviewed on an ongoing basis) in consultation with and validated by Employers; • may be used to train Assessors (and any assessors employed or engaged by an Approved Provider and any Moderators where permitted in accordance with the Approved Assessment Strategy) to ensure that Student assessment evidence is assessed to the correct standard consistently, provided always that if the materials are used to train such Assessors (and any assessors and Moderators), the Supplier shall ensure that the spread of marks covered by the materials (including the Grade Standard Exemplification Materials) that are used for such training shall not be restricted to the grade boundaries but shall include material at a range of other marks; and • meet the requirements of SR 2.7(3) of Service Requirement 2. <p>Student assessment evidence may include, but is not limited to, the use of photographic, audio or video evidence accompanied by an explanatory commentary.</p>
Implementation and Delivery Plan	<p>A detailed explanation of the Supplier's proposed approach to successfully designing, developing and delivering the TQ throughout the Term (the level of detail in respect of the whole (and each relevant part of such Term) being commensurate with the level of detail that can reasonably be expected to be known by and/or available to the Supplier from time to time in respect of such whole or part of the Term), including evidence of the achievability of the proposed approach against the TQ Critical Path Diagram.</p> <p>It shall present a clear and achievable overall timetable for the delivery of all of the Services.</p> <p>The Implementation and Delivery Plan shall include information about the Supplier's:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • programme and project management approach and project expertise to develop the design, content, assessment and delivery of the TQ, including details of delivery risks and plan to mitigate such risks; • financial modelling on cost of design, development and delivery of the TQ and delivery of the Services;

Product	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • approach to working with Stakeholders (including, if relevant, the T Level Panel up to Interim Milestone 1) in relation to the design, development delivery and ongoing update of the TQ and the Services (including consultation with Eligible Providers to ensure the quality of the Initial TQ Deliverables at each Milestone); • approach to working with Stakeholders and organisations associated with and/or providing advice and/or guidance in relation to Students with special educational needs and disabilities in the design, development, delivery and update of the TQ and the Services, including a process for regularly reporting on progress; • approach to sharing early and/or amended drafts of the Initial TQ Deliverables and TQ Deliverables with Eligible Providers and/or Approved Providers (as applicable), including how such documents will be shared and when; • capacity to scale up in relation to demand and in response to delivery challenges to ensure overall delivery remains on track; • ability to develop and implement innovative solutions; • approach to ensuring that Management Information is interoperable with the Authority's systems and processes during the design, development and live operation of the TQ; • proposals for efficiently supporting Providers to deliver the TQ and to answer related enquiries and address related complaints (including Post-Result Services) made by telephone, by post and by other electronic correspondence efficiently and effectively; • process for raising delays or concerns; and • details of proposed joint working between T Level Awarding Organisations (as contemplated by Schedule 4 (<i>Co-operation</i>)) to support (amongst other things) the effective and efficient delivery of the T Level Programme and to streamline administration relating to the T Levels Programme in the interests of Students and Providers. <p>The Implementation and Delivery Plan shall evidence that the Supplier has, or will have:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IT infrastructure and systems to support the design, development, delivery and award of the TQ; • secured any relevant third party contracts to support delivery of the TQ; and • processes for the design, development, delivery and award of the TQ.
Resource Plan	A detailed explanation of the Supplier's proposed approach to resourcing to ensure performance of the Services, and the successful design, development and delivery of the TQ, which shall be in the format of the template Resource Plan issued by the Authority as part of the procurement process leading to the award of this Contract.

Product	Description
	<p>The Resource Plan shall include detail about:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • all types of resources required for delivery of the Services, including a distinction between those that will be dedicated to the TQ and those that will be used for other qualifications or business areas; • the resources that will be internal and those that will be external; • the skills and experience profiles for the required resources; • any existing skills or knowledge gaps that may exist with resources already in place and how and when additional resources will be recruited, mobilised, trained and managed; • the number of resources required (including the number of Assessors (and any Moderators where permitted in accordance with the Approved Assessment Strategy) required); • what the resources would be required to deliver and by when; • how long the relevant resources would be engaged; • processes, measures and strategies that will ensure proper, effective and resilient resourcing so that the TQ will at all times operate in accordance with the Service Requirements; • processes for keeping resource requirements under review; • the proposed approach to the recruitment (including the timescales for and number) of Assessors (and any Moderators where permitted in accordance with the Approved Assessment Strategy) which have recent relevant industry experience, including the trajectory that will be required to be maintained to meet the requirements for the provision of Assessors (and (where applicable) Moderators) under this Service Requirements; • the proposed approach to the training (including the timescales) of Assessors (and any Moderators where permitted in accordance with the Approved Assessment Strategy) which have recent relevant industry experience, including the trajectory that will be required to be maintained to meet the requirements for the provision of Assessors (and (where applicable) Moderators) under this Service Requirements; • the assessment expertise, which will be used to deliver assessment design and processes set out in the Assessment Strategy; and • the occupationally specific subject expertise needed to devise and assess Occupational Specialist Components.
Submission Issues Log	The log of issues raised by the Authority in respect of the Initial TQ Deliverables following a Submission and the Supplier's detailed description of how each such issue has been resolved.

Product	Description
Risk Register	The Supplier's register detailing any events, matters and/or circumstances which it reasonably foresees (acting in accordance with Good Industry Practice) may impact upon and/or risk the successful performance of the Services by the Supplier in accordance with this Contract (or, where the Supplier has failed to create, maintain and/or update such register, such register as would detail such events, matters and/or circumstances if the Supplier was complying with its obligations under this Contract).
Issues Log	The Supplier's log detailing any events, matters and/or circumstances which have occurred and which may impact (or have impacted) upon and/or risk the successful performance of the Services by the Supplier in accordance with this Contract (or, where the Supplier has failed to create, maintain and/or update such log, such log as would detail such events, matters and/or circumstances if the Supplier was complying with its obligations under this Contract).
Provider Approval Criteria	<p>The Supplier's criteria for the approval of Eligible Providers to deliver the TQ which shall:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ensure that the Eligible Provider's ability to deliver the TQ to the required standards and expectations is assessed and verified; • ensure that the expertise of the Eligible Provider to deliver the TQ to the required standards and expectations is assessed and verified; • ensure that resources available to the Eligible Provider to deliver the TQ in line with the required standards and expectations is assessed and verified; • promote accessibility of the TQ to all Eligible Providers; • not impose any undue and/or overburdensome administrative, financial and/or operational requirements and/or require any change in the existing administrative, financial and/or operational aspects of an Eligible Provider's business and/or operations, in either case, which could not reasonably be expected by an Eligible Provider as being strictly necessary to deliver the TQ (having regard to the administrative, financial and/or operational aspects of the business and/or operations within which Providers (operating in the same or substantially similar business and/or operations as the Eligible Provider) operate; and • not be inconsistent with and/or lead to a breach of the requirements of clause 7.1 (<i>Interaction with Providers</i>).
Assessment Guidance for Providers	Assessment Guidance shall be produced along with the specimen assessment materials (SAMs) and will

Product	Description
	<p>include guidance to ensure that Providers are fully supported to prepare students for assessment.</p> <p>This guidance must include information relating to each component, task or similar activity.</p> <p>Guidance must also include but is not limited to, information on how to prepare for and administer assessments and where applicable, how to submit assessment evidence, guidance on marking and moderation as well as any other information that is required to ensure that students and Providers are fully prepared for assessments. The content must be tailored for each series and identify and expand on the guidance given for all practical assessments.</p> <p>Assessment Guidance must be produced in consultation with a sufficient and representative sample of Providers.</p>

ANNEX 1 – QUALIFICATION PURPOSE

The purpose of the level 3 TQ is to ensure Students have the knowledge, skills and behaviours needed to progress into skilled employment or higher level technical training relevant to the T Level.⁸

To achieve this, each level 3 TQ must:

- provide reliable evidence of Students' attainment in relation to:
 - the core knowledge and skills relevant to the Route and Occupational Specialist Component(s) covered by the TQ; and
 - the knowledge, skills and behaviours required for at least one Occupational Specialist Component relevant to the TQ;
- be up-to-date, ensuring the knowledge, skills and behaviours needed for the Occupations have continued currency among Employers and other end-users;
- ensure maths, English and digital skills continue to be applied where they are essential to achieve occupationally relevant outcomes;
- ensure the minimum pass grade standard for Occupational Specialist Components attests to Occupational Entry Competence, meets employer expectations, and is as close to full occupational competence as possible;
- allow end users to accurately identify Students' level of attainment and effectively differentiate their performance;
- provide a clear and coherent basis for development of suitably demanding high-quality level 3 courses, which enable Students to realise their potential;
- provide Students with the opportunity to manage and improve their own performance; and
- support fair access to attainment for all Students who take the TQ, including those with special educational needs and disabilities.

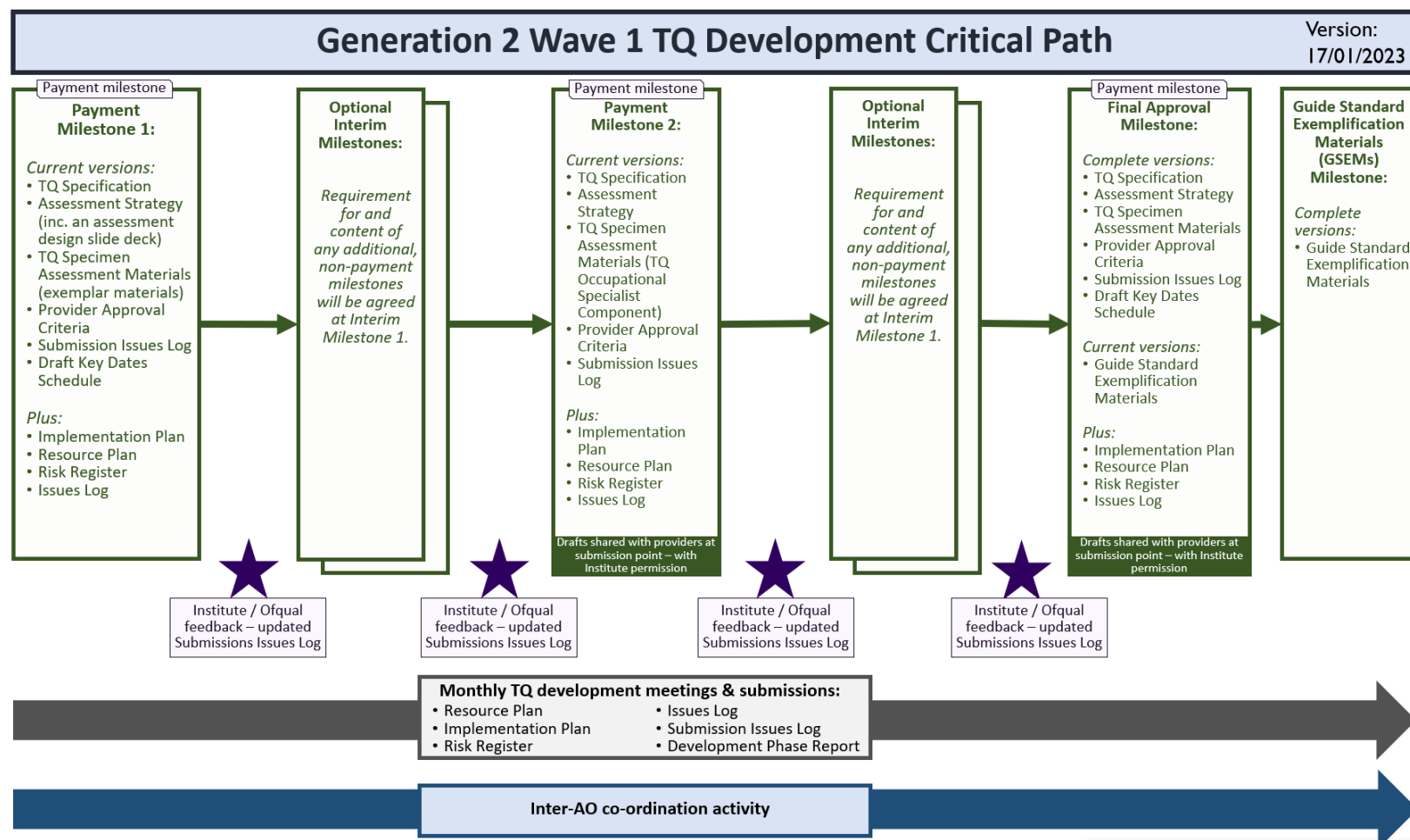
⁸ The Authority may only grant IfATE Approval of the qualification "if satisfied that by obtaining the qualification a person demonstrates that he or she has attained as many of the outcomes set out in the standards as may reasonably be expected to be attained by undertaking a course of education" (sA2DA(3) of the 2009 Act).

ANNEX 2 – INTENTIONALLY BLANK

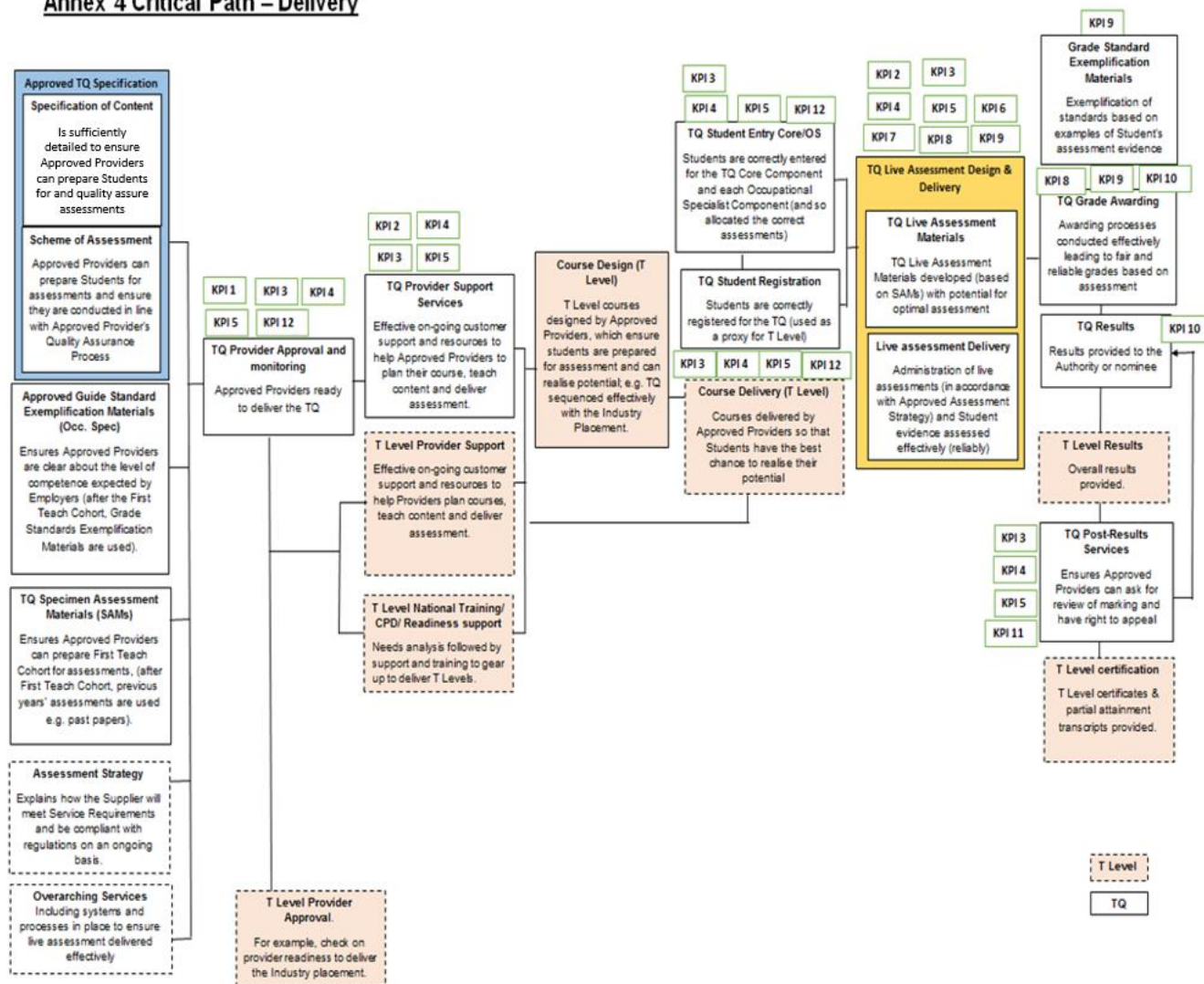
ANNEX 3 – FORMER SUPPLIER'S TQ SPECIFICATION

The TQ Specification content for this Annex is contained in a separate folder - at GEN2W1_ITT_Attachment_11_TQ_Specs

ANNEX 4 – TQ CRITICAL PATH DIAGRAM



Annex 4 Critical Path – Delivery



ANNEX 5 – INDICATIVE KEY DATES SCHEDULE⁹

To meet the requirements of Schedule 4 (*Co-operation*) the Supplier, working with other T Level Awarding Organisations, will need to produce a Key Dates Schedule, which secures the efficient and effective delivery of each assessment series for the TQ. Within the Key Dates Schedule, the deadline for submitting TQ Student registration data to the Authority must be in November in the first year of study. For a summer assessment series results must be issued on or no later than the date A level results are issued.

For a summer assessment series the key dates could include but are not restricted to:

Key Date	Description	Assessment series
November (Yr1)	Deadline for submitting TQ Student registration data to the Authority	All
3 rd week Feb	Deadline for entries for assessments by Approved Providers	June
3 rd week Feb	Final date for submitting Reasonable Adjustment requests to the Supplier by Approved Providers	June
4 th week Feb	Assessment timetable issued	June
2 nd week May	First date for submitting Special Consideration requests to the Supplier	June
2 nd week May-3 rd week June	Assessments take place	June
3 rd week August	Restricted release of T Level results to Approved Providers by the Authority	June
3 rd week August	Release of results to Students by the Authority	June

⁹ This is an indicative Key Dates Schedule. Exact dates and further key dates will need to be agreed between the Supplier and other T Level Awarding Organisations through Schedule 4 (*Co-operation*) and the resulting Key Dates Schedule must be Approved by the Authority.

Key Date	Description	Assessment series
3 rd week August	Release of more detailed TQ results data from the Supplier	June
3 rd week September	Appeals and assessment review requests made	June
4 th week Nov	T Level certificates and statements of achievement issued by the Department (or the function may be delegated to the Authority)	All

ANNEX 6 – TQ CONTENT UPDATING SCHEDULE

TQ Content Updating Schedule: Inclusive TQ Changes

Schedule Date	Activity
By end November (Academic Year X ¹⁰ -1)	Where the Authority carries out an annual review contemplated by clause 8.4, the Authority shall (where the Authority considers that the outcome of that review gives rise to any one or more Inclusive TQ Changes that the Authority requires to be implemented in accordance with this TQ Content Updating Schedule) submit to the Supplier an annual guidance note setting out such Inclusive TQ Changes.
December to February (Academic Year X-1)	The Supplier shall reflect any Inclusive TQ Changes arising out of the relevant annual guidance note (and any additional updates the Supplier proposes should be included as part of the annual review) in the Approved Initial TQ Deliverables or the TQ Deliverables (as the case may be) and/or any other Products and/or documents associated with the TQ (as applicable).
By end February (Academic Year X-1)	The Supplier shall submit the relevant Approved Initial TQ Deliverables, TQ Deliverables, Products and/or documents (as the case may be) as amended to reflect the Inclusive TQ Changes in question to the Authority for agreement.
March (Academic Year X-1)	<p>(a) The Authority shall either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • confirm to the Supplier its agreement to the relevant amended Approved Initial TQ Deliverables, TQ Deliverables, Products and/or documents; or • notify the Supplier that the whole or part of such amended Approved Initial TQ Deliverables, TQ Deliverables, Products and/or documents are not agreed (and provide details of the comments and/or objections that the Authority has in relation to such documents). <p>(b) The Supplier shall (as soon as reasonably practicable following receipt of the Authority's notice) make such amendments to the whole or relevant part (as the case may be) of the Approved Initial TQ Deliverables, TQ Deliverables, Products and/or documents as are necessary to address any comments and/or objections</p>

¹⁰ Where Academic Year X shall be the Academic Year in which the agreed amended documents reflecting the relevant Inclusive TQ Changes shall (where applicable) be implemented by Approved Providers for the new Cohort of Students.

	of the Authority and resubmit such amended documents to the Authority for agreement, to which the provisions of paragraph (a) (immediately above) shall apply.
The earlier of the end of March (Academic Year X-1) and (where applicable) the date of agreement by the Authority to the relevant amended documents	The Supplier shall make available any agreed amended Approved Initial TQ Deliverables or TQ Deliverables and (where applicable) any Products and/or documents to Approved Providers and facilitate the implementation by Approved Providers of such amended Approved Initial TQ Deliverables, TQ Deliverables, Products and/or documents, provided always that where part of any such amended document is subject to further amendment (as required by the Authority pursuant to paragraph (a) above), the Supplier shall not (unless otherwise agreed with the Authority) make any part of that relevant Approved Initial TQ Deliverable, TQ Deliverable, Product or document available to Approved Providers until the Supplier has made such amendments as are necessary to address the comments and/or objections of the Authority referred to in paragraph (a) above and the Authority has either confirmed its agreement to the resubmitted document or notified the Supplier that such document (containing only those amendments that have been agreed by the Authority) may be made available to Approved Providers.
September (Academic Year X)	Any agreed amended Approved Initial TQ Deliverables or TQ Deliverables and (where applicable) any Products and/or documents shall be implemented by Approved Providers for the new Cohort of Students.

TQ Content Updating Schedule: Exclusive TQ Changes

Schedule Date	Activity
End May (Academic Year X ¹¹ -2)	Where the Authority carries out an annual review contemplated by clause 8.4, the Authority shall (where the Authority considers that the outcome of that review gives rise to any one or more Exclusive TQ Changes that the Authority requires to be implemented in accordance with this TQ Content Updating Schedule) submit to the Supplier an annual guidance note setting out such Exclusive TQ Changes.
June (Academic Year X-2) to September (Academic Year X-1)	The Supplier shall reflect any Exclusive TQ Changes arising out of the relevant annual guidance note in the Approved Initial TQ Deliverables or the TQ Deliverables (as the case may be) and/or any other Products and/or documents associated with the TQ (as applicable).

¹¹ Where Academic Year X shall be the Academic Year in which the agreed amended documents reflecting the relevant Exclusive TQ Changes shall (where applicable) be implemented by Approved Providers for the new Cohort of Students.

By End September (Academic Year X-1)	The Supplier shall submit the relevant Approved Initial TQ Deliverables, TQ Deliverables, Products and/or documents (as the case may be) as amended to reflect the Exclusive TQ Changes in question to the Authority for IfATE Approval.
October to November (Academic Year X-1)	<p>(a) The Authority shall either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> confirm to the Supplier that the relevant amended Approved Initial TQ Deliverables, TQ Deliverables, Products and/or documents meet the requirements for IfATE Approval; or notify the Supplier that the whole or part of such amended Approved Initial TQ Deliverables, TQ Deliverables, Products and/or documents do not meet the requirements for IfATE Approval (and provide details of the comments and/or objections that the Authority has in relation to such documents). <p>(b) The Supplier shall (as soon as reasonably practicable following receipt of the Authority's notice) make such amendments to the whole or relevant part (as the case may be) of the Approved Initial TQ Deliverables, TQ Deliverables, Products and/or documents as are necessary to address any comments and/or objections of the Authority and resubmit such amended documents to the Authority for IfATE Approval, to which the provisions of paragraph (a) (immediately above) shall apply.</p>
The earlier of the beginning of December (Academic Year X-1) and (where applicable) the date of IfATE Approval being achieved in relation to the relevant amended documents	The Supplier shall make available any amended Approved Initial TQ Deliverables or TQ Deliverables and (where applicable) any Products and/or documents that have achieved IfATE Approval to Approved Providers and facilitate the implementation by Approved Providers of such amended Approved Initial TQ Deliverables, TQ Deliverables, Products and/or documents, provided always that where part of any such amended document is subject to further amendment (as required by the Authority pursuant to paragraph (a) above), the Supplier shall not (unless otherwise agreed with the Authority) make any part of that relevant Approved Initial TQ Deliverable, TQ Deliverable, Product or document available to Approved Providers until the Supplier has made such amendments as are necessary to address the comments and/or objections of the Authority referred to in paragraph (a) above and the Authority has either confirmed that such amended resubmitted document has achieved IfATE Approval or notified the Supplier that such document (containing only those amendments on which the Authority would be prepared to award IfATE Approval) may be made available to Approved Providers.

September (Academic Year X)	Any amended Approved Initial TQ Deliverables or TQ Deliverables and (where applicable) any Products and/or documents that have achieved IfATE Approval shall be implemented by Approved Providers for the new Cohort of Students.
-----------------------------	---

ANNEX 7 – INITIAL DEVELOPMENT MILESTONES

This Annex sets out the submission requirements for the three Milestones at which the Authority will render initial, interim and final payments of the Development Charge.

Further interim submission Milestones may be added to this timetable where these are agreed as part of the agreement at Interim Milestone 1. This decision will be influenced by the quantum of change to the TQ that is approved by the Authority at that initial Milestone.

In the event of any conflict and/or inconsistency between the provisions of this Annex 7 and the provisions of Annex 4 (*TQ Critical Path Diagram*) to this Service Requirements, the provisions of this Annex 7 shall prevail.

Milestone	Submission Date	Submission
Interim Milestone 1	20 January 2025 (indicative)	<p>TQ Specification. A draft version of the complete TQ Specification, which takes into account any comments, objections, recommendations and/or requirements notified by the Authority to the Supplier in respect of the Supplier's Response and/or arising out of or in connection with the submission of such Product at any previous TQ Development Meeting, and which includes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">(a) a complete Specification of Content for all Components which fully covers the Former Supplier's TQ Specification and, if relevant, the Outline Content and any proposed changes to the Former Supplier's Specification of Content;(b) the proposed Guided Learning hours for each Component;(c) a draft of the Scheme of Assessment which:<ul style="list-style-type: none">(i) specifies the assessment objectives for each part of the TQ Core Component;

Milestone	Submission Date	Submission
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (ii) defines each assessment method to be used for each Component; (iii) specifies indicative weightings for the assessments within the Components. <p>TQ Specimen Assessment Materials. Sample indicative assessment tasks, and assessment criteria/mark schemes which takes into account any comments, objections, recommendations and/or requirements notified by the Authority to the Supplier in respect of the Supplier's Response and/or arising out of or in connection with the submission of such Product at any previous TQ Development Meeting for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) each part of the TQ Core Component; and (b) at least one Occupational Specialist Component. <p>The submission must support the exemplification of the proposals within the assessment design walkthrough and include as a minimum the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (c) exemplar questions that cover the variety of questions types and accompanying mark scheme including indicative content; (d) exemplar tasks for one example of an Employer Set Project together with an exemplar mark scheme and indicative content; and (e) exemplar tasks for one Occupational Specialist Component Assignment together with an exemplar mark scheme including indicative content.

Milestone	Submission Date	Submission
		<p>Assessment Strategy. A draft of the Assessment Strategy, which contains a clear explanation of the structure of the assessment design and strategy for example, the proposed number of assessments and/or assessment tasks, the duration of each and the conditions under which each would be taken. For the Employer Set Project and the Occupational Specialisms, the draft of the Assessment Strategy should also set out the proposed approach to marking and how students' application of skills and knowledge will be assessed. The draft of the Assessment Strategy shall meet (so far as is reasonably practicable having regard to the timing of Interim Milestone 1) all of the requirements of the Product Description for the Assessment Strategy and take into account any comments, objections, recommendations and/or requirements notified by the Authority to the Supplier in respect of the Supplier's Response and/or arising out of or in connection with the submission of such Product at any previous TQ Development Meeting.</p> <p>The Submission must include an:</p> <p>Assessment design slide deck. A slide deck which contains a clear explanation of the structure of the assessment design and explanation of the design decision rationale for the TQ Core Component and Occupational Specialist Component. The slide deck must contain the structural elements and rationale in accordance with any guidance on the Service Requirements issued by the Authority and take into account any comments, objections, recommendations and/or requirements notified by the Authority to the Supplier in respect of the Supplier's Response and/or arising out of or in connection with the submission of such Product at any previous TQ Development Meeting. The assessment design slide deck will be used to facilitate a walkthrough with the Authority shortly following the submission.</p> <p>Implementation and Delivery Plan. A complete version of the Implementation and Delivery Plan, which meets (so far as is reasonably practicable having regard to the timing of Interim Milestone 1) all of the requirements of the Product Description for the Implementation and Delivery Plan and which also takes in account any comments, objections, recommendations</p>

Milestone	Submission Date	Submission
		<p>and/or requirements notified by the Authority to the Supplier in respect of the Supplier's Response and/or arising out of or in connection with the submission of such Product at any previous TQ Development Meeting</p> <p>Resource Plan. A complete version of the Resource Plan, which meets (so far as is reasonably practicable having regard to the timing of Interim Milestone 1) all of the requirements of the Product Description for the Resource Plan and which also takes into account any comments, objections, recommendations and/or requirements notified by the Authority to the Supplier in respect of the Supplier's Response and/or arising out of or in connection with the submission of such Product at any previous TQ Development Meeting.</p> <p>Provider Approval Criteria. A complete version of the Provider Approval Criteria, which meets (so far as is reasonably practicable having regard to the timing of Interim Milestone 1) all of the requirements of the Product Description for the Provider Approval Criteria and which also takes into account any comments, objections, recommendations and/or requirements notified by the Authority to the Supplier in respect of the Supplier's Response and/or arising out of or in connection with the submission of such Product at any previous TQ Development Meeting.</p> <p>Risk Register and Issues Log. An updated and complete version of each of the Risk Register and the Issues Log which meet all of the requirements of the Product Description for the Risk Register or Issues Log (as applicable) and which take into account any comments, objections, recommendations and/or requirements notified by the Authority to the Supplier in respect of the Supplier's Response and/or arising out of or in connection with the submission of such Product at any previous TQ Development Meeting.</p> <p>Submission Issues Log. An updated Submission Issues Log which meets all of the requirements of the Product Description for the Submission Issues Log, and which explains how each issue raised by the Authority to date has been dealt with in this Submission.</p>

Milestone	Submission Date	Submission
		<p>Employer and Provider Engagement Strategy. A complete version of the Employer and Provider Engagement Strategy, which meets (so far as is reasonably practicable having regard to the timing of Interim Milestone 1) all of the requirements of the Product Description for the Employer and Provider Engagement Strategy and which also takes into account any comments, objections, recommendations and/or requirements notified by the Authority to the Supplier in respect of the Supplier's Response and/or arising out of or in connection with the submission of such Product at any previous TQ Development Meeting.</p>
Interim Milestone 2	31 March 2025 (indicative)	<p>TQ Specification. a complete version of the TQ Specification, which meets all of the requirements of the Product Description for the TQ Specification and which also takes into account any comments, objections, recommendations and/or requirements notified by the Authority to the Supplier at Interim Milestone 1 and/or arising out of or in connection with the submission of such Product at any previous TQ Development Meeting.</p> <p>TQ Specimen Assessment Materials and accompanying Assessment Guidance for Providers. A complete version of the TQ Occupational Specialist Component and each part of the TQ Core Component, and accompanying Assessment Guidance for Providers which meet all of the requirements of the Product Descriptions and which also take into account any comments, objections, recommendations and/or requirements notified by the Authority to the Supplier at Interim Milestone 1 and/or arising out of or in connection with the submission of such Product at any previous TQ Development Meeting.</p> <p>Assessment Strategy. A complete version of the Assessment Strategy, which meets all of the requirements of the Product Description for the Assessment Strategy and which also takes into account any comments, objections, recommendations and/or requirements notified by the Authority to the Supplier at Interim Milestone 1 and/or arising out of or in connection with the submission of such Product at any previous TQ Development Meeting.</p>

Milestone	Submission Date	Submission
		<p>Implementation and Delivery Plan. A complete version of the Implementation and Delivery Plan, which meets all of the requirements of the Product Description for the Implementation and Delivery Plan and which also takes into account any comments, objections, recommendations and/or requirements notified by the Authority to the Supplier at Interim Milestone 1 and/or arising out of or in connection with the submission of such Product at any previous TQ Development Meeting.</p> <p>Resource Plan. A complete version of the Resource Plan, which meets all of the requirements of the Product Description for the Resource Plan and which also takes into account any comments, objections, recommendations and/or requirements notified by the Authority to the Supplier at Interim Milestone 1 and/or arising out of or in connection with the submission of such Product at any previous TQ Development Meeting.</p> <p>Provider Approval Criteria. A complete version of the Provider Approval Criteria which meets (so far as is reasonably practicable having regard to the timing of Interim Milestone 4) all of the requirements of the Product Description for the Provider Approval Criteria and which also takes into account any comments, objections, recommendations and/or requirements notified by the Authority to the Supplier at Interim Milestone 1 and/or arising out of or in connection with the submission of such Product at any previous TQ Development Meeting.</p> <p>Risk Register and Issues Log. A complete version of each of the Risk Register and the Issues Log which meet all of the requirements of the Product Description for the Risk Register or Issues Log (as applicable) and which also take into account any comments, objections, recommendations and/or requirements notified by the Authority to the Supplier at Interim Milestone 1 and/or arising out of or in connection with the submission of such Product at any previous TQ Development Meeting.</p> <p>Submission Issues Log. An updated Submission Issues Log which meets all of the</p>

Milestone	Submission Date	Submission
		<p>requirements of the Product Description for the Submission Issues Log, and which explains how each issue raised by the Authority to date has been dealt with in this Submission.</p> <p>Employer and Provider Engagement Strategy. A complete version of the Employer and Provider Engagement Strategy, which meets all of the requirements of the Product Description for the Employer and Provider Engagement Strategy and which also takes into account any comments, objections, recommendations and/or requirements notified by the Authority to the Supplier at Interim Milestone 1 and/or arising out of or in connection with the submission of such Product at any previous TQ Development Meeting.</p>
Final Approval Milestone	26 May 2025 (indicative)	<p>TQ Specification. A complete version of the TQ Specification, which meets all of the requirements of the Product Description for the TQ Specification and which also takes into account any comments, objections, recommendations and/or requirements notified by the Authority to the Supplier at any previous Interim Milestone and/or arising out of or in connection with the submission of such Product at any previous TQ Development Meeting.</p> <p>TQ Specimen Assessment Materials and accompanying Assessment Guidance for Providers. A complete version of the TQ Specimen Assessment Materials, and accompanying Assessment Guidance for Providers which meet all of the requirements of the Product Descriptions and which also take into account any comments, objections, recommendations and/or requirements notified by the Authority to the Supplier at any previous Interim Milestone and/or arising out of or in connection with the submission of such Product at any previous TQ Development Meeting.</p> <p>Assessment Strategy. A complete version of the Assessment Strategy, which meets all of the requirements of the Product Description for the Assessment Strategy and which also takes into account any comments, objections, recommendations and/or requirements notified by the Authority to the Supplier at any previous Interim Milestone and/or arising out of or in</p>

Milestone	Submission Date	Submission
		<p>connection with the submission of such Product at any previous TQ Development Meeting.</p> <p>Implementation and Delivery Plan. A complete version of the Implementation and Delivery Plan, which meets all of the requirements of the Product Description for the Implementation and Delivery Plan and which also takes into account any comments, objections, recommendations and/or requirements notified by the Authority to the Supplier at any previous Interim Milestone and/or arising out of or in connection with the submission of such Product at any previous TQ Development Meeting.</p> <p>Resource Plan. A complete version of the Resource Plan, which meets all of the requirements of the Product Description for the Resource Plan and which also takes into account any comments, objections, recommendations and/or requirements notified by the Authority to the Supplier at any previous Interim Milestone and/or arising out of or in connection with the submission of such Product at any previous TQ Development Meeting.</p> <p>Provider Approval Criteria. A complete version of the Provider Approval Criteria, which meets all of the requirements of the Product Description for the Provider Approval Criteria and which also takes into account any comments, objections, recommendations and/or requirements notified by the Authority to the Supplier at any previous Interim Milestone and/or arising out of or in connection with the submission of such Product at any previous TQ Development Meeting.</p> <p>Risk Register and Issues Log. A complete version of each of the Risk Register and the Issues Log which meet all of the requirements of the Product Description for the Risk Register or Issues Log (as applicable) and which also take into account any comments, objections, recommendations and/or requirements notified by the Authority to the Supplier at any previous Interim Milestone and/or arising out of or in connection with the submission of such Product at any previous TQ Development Meeting.</p>

Milestone	Submission Date	Submission
		<p>Submission Issues Log. An updated Submission Issues Log which meets all of the requirements of the Product Description for the Submission Issues Log, and which explains how each issue raised by the Authority to date has been dealt with in this Submission.</p> <p>Employer and Provider Engagement Strategy. A complete version of the Employer and Provider Engagement Strategy, which meets all of the requirements of the Product Description for the Employer and Provider Engagement Strategy and which also takes into account any comments, objections, recommendations and/or requirements notified by the Authority to the Supplier at any previous Interim Milestone and/or arising out of or in connection with the submission of such Product at any previous TQ Development Meeting.</p> <p>Draft Key Dates Schedule. An updated version of the Key Dates Schedule.</p>
Guide Standard Exemplification Materials	February 2025 (Indicative)	<p>Exemplification Materials. A complete version of the Guide Standard Exemplification Materials for each Occupational Specialist Component, which meet all of the requirements of the Product Description for the Guide Standard Exemplification Materials and which also take into account any comments, objections, recommendations and/or requirements notified by the Authority to the Supplier at any Milestone and/or arising out of or in connection with the submission of such Product at any previous TQ Development Meeting or any other feedback.</p>

ANNEX 8 – ELIGIBLE PROVIDERS

Part 1 – Eligible Providers 2025 Cohort

The Eligible Providers for the Academic Year commencing 2025 are published on the Gov.uk website here:

<https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/providers-selected-to-deliver-t-levels>

Part 2 – Eligible Providers Subsequent Cohorts

The Authority shall, not later than 12 months prior to the commencement of the relevant Academic Year, notify the Supplier of the Eligible Providers for such Academic Year.

ANNEX 9 – MANAGEMENT INFORMATION

Information/ report	Description
Development Phase Report	<p>In the period prior to IfATE Approval, the Supplier shall prepare and provide a dashboard report (in such form as the Authority may specify from time to time) summarising:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the Supplier’s progress against and compliance (to date) with the Implementation and Delivery Plan (including progress against any milestones (including any Milestones)) and the Resource Plan; • how the Supplier is managing any risks and issues identified in the updated Risk Register and/or Issues Log, including the Supplier’s progress against any steps required by the Authority to be carried out by the Supplier in accordance with paragraph 11.1.2 of Part 1 of this Service Requirements; • how Employers (and other end users, including higher education providers) have been consulted in relation to the design of the TQ; and • such other information as the Authority may reasonably require from time to time.
Operational Delivery Report	<p>Monthly Performance Report</p> <p>The Supplier shall prepare and provide a dashboard report (in such form as the Authority may specify from time to time) summarising:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the Supplier’s progress against and compliance (to date) with the Implementation and Delivery Plan, the Resource Plan and the Key Dates Schedule for the relevant Academic Year; • how the Supplier is managing any risks and issues identified in the updated Risk Register and/or Issues Log, including the Supplier’s progress against any steps required by the Authority to be carried out by the Supplier in accordance with paragraph 11.1.2 of Part 1 of this Service Requirements; • for each KPI in respect of which the Performance Monitoring Period ends in that Contract Month: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ the actual performance achieved by the Supplier for that KPI during that Performance Monitoring Period; and ○ details of any Service Failure that occurred in respect of that KPI, together with the proposed KPI Improvement Plan;

Information/ report	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • details of the Supplier's progress against each KPI Improvement Plan that the Supplier is (or should be, if it was complying with its obligations under this Contract) carrying out and/or completing during the relevant Contract Month; • the Supplier's progress in carrying out any Designated Action notified by the Authority pursuant to clause 14.2 (<i>What may happen if there are issues with your provision of the Services</i>); • without prejudice to clause 14.1 (<i>What may happen if there are issues with your provision of the Services</i>), any Critical Service Failures occurring in the relevant Contract Month; • any areas of the Services (and/or the performance of the Services) where the Supplier reasonably considers that there could be innovations and/or improvements in the delivery and/or performance of the Services, including key risks and potential benefits; • progress in implementing, and the actual impact of, any innovations and/or improvements previously notified by the Supplier; • evidence demonstrating that the Supplier is achieving the overarching outcomes for each element of the Services, as set out in the first column of the Service Definitions Table; • the monitoring undertaken by the Supplier in accordance with paragraph 3.1.2 of Part 1 of this Service Requirements in the relevant Contract Month to include reporting on Provider usage of training, resources and other support materials made available by the Supplier; • any events, matters and/or circumstances referred to in paragraph 3.2 of Part 1 of this Service Requirements occurring in the relevant Contract Month, together with the progress (during the relevant Contract Month) of the Eligible Provider or Approved Provider (as the case may be) and the Supplier in taking the steps and/or actions referred to in paragraphs 3.3 and 3.4 of Part 1 of this Service Requirements; and • such other information as the Authority may reasonably require from time to time having regard to, amongst other things, the period in the Academic Year within which the relevant Contract Month falls. <p>In relation to the assessment of the Supplier's performance against each KPI, the Supplier shall submit all such evidence as is referred to in the fifth column of the Table set out in Annex 1 to Schedule 15 (<i>Monitoring of Performance</i>), other than where such evidence is stated to be obtained via a survey. Notwithstanding the evidence that the Supplier is required to provide (referred to in the fifth column of the Table set out in Annex 1 to Schedule 15 (<i>Monitoring of Performance</i>)) to enable</p>

Information/ report	Description
	<p>the assessment of the Supplier's performance against each KPI, the Supplier shall also include within this Monthly Performance Report the following data and information (broken down by KPI):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • KPI 1 (Provider approval and monitoring): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ the number of Eligible Providers applying to become Approved Providers, broken down into those Eligible Providers that are seeking a full approval and those Eligible Providers that are seeking to extend an existing approval; ○ the number and details of Eligible Providers that have submitted an application to become an Approved Provider and who have (i) not become an Approved Provider and (ii) become an Approved Provider; ○ the number and details of Eligible Providers that are awaiting a decision on their application to become an Approved Provider; ○ the number and details of Eligible Providers in respect of which a decision has been made within 30 Working Days of receipt by the Supplier of the relevant application; and ○ details of the actual monitoring of Approved Providers undertaken by the Supplier in the relevant Contract Month. • KPI 2 (Approved Provider preparedness).¹² • KPI 3 (Queries from Eligible Providers and Approved Providers): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ the number of letters and other forms of electronic correspondence received (broken down by letter and each other form of electronic correspondence) and number of telephone calls received, in each case, in the relevant Contract Month; ○ a summary of key topics or queries being asked; ○ details of the percentage of such queries being resolved within the Target Service Level (broken down by letter (and each other form of electronic correspondence) and telephone calls); and ○ details of any repeat queries (including where any such queries have been raised and/or resolved in any previous Contract Month). • KPI 4 (Complaints): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ the number of complaints received in the relevant Contract Month; ○ a summary of the nature of each such complaint; ○ details of the percentage of such complaints being resolved within the applicable Target Service Level;

¹² To be measured by a survey undertaken or commissioned by the Authority.

Information/ report	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ details of why any complaints that have not been resolved within the applicable Target Service Level have not been so resolved; and ○ details of any repeat complaints or further complaints linked to a previous complaint (including where any such complaints have been made and/or resolved in any previous Contract Month). • KPI 5 (Provider satisfaction).¹³ • KPI 6 (Numbers of appropriately qualified and trained Assessors (and (where applicable) Moderators)): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ details of the actual number of Assessors (and (where applicable) Moderators) that have been recruited, trained and retained in the relevant Contract Month; and ○ details of the number of Assessors (and (where applicable) Moderators) contemplated by the relevant Contract Month (or in line with the trajectory (as the case may be)) as set out in the then current Implementation and Delivery Plan and/or Resource Plan. The Authority may require the Supplier to provide this data more frequently than monthly during the key assessment delivery period. • KPI 7 (Quality of TQ Live Assessment Materials): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ a summary of activities completed in the relevant Contract Month relating to the development of the TQ Live Assessment Materials, as contemplated in the Assessment Strategy and/or the Implementation Plan; ○ a summary of the actual quality assurance activity undertaken by the Supplier in the relevant Contract Month; ○ a summary of the quality assurance activity (if any) that is contemplated in the Assessment Strategy as being undertaken by the Supplier in or during (as the case may be) the relevant Contract Month; and ○ details of any errors reported in the TQ Live Assessment Materials in the relevant Contract Month. • KPI 8 (Student assessment evidence assessed and processed): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ a summary of the actual quality assurance activity undertaken by the Supplier to verify the quality of the processing of Student assessment evidence for awarding in the relevant Contract Month, together with evidence that such

¹³ To be measured by a survey undertaken or commissioned by the Authority.

Information/ report	Description
	<p>processing has been undertaken accurately and consistently;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ a summary of the quality assurance activity (if any) that is contemplated in the Assessment Strategy as being undertaken by the Supplier to verify the quality of the processing of Student assessment evidence for awarding in or during (as the case may be) the relevant Contract Month; ○ details of the cumulative volume and percentages of Student assessment evidence processed (broken down to the TQ Core Component and each Occupational Specialist Component) by the end of the relevant Contract Month, as against the planned trajectory and dates in the Implementation and Delivery Plan applicable to that Contract Month; and ○ details of any errors, inaccuracies and/or inconsistencies identified in any processed Student assessment evidence in the relevant Contract Month. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • KPI 9 (Validation of Grade Standard Exemplification Materials):¹⁴ For each Occupational Specialism: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ a summary of the employer validation activity undertaken to validate Grade Standard Exemplification Materials ○ the number of employers who have been involved in the validation process; including details as to whether they have been involved in the panel prior to each validation exercise ○ evidence of validation from at least 5 different Employers relevant to the Occupational Specialism that validate the Grade Standard Exemplification Materials. ○ evidence of validation from at least 5 different Employers relevant to the Occupational Specialism that the Grade Standard Exemplification Materials are comparable to the Approved Guide Standard Exemplification Materials. • KPI 10 (Student assessment results submitted by relevant date): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ details of the cumulative volume and percentages of Student results submitted by the Supplier to the Authority (or the Authority's nominee (as applicable)) by the end of the relevant Contract Month; and

¹⁴ To be assessed by the receipt and review by the Authority of evidence of validation from Employers in the relevant Contract Month.

Information/ report	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ details of the cumulative volume and percentages of Student results envisaged in the Implementation and Delivery Plan to be submitted by the Supplier to the Authority (or the Authority's nominee (as the case may be)) by the end of the relevant Contract Month. • KPI 11 (Post-Results Services): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ the total volume of Post-Results Services (broken down by service) and percentage of each Post-Results Service (as against total Post-Results Services) undertaken by the Supplier in the relevant Contract Month; ○ detail of the timing of delivery of Post-Results Services against the applicable timeframes in Annex 10 (<i>Additional Services</i>) of this Service Requirements as contemplated by the Supplier's Response; and ○ detail of the proportion of remarks and Appeals which have resulted in grade increases or decreases (and summary of key reasons for any changes made). • KPI 12 (Submission of information): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ details of the Management Information, required or requested Products including Key Materials and/ or Ancillary Materials submitted in respect of the relevant Contract Month; ○ details of the Management Information, required or requested Products including Key Materials and/ or Ancillary Materials anticipated to be submitted in respect of the relevant Contract Month; and ○ details of any errors, inaccuracies and/or inconsistencies identified in any Management Information, required or requested Products including Key Materials and/ or Ancillary Materials submitted in respect of the relevant Contract Month (and/or any previous Contract Month). <p>Ongoing Development Services Report</p> <p>A dashboard report (in such form as the Authority may specify from time to time) summarising:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the Supplier's progress against and compliance (to date) with the TQ Content Updating Schedule (including progress against any milestones); • any proposed amendments and/or updates made to any Product during the relevant Contract Month pursuant to paragraphs 2.5 and/or 2.6 of Part 1 of this Service Requirements; and

Information/ report	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • such other information as the Authority may reasonably require from time to time. <p>Annual Services Report</p> <p>By the end of August each year, a high level overview of the Supplier's assessment of its performance during that Academic Year, summarising:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the key successes and areas for improvement in the delivery of the Services and/or the TQ; • in respect of the assessment cycles in that Academic Year, what important lessons were learned and how these will be addressed in following assessment cycles; • the key issues for the next following Academic Year; • how Employers have been consulted in relation to (and been involved in the design and delivery of) TQ assessment; • performance against the Social Value commitments under paragraph 13.1 (<i>Social Value Commitments</i>); and • (where appropriate), the preparations for handover at the end of the Term. <p>The Supplier shall also provide an updated Exit Plan in accordance with paragraph 2 of Schedule 12 (<i>Exit Management</i>).</p> <p>Annual Penetration Testing Report</p> <p>By the end of August each year, a summary of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the Supplier's findings of independent penetration testing undertaken to test the security of any IT systems and hosting environments that are used to handle, store or process IfATE Data; and • details of any necessary remedial works required as a result of such penetration testing.
Student registrations and Student entries (as referred to in paragraph 5 of Part 1 of this Service Requirements)	<p>In relation to the Supplier's obligations in paragraph 5.4 of Part 1 of this Service Requirements, the Supplier shall report the following information and data (in a spreadsheet but in such form as the Authority may specify from time to time):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the number of Students registered for the TQ by Approved Provider (including late registrations and/or registration amendments and very late registrations and/or registration amendments (each as referred to in Annex 10 to this Service Requirements)):

Information/ report	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ in the current Academic Year; and ○ in aggregate (including for the current Academic Year) during the Term to date; • the number of Student entries by Approved Provider (including late entries and/or entry amendments and very late entries and/or entry amendments (each as referred to in Annex 10 to this Service Requirement)) in the relevant Academic Year for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ the TQ Core Component; and ○ each Occupational Specialist Component, <p>together with the number of such entries in aggregate (including for the current Academic Year) for each of the TQ Core Component and each Occupational Specialist Component for all Academic Years during the Term to date;</p> • the number of withdrawn entries in the relevant Academic Year (by Approved Provider) for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ the TQ Core Component; and ○ each Occupational Specialist Component, <p>together with the number of such withdrawals in aggregate (including for the current Academic Year) for each of the TQ Core Component and each Occupational Specialist Component for all Academic Years during the Term to date; and</p> • such other information as the Authority may reasonably require from time to time.
TQ results (as referred to in paragraph 8 of Part 1 of this Service Requirements)	<p>In relation to the Supplier's obligations in paragraph 8.2 of Part 1 of this Service Requirements, the Supplier shall report the following information and data (in such form as the Authority may specify from time to time) to the Authority (or the Authority's nominee (as applicable)):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • results for each Student for the TQ Core Component and each Occupational Specialist Component that such Student has undertaken including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Unique Learner Number; ○ name of Approved Provider; ○ Supplier name; ○ details of the TQ achieved; ○ the grade awarded for each Component; ○ date of achievement; • the outcome of any Appeals, Clerical Check, Expedited Review of Marking, Review of Marking, and/or Review of Moderation (each as referred to in Annex 10 (<i>Additional Services</i>) to this Service Requirements)), including

Information/ report	Description
	<p>details of the nature of the Appeal and a summary of the grounds for the Appeal; and</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • such other information as the Authority may reasonably require from time to time, <p>to enable, amongst other things, the aggregation for T Level certification and inclusion in any Provider performance tables.</p>
Additional Services	<p>Data and information on the volume and nature of Additional Services being delivered to Approved Providers in the relevant Contract Month, in aggregate for the Academic Year to date and in aggregate (including for the current Academic Year) for all Academic Years during the Term to date (in spreadsheet format and in such form as the Authority may specify from time to time).</p>
Adjustments to Fees	<p>In advance of its publication and availability to Approved Providers and in accordance with clause 4.13 (<i>Pricing and payments</i>), proposed adjustments to the Fees for the following Academic Year.</p> <p>In accordance with clause 4.13 (<i>Pricing and payments</i>), proposed adjustments to the Rate Card for the following Academic Year.</p> <p>The information for each of the proposed adjustments to the Fees and the proposed adjustments to the Rate Card will be submitted separately in a spreadsheet format (in such form as the Authority may specify from time to time) and will include any proposed annual percentage change in each proposed Fee and each proposed rate in the Rate Card, as such proposed change shall be calculated in accordance with clauses 4.12 and 4.13 (<i>Pricing and payments</i>).</p>

ANNEX 10 – ADDITIONAL SERVICES

Additional Service	Additional Service Requirements
Access to Student assessment evidence	The Supplier shall within 10 Working Days following receipt of a request from the relevant Approved Provider, send (in such form as such Approved Provider shall request) to that Approved Provider a copy (including, as applicable, a PDF copy) of the relevant original marked Student assessment evidence or the whole or the relevant part (as the case may be) of the original TQ Live Assessment Materials to which the Student assessment evidence relates, to help the Approved Provider (or relevant Student (as the case may be)) decide whether to request a Review of Marking or Review of Moderation (each as defined below).
Additional Approved Provider support visit	The Supplier shall, as soon as reasonably practicable following receipt of a request from an Approved Provider, attend such Approved Provider's premises and provide such additional support as such Approved Provider reasonably requires, such as support in relation to misinterpretation of the TQ Specification.
Appeal	<p>The Supplier shall:</p> <p>(i) within 20 Working Days following receipt of a request from an Approved Provider for an Appeal, undertake a detailed review of all information, data and/or documents relating to the Appeal, including the assessment evidence relating to the whole or the relevant part of a Cohort or an individual Student (as the case may be); and</p> <p>(ii) within 20 Working Days following receipt of a request from an Approved Provider for an Appeal hearing, hold an Appeal hearing in which the Approved Provider or its representative(s) can make submissions in relation to the Appeal, including (where applicable) explaining its dissatisfaction with any grade(s) awarded in relation to the whole or any part of a Cohort or an individual Student (as the case may be),</p> <p>following which the Supplier shall notify the Approved Provider of the outcome of such Appeal and, where necessary, adjust the marks awarded to the whole or any part of a Cohort or an individual Student (as the case may be) and issue new results to the Authority (or its nominee (as the case may be)), provided always that this Additional Service shall only be deemed to be an Additional Service in respect of which a Fee shall be payable by the Approved Provider if, following the determination of such Appeal, the Approved Provider is not successful in the Appeal.</p>
Clerical Check	The Supplier within 10 Working Days following receipt of a request from an Approved Provider, undertake a detailed review of the relevant Student's assessment evidence and recount all of

Additional Service	Additional Service Requirements
	the marks that such Student has been awarded to ensure that the total number of marks awarded to such Student (leading to the award of the relevant grade(s)) equal the number of marks that should have been awarded to such Student and, where necessary, adjust the marks awarded to the Student, notify the Approved Provider of such adjustment and issue new results to the Authority (or its nominee (as the case may be)).
Expedited Review of Marking	The Supplier shall within 10 Working Days following receipt of a request from an Approved Provider, undertake an expedited Review of Marking (as defined below), provided always that this Additional Service shall only be deemed to be an Additional Service in respect of which a Fee shall be payable by the Approved Provider if, following the carrying out and completion of such an expedited Review of Marking, the grade(s) awarded to such Student is not changed.
Late entry or entry amendment	Where, following the entry deadline for the TQ Core Component and/or relevant Occupational Specialist Component specified in the Key Dates Schedule for the relevant Academic Year until the very late entry deadline for the TQ Core Component and/or relevant Occupational Specialist Component specified in the Key Dates Schedule for the relevant Academic Year, an Approved Provider requires a new Student to be entered for the TQ Core Component and/or relevant Occupational Specialist Component and/or an existing entry for a Student to be amended, the Supplier shall following receipt of a request from an Approved Provider no later than 20 Working Days prior to the commencement of the relevant assessment as determined in accordance with the relevant Key Dates Schedule, enter that Student for the TQ Core Component and/or relevant Occupational Specialist Component or amend that Student's entry for the TQ Core Component and/or relevant Occupational Specialist Component (as the case may be).
Late registration or registration amendment	Where, following the registration deadline for the TQ specified in the Key Dates Schedule for the relevant Academic Year until the very late registration deadline for the TQ specified in the Key Dates Schedule for the relevant Academic Year, an Approved Provider requires a new Student to be registered for the TQ and/or an existing registration for a Student to be amended, the Supplier shall following receipt of a request from an Approved Provider no later than 20 Working Days prior to the commencement of the relevant assessment as determined in accordance with the relevant Key Dates Schedule, register that Student for the TQ or amend that Student's registration for the TQ (as the case may be).
Retake	Where, in the period following the publication of the TQ results in accordance with paragraph 8 of Part 1 of this Service Requirements until two years after the end of the final Academic Year for the Cohort within which the relevant Student is included,

Additional Service	Additional Service Requirements
	<p>an Approved Provider requests that a Student wishes to retake all or any of the assessments for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the TQ Core Component - External Examination; • the TQ Core Component - Employer Set Project; and/or • an Occupational Specialist Component, <p>the Supplier shall carry out and complete its obligations in paragraphs 6.1.3 (<i>TQ live assessment and delivery</i>), 7 (<i>TQ grade awarding</i>), 8 (<i>TQ Results</i>) and 9 (<i>TQ Post Results Services</i>) (save to the extent that compliance with such obligations in that paragraph 9 (<i>TQ Post Results Services</i>) would otherwise require the performance of a further Additional Service and in respect of which the provisions applicable to that further Additional Service shall apply) in each case of Part 1 of this Service Requirements in respect of such Student.</p>
Review of Marking	<p>The Supplier shall within 25 Working Days following receipt of a request from an Approved Provider, undertake a detailed review of the relevant Student's assessment evidence alongside the TQ Live Assessment Materials applicable to such assessment evidence to ensure that the marking scheme has been complied with in full in relation to the marking of that Student's assessment evidence, provided always that this Additional Service shall only be deemed to be an Additional Service in respect of which a Fee shall be payable by the Approved Provider if, following the carrying out and completion of such review, the grade(s) awarded to such Student is not changed.</p>
Review of Moderation	<p>The Supplier shall within 25 Working Days following receipt of a request from an Approved Provider, undertake a detailed review of the relevant Cohort's assessment evidence alongside the assessment criteria within the Scheme of Assessment to ensure that the assessment criteria has been complied with in full in relation to the marking of that Cohort's assessment evidence, provided always that this Additional Service shall only be deemed to be an Additional Service in respect of which a Fee shall be payable by the Approved Provider if, following the carrying out and completion of such Review of Moderation, the grade(s) awarded to any Student is not changed.</p>
Very late entry or entry amendment	<p>Where, following the very late entry deadline for the TQ Core Component and/or relevant Occupational Specialist Component specified in the Key Dates Schedule for the relevant Academic Year until the date on which entries or amendments to entries finally closes for the TQ Core Component and/or relevant Occupational Specialist Component as specified in the Key Dates Schedule for the relevant Academic Year, an Approved Provider requires a new Student to be entered for the TQ Core Component and/or relevant Occupational Specialist Component and/or an existing entry for a Student to be amended, the Supplier shall (where reasonably practicable having regard to the nature of the assessment) following receipt of a request from an Approved</p>

Additional Service	Additional Service Requirements
	<p>Provider within the period not greater than 20 Working Days prior to the commencement of the relevant assessment as determined in accordance with the relevant Key Dates Schedule, enter that Student for the TQ Core Component and/or relevant Occupational Specialist Component or amend that Student's entry for the TQ Core Component and/or relevant Occupational Specialist Component (as the case may be).</p>
<p>Very late registration or registration amendment</p>	<p>Where, following the very late registration deadline for the TQ specified in the Key Dates Schedule for the relevant Academic Year until the date on which registration for the TQ finally closes as specified in the Key Dates Schedule for the relevant Academic Year, an Approved Provider requires a new Student to be registered for the TQ and/or an existing registration for a Student to be amended, the Supplier shall (where reasonably practicable having regard to the nature of the assessment), following receipt of a request from an Approved Provider within the period not greater than 20 Working Days prior to the commencement of the relevant assessment as determined in accordance with the relevant Key Dates Schedule, register that Student for the TQ or amend that Student's registration for the TQ (as the case may be).</p>

ANNEX 11 –

Schedule for the submission of; Supplementary Specimen Assessment Materials; Employer Set Project Guide Exemplar Responses; and Employer Set Project Grade Exemplar Responses

Product	Description	Authority Submission Date	Publication date	Review point
Core Component	Supplementary Specimen Assessment Materials covering the TQ Core Component in full (comprising the External Examination and the Employer Set Project)	By the end of August prior to the first Academic Year of teaching	By end of October during the first Academic Year	Commencing during the second Academic Year of teaching, to be reviewed by the Supplier each and every Academic Year and re-submitted to the Authority to agree any changes by the end of October, for re-publication by the end of December.
Occupational Specialist Component(s)	Supplementary Specimen Assessment Materials covering the Occupational Specialist Component(s) in full	By the end of March during the first Academic Year of teaching	By end of July during the first Academic Year	Commencing during the second Academic Year of teaching, to be reviewed by the Supplier each and every Academic Year and re-submitted to the Authority to agree any changes by the end of July, for re-publication by the end of October in the following Academic Year.
Employer Set Project Guide Exemplar Responses	Employer Set Project Guide Exemplar Responses covering the Employer Set Project, produced at grade A and grade E for each Employer Set Project, in consultation with Employers and accompanied by an explanatory commentary.	By the end of August prior to the first Academic Year of teaching	By end of October during the first Academic Year	
Employer Set Project Grade Exemplar Responses	Employer Set Project Grade Exemplar Responses covering the Employer Set Project, consisting of actual marked examples of Students' assessment evidence, selected after awarding, produced at grade A and grade E, for each Employer	By the end of October during the second Academic Year of teaching	By end of December during the second Academic Year	Commencing during the third Academic Year of teaching, to be reviewed by the Supplier each and every Academic Year and re-submitted to the Authority to agree any changes by the start of

	Set Project, in consultation with Employers and accompanied by an explanatory commentary.			September, for re-publication by the end of October.
--	---	--	--	--

* Where no students have sat an ESP, or no students have achieved a pass at grades A or E, on agreement with the Authority the Supplier may defer production of the Employer Set Project Grade Exemplar Responses to the next Academic Year.

Schedule 2 Annex 3

TQ Spec

S2_A3_GEN2W1_OC_TQ_Spec

T Level Technical Qualification in Onsite Construction

Specification

First teaching from September 2022
Version 1.3

Version and date	Change detail	Section
1.1 Jan 2021	Numbering sequence error in section 4 – revised to 4.7 and 4.8	Onsite Construction core: Section 4 Construction and the Built Environment. Pg. 67
1.1 Feb 2021	Updated age ranges	Qualification at a glance Pg 2
	Assessment dates updated in availability of assessments	Scheme of Assessment – Availability of Assessments Pg 41
	Provider and Technical Qualification approval criteria	Centre requirements Pg 12
	Update qualification title	What is this qualification about Pg 7
	Transfer of attainment added	Delivering the technical qualification Pg 27
1.2 May 2022	How does the technical qualification work within the T Level?	What is this qualification about Pg 7
	Requirements of the T Level	T Level Structure Pg 10
	Approval information	Centre requirements Pg 12
	Update to learner entry requirement wording	Learner Entry Requirements Pg 18
	Definition of threshold competence	Technical qualification grading and result reporting Pg 41
	Sources of general information updated for currency	Appendix 1: Sources of general information Pg 251
	Additional contact details added	Get in Touch Pg 254
1.3 Feb 2023	Alignment of text in relation to ESP Assessment Objective (AO3) with assessment materials	Core component scheme of assessment Pg 28
	Centre staffing requirement wording	Resource requirements - Centre staffing Pg 13
	Transfer of attainment section updated	Delivering the technical qualification Pg 17
	Permitted assessment materials for Core exams added	Core component scheme of assessment Pg 26
	Updated assessment overview to correctly align with the content sections	
	Amendments to terminology in assessment availability table	Availability of assessments Pg 36
	Additional range added	Unit 300, criteria 5.9, 11.6
	Additional guidance added	Unit 300, criteria 1.2 (What do learners need to learn)

Front page image, footers and copyright statement updated	Front and back page
Core grading table inserted	Core grading Pg 32
T Level grading table updated	T Level grading Pg 41

Qualification at a glance

T Level route	Construction
T Level pathway	Onsite Construction
City & Guilds number	8711
Age group approved	16-19
Entry requirements	Formal entry requirements are not set by City & Guilds. However, we would expect that Learners have the appropriate attainment at Level 2 before commencing their studies.
Assessment	Core - knowledge tests are externally assessed Core - employer-set project is externally assessed Occupational specialisms are externally moderated
First registration	September 2021

Title and level	City & Guilds number	Qualification number (QN)
T Level Technical Qualification in Onsite Construction	8711	603/6917/6

We would like to take this opportunity to thank all of the employers, trade associations, professional bodies, providers, subject matter experts and consultants who have worked tirelessly alongside us on the development of the TQ. A special thank you to our Employer Industry Board who have dedicated time to review and validate the specifications and TQ documentation. This collaborative work is to ensure that a student studying the T level has the best opportunities available to them as they progress through their career with a solid base as a starting point.

- A.C. King Construction Ltd
- Ann Cook Associates
- Bagnalls
- Barnet Council
- Carney Consultancy
- Guinness Property
- H and H Joiners and Builders Ltd
- Hadrian Architectural Glazing Systems Ltd
- Kings Rock Joinery
- KS Construction Solutions
- Lee Marley Brickwork
- Matthew Reid Joinery
- NAWIC - National Association of Women in Construction
- Painting and Decorating Association
- Persimmon Homes
- R and L Construction
- Rose Builders Ltd
- Rowe and Martin Ltd
- Saint Gobain
- SS Carpentry & Joinery
- TEC Construction
- Timbrell Decorators
- UK Construction Ltd

The Outline Content for the T Level Technical Qualification in Onsite Construction has been produced by T Level panels of employers, professional bodies based on the same standards as those used for Apprenticeships. The outline content can be found on the institute website:

<https://www.instituteforapprenticeships.org/t-levels/approved-t-level-technical-qualifications-and-final-outline-content/>

City & Guilds has amplified the Outline Content to create the Technical Qualification specifications.

Contents

1	Introduction	7
	What is this qualification about?	7
	Key information	10
	T Level Structure	11
	Technical Qualification Structure	11
2	Centre requirements	13
	Approval	13
	Resource requirements	14
	Physical resources	16
	Learner entry requirements	17
3	Delivering the technical qualification	18
	Initial assessment and induction	18
	Programme delivery	18
	Transfer of attainment	18
4.	Competency frameworks	19
	Core skills	19
	Maths, English and digital skills	22
5	Scheme of Assessment	23
	Assessment methods	23
	Grading and marking	23
	Technical Qualification Scheme of Assessment overview	24
	Core component scheme of assessment	25
	Core grading	32
	Scheduling of the Employer-set project assessments	33
	Occupational specialism component scheme of assessment	34
	Availability of assessments	38
6	Technical qualification grading and result reporting	39
	Awarding the technical qualification grade	39
	T Level Grading	41
7	Administration	42
	Lost candidate work	42
	Malpractice	42
	Accessibility	43
	Access arrangements	43
	Special consideration	43
	Informing candidate of pre-moderated marks	43
	Internal appeals procedure	44
	Results reporting	44
	Post-result services	44
8	Components	45

Content of components	45
300 Onsite construction core	46
What is the component about?	46
Underpinning knowledge outcomes	47
Onsite core content	48
Links to occupational specialisms	85
Guidance for delivery	85
305 Bricklaying	87
What is this specialism about?	87
Specialism content	89
Specific knowledge criteria for performance outcomes	104
Guidance for delivery	117
Scheme of Assessment – Bricklaying	118
306 Carpentry and Joinery	121
What is this specialism about?	121
Specialism content	123
Specific knowledge criteria for performance outcomes	133
Methods of fixing and their suitability for different products, structures and purposes.	138
Guidance for delivery	155
Scheme of Assessment – Carpentry and Joinery	156
307 Painting and Decorating	160
What is this specialism about?	160
Specialism content	162
Specific knowledge criteria for performance outcomes	179
Guidance for delivery	192
Scheme of Assessment – Painting and Decorating	194
308 Plastering	197
What is this specialism about?	197
Specialism Content	199
Specific knowledge criteria for performance outcomes	210
Guidance for delivery	248
Scheme of Assessment – Plastering	250
Appendix 1 Sources of general information	253

1 Introduction

What is this qualification about?

The following purpose statement relates to the **T Level Technical Qualification in Onsite Construction**

Area	Description
OVERVIEW	
What is a T Level?	<p>T Levels are new courses which will follow GCSEs and will be equivalent to three A Levels. These two-year courses have been developed in collaboration with employers and businesses so that the content meets the needs of industry and prepares learners for work.</p> <p>T Levels are one of three post-16 options for young people:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• A Levels• Apprenticeships• T Levels
How does the technical qualification work within the T Level?	<p>This technical qualification specification contains all the information needed to deliver the T Level in Construction: Onsite</p> <p>The technical qualification forms a significant part of the T Level in Onsite Construction. City & Guilds is responsible for the development and ongoing operational delivery of this technical qualification. All other parts of the T Level as listed below will need to be achieved by learners for the Department for Education to award the successful completion of this T Level. It is important to note that City & Guilds does not have responsibility for delivery of the other parts of the T Level but will continue to support centres where they can on all aspects of T Level delivery.</p> <p>Additional mandatory parts of the T Level that need to be achieved:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• a 315-hour minimum industry placement.

Who is this qualification for?	<p>This qualification is for 16–19-year-old learners who wish to work within the onsite construction industry.</p> <p>It has been designed to deliver a high level of knowledge about the onsite industry as well as the occupational skills required to enter the industry (known as ‘threshold competence’). A learner who completes this qualification is well placed to develop to full occupational competence with the correct support and training</p>
What does this qualification cover?	<p>The qualification will help learners gain an understanding of the onsite industry and the sector, and learners will cover topics such as health and safety, construction science principles and sustainability in the construction industry.</p> <p>A learner will choose one occupational specialism from the list below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bricklaying • Carpentry and Joinery • Painting and Decorating • Plastering <p>Centres and providers work with local employers who will contribute to the knowledge and delivery of training. Employers will provide demonstrations and talks on the industry, and where possible work placements will also be provided by the employers.</p>

WHAT COULD THIS QUALIFICATION LEAD TO?

Will the qualification lead to employment, and if so, in which job role and at what level?

This technical qualification focuses on the development of knowledge and skills needed for working in the onsite industry, which will prepare learners to enter the industry through employment or as an apprentice. Furthermore, the completion of this qualification gives learners the opportunity to progress to higher education courses and training.

Why choose this qualification?

This qualification will suit learners who are not yet employed or who are looking to enter the industry post-mainstream education. The structure of the qualification is designed to give learners breadth of knowledge and understanding across the onsite industry but also to equip them with necessary occupational and core skills to enter the industry. This qualification is designed to support fair access and enables learners to manage and improve their own performance.

WHO SUPPORTS THIS QUALIFICATION?

Employer route panels

The content of this qualification is outlined by a representative panel of employers from across the industry sector. It therefore prescribes the minimum knowledge and skills required to enter the industry. The content in this specification is approved by the Institute for Apprenticeships and Technical Education.

Key information

Below is a summary of the key information provided to centres to support delivery of this technical qualification.

Guided learning hours (GLH) value

Values for GLH are calculated by considering the duration needed for the activities that a typical learner would need to complete to be able to demonstrate the knowledge and skills across the qualification content. This includes contact with tutors, trainers or facilitators as part of the learning process, and includes formal learning such as classes, training sessions, coaching, seminars and tutorials. This value also includes the time taken to prepare for, and complete, the assessments for the TQ qualification.

Centres should be aware that when planning programmes of study around the GLH that the GLH is based on a typical learner for this qualification. However, learners progress and develop at a different pace that is unique to the individual learner, and learners will have different qualification relevant experience. To accommodate this, centres must be aware that some learners will not need the full GLH to develop and demonstrate the required knowledge and skills and some learners will need slightly longer than the proposed GLH to develop and demonstrate the knowledge and skills required. Therefore, centres should plan the flexibility within their programmes of study to reflect and support the needs of all learners.

Total Qualification Time (TQT) value

This is the total amount of time, in hours, expected to be spent by a learner to achieve a qualification. It includes both guided learning hours (which are listed separately) and hours spent in preparation, study, and assessment.

Criteria

This section of the specification outlines the subject or topic that needs to be delivered and assessed. Criteria are often supported by ‘**range**’ which provides the detail of the information required to be delivered as part of that topic. For example, with Health & Safety legislation as the topic, the range would list the legislation that would need to be covered in delivery and assessment.

What do learners need to learn?

The primary purpose of these sections is to support the delivery of the content in the criteria. These sections provide context in relation to the depth and breadth to which a subject or topic needs to be taught.

Skills

This section provides a mapping reference to the core, maths, English and digital skills that are embedded within the technical qualification content.

Example

3.3 Role of different **disciplines** involved in design.

Range:

Disciplines - Contractors and all operatives, architects and all professional occupations, planners and building inspectors, manufacturers

What do learners need to learn?

A basic knowledge of key job roles within construction design including the responsibilities and reporting lines/lines of escalation within roles. The key activities aligned to the disciplines with an appreciation of potential career progression routes.

T Level Structure

To achieve the T Level learners must meet all requirements of the T Level framework of which the technical qualification is one part. Learners have to successfully complete an industry placement and any other requirements set by the Institute for Apprenticeships and Technical Education (IFATE) such as licence to practice qualifications.

Technical Qualification Structure

The technical qualification is made up of two components, both of which need to be successfully achieved to attain the T Level Technical Qualification in Onsite Construction.

The Core Component:

The core content is designed to offer sufficient breadth of knowledge and skills for the learner to apply in a variety of contexts related to the industry and those occupational specialisms linked to this T Level.

The core content is the building blocks of knowledge and skills that will give a learner a broad understanding of the industry and job roles. At the same time, it will develop the core skills they will need to apply when working within the industry.

Occupational Specialisms:

Occupational specialisms develop the knowledge, skills and behaviours necessary to achieve threshold competence in an occupation. Threshold competence is defined as when a learner's attainment against the knowledge, skills and behaviours is of a standard for them to enter the occupation and industry. They must also demonstrate the ability to achieve occupational competence over time with the correct support and training.

To achieve the **T Level Technical Qualification in Onsite Construction** learners must achieve the two components of the Technical qualification. These are known as the core component and the occupational specialism:

- Onsite Construction component (300)
- plus, **one** occupational specialism components (305 – 308)
- Learners must be registered on the mandatory POS and one other POS covering the occupational specialisms.

T Level Technical Qualification in Onsite Construction

Programme of study (POS)	City & Guilds component number	Component title	Component level	GLH	TQT
Mandatory					
8711-30	300	Onsite Construction core	Level 3	400	520
Choose one occupational specialism (one must be chosen)					
8711-35	305	Bricklaying	Level 3	600	700
8711-36	306	Carpentry and Joinery	Level 3	600	700
8711-37	307	Painting and Decorating	Level 3	600	700
8711-38	308	Plastering	Level 3	600	700

2 Centre requirements

Approval

All eligible providers must obtain Full Provider Approval with City & Guilds prior to delivering any T Level Technical Qualification (TQ).

Provider approval is not equivalent to centre approval; any provider which is already an existing City & Guilds approved centre must still obtain Full Provider Approval in the first instance. There is no fast-track approval for these qualifications.

Once successfully approved, providers can apply for additional TQs or apply to add additional occupational specialisms (OS) during each approval window.

The approval application consists of a comprehensive set of approval criteria agreed with the Institute to ensure an eligible provider is fit and ready to deliver T Level Technical Qualifications.

These criteria seek to ensure the integrity of the qualifications for both City & Guilds and the Institute. They must be adhered to throughout the delivery of the TQ and will be reviewed at the annual self-assessment.

Criteria A	Management Systems
Criteria B	Industry placement
Criteria C	Resources
Criteria D	Delivery
Criteria E	Assessment and standardisation plan
Criteria F	Secure live assessment and administration
Criteria G	Conflicts of Interest (COI)

Please refer to our published provider approval and quality assurance information document available on our website [here](#). This document includes information around the approval process, criteria for approval and the timeline for the relevant academic year.

Resource requirements

Centre staff should familiarise themselves with the structure, content, and assessment requirements of the qualification before designing a course programme.

Initial assessment and induction

An initial assessment of each learner should be made before the start of their programme to identify:

- If the learner has any specific learning or training needs
- support and guidance they may need when working towards their qualification
- the appropriate type and level of qualification

We recommend that centres provide an introduction so that learners fully understand the requirements of the qualification, their responsibilities as a learner, and the responsibilities of the centre.

Centre staffing

Staff delivering and assessing these qualifications must be able to demonstrate that they meet the following requirements

- be occupationally competent and qualified at or above the level they are delivering
- have maths and English at Level 2 or be working towards this level of qualification
- be able to deliver across the breadth and depth of the content of the qualification being taught
- have recent relevant teaching and assessment experience in the specific area they will be teaching, or be working towards this
- demonstrate continuing CPD
- have experience or training in the following to support the delivery of this technical qualification:
 - delivering project-based qualifications
 - preparation for exam-based assessments.

Onsite Core

Staff who are familiar with L3 Construction qualifications will be able to teach the core subjects.

Occupational specialisms specific requirements

Bricklaying

Must hold an NVQ Level 3 Diploma in Bricklaying or craft/advanced craft equivalent including relevant CPD that demonstrates the qualification standards and requirements.

Carpentry and Joinery

Must hold an NVQ Level 3 Diploma in Carpentry and Joinery or NVQ Level 3 Diploma in Site Carpentry and NVQ Level 3 Diploma in Bench Joinery or craft/advanced craft equivalent including relevant CPD that demonstrates the qualification standards and requirements.

Painting and Decorating

Must hold an NVQ Level 3 Diploma in Painting and Decorating or craft/advanced craft equivalent including relevant CPD that demonstrates the qualification standards and requirements.

Plastering

Must hold an NVQ Level 3 Diploma in Plastering or craft/advanced craft equivalent including relevant CPD that demonstrates the qualification standards and requirements.

Staff assessing these qualifications must meet the above requirements as well as hold or be working towards a relevant recognised assessor qualification such as a Level 3 Certificate in Assessing Vocational Achievement and continue to practice to that standard. Assessors who hold earlier qualifications (D32 or D33 or TQFE/TQSE) should have CPD evidence to the most current standards. Assessors must also hold a relevant trade qualification and/or having registration with a relevant trade organisation as 'Approved tradesperson' status or 'Eng-Tech' status.

Physical resources

Centres must be able to demonstrate that they have access to the equipment and technical resources required to deliver this qualification and its assessment.

Bricklaying

- Manufacturer's instructions
- PPE
- Access equipment
- Protective coverings including dust sheets etc.
- Measurement equipment
- Mixing equipment/shovel and buckets
- Appropriate tools for bricklaying tasks
- Access to suitable materials for taught and assessed components

Carpentry and Joinery

- Manufacturer's instructions
- PPE
- Access equipment
- Access to suitable materials for taught and assessed components
- Measurement equipment
- Setting out tools for the geometry requirements
- Carpentry and Joinery hand and power tools
- Hand tool sharpening equipment
- Planer, narrow bandsaw, saws (circular, band), spindle/industrial router table, hollow chisel morticer
- Sanders (bobbin, disk, belt)
- Safety aids for machines
- Equipment to tidy/clean any work surface/work area debris

Painting and Decorating

- Manufacturer's instructions
- PPE
- Access equipment
- Protective coverings including dust sheets, masking tape etc.
- Measurement equipment
- Materials available to create colour decorative designs including access to BS4800 colour charts and colour schemes
- Decorating tools and equipment for the preparation of surfaces, application of paints by brush, roller and HVLP spray. This should include both solvent-based and water-based applications
- Decorating tools and equipment for the preparation of surfaces, application of wallcoverings.
- Tools, equipment, and materials suitable for the preparation and application decorative techniques
- A range of coloured paints
- A range of wallcoverings
- Paste (either powder or ready mix depending on choice of paper and manufacturers' instructions)

Plastering

- Manufacturer's instructions
- PPE
- Access equipment
- Protective coverings including dust sheets etc.
- Measurement equipment
- Range of manufacturer samples/designs/materials for the different internal plastering works and a specific colour through design for the external rendering
- Access to suitable materials for taught and assessed components for solid and fibrous work
- Appropriate fibrous casting and fixing tools, dry lining cutting and installation tools, internal plastering, and external rendering tools
- Mixing equipment, buckets

Internal quality assurance

Internal quality assurance is key to ensuring accuracy and consistency of tutors and markers. Internal quality assurers (IQAs) monitor the work of all tutors involved with a qualification to ensure they are applying standards consistently throughout assessment activities. IQAs must have, and maintain, an appropriate level of technical competence and be qualified to make both marking and quality assurance decisions through a teaching qualification or recent, relevant experience.

Learner entry requirements

Centres must ensure that all learners have the opportunity to gain the qualification through appropriate study and training, and that any prerequisites stated in the **What is this qualification about?** section are met when registering for this qualification.

Formal entry requirements are not set by City & Guilds, but it is expected that learners will have qualifications at Level 2 or equivalent. This may include:

- Level 2 vocational qualification or equivalent in a related subject, e.g. construction and the built environment

3 Delivering the technical qualification

Initial assessment and induction

An initial assessment of each learner should be made before the start of their programme to identify:

- if the learner has any specific training needs
- support and guidance they may need when working towards their qualification
- the appropriate type and level of qualification.

City & Guilds recommends that centres provide an introduction so that learners fully understand the requirements of the qualification, their responsibilities as learners, and the responsibilities of the centre. This information can be recorded on a learning contract.

Programme delivery

The technical qualification should be delivered through approaches that meet the needs of learners. City & Guilds recommends using a variety of delivery methods, including in classrooms and real work environments. Learners may benefit from both direct instruction in more formal learning environments and taking part in investigative projects, e-learning and their own study and learning through indirect approaches to delivery.

Transfer of attainment

We fully expect some students to switch between T Levels, particularly in the early weeks, as happens currently with many post-16 courses. Some providers may co-teach some T Level groups for some classes where these are within the same route and where much of the core content is the same. This may well result in students switching to a different T Level, as they discover more about the content, including the range of occupational specialisms. Depending on the point at which a student switches, they may need some additional support to catch up any other pathway-specific learning they have missed. During Year 1, providers should consider the degree of overlap between two T Levels, and the remaining time pre-assessment, to determine which transfers should be permitted. For funding purposes, it is important that students have made a decision about their T Level and registered for their occupational specialism by the end of the first year. However, once an assessment has been taken, switching may become more difficult. T Level core assessments will vary in terms of content coverage, duration, and method, and therefore attainment from one T Level cannot count towards another.

4. Competency frameworks

The technical qualification has been developed to include competency frameworks for T Levels, which demonstrate an array of competencies across maths, English and digital skills as well as four key core skills that have been mapped on to the core content. This can be seen in the skills section for each criterion.

Core skills

In the design, delivery and assessment of the technical qualification the following core skills are fundamental in the development of the required knowledge, skills and behaviours that learners will need to use when they progress onwards from completing their T Level. These core skills have been mapped on to the design of the qualification content and developed in consultation with the industry and providers. The mapping identifies opportunities where these core skills can be developed and embedded into teaching and learning. It is not expected that all criteria will develop core skills, but where these skills exist in the core content it has been referenced to support centres.

- **Core skill A (CSA)** Applying a logical approach to solving problems, identifying issues, and proposing solutions e.g. through setting criteria for successful implementation of a system, using cost/benefit analysis of the introduction of new procedures or equipment.
 - Complying with the requirements of risk assessments and method statements.
 - Ensuring allocated tasks are completed on time, to the required standard.
 - Ensuring the planning and design of a project meets the needs of the client's brief.
 - Assessing the problems associated with building on brown field or reclaimed land.
 - Identifying health and safety issues which may have been the product of poor design.
 - Improving communication networks within construction projects.
 - Ensuring construction projects maximise their opportunity to make a profit.
 - Ensuring all building work meets the required planning and control considerations.
 - Considering all environmental obligations at design, and throughout the construction period.
 - Designing considerations must consider inclusivity versatility, access to, and use of building.
 - Producing risk assessments, method statements and safe system of works
 - The key stages of the design process
 - The different types of sustainable solutions listed in the range and how they are used to inform the building process
 - The use of both manufacturer instructions and technical guidance to solve problems
 - Complying with data storage requirements in relation to security and protection
 - The use of technology connected to the internet of things and its role in the construction industry to assist in just in time and asset management. BIM Building information Modelling.

- The use of digital engineering techniques in the construction industry and where to apply them. Total stations in surveying.
 - Utilising benchmarking, KPI's and target setting when measuring business success.
 - Ensuring the key requirements of Building Regulations and approved documents are implemented within projects
- **Core skill B (CSB)** Primary research e.g. obtaining measurements related to a design and/or customer requirements.
 - Collecting information on the HSE web site.
 - Researching the various components relating to various sections of the Building Regulations.
 - Researching health and safety requirements to produce risk assessments, method statements and safe systems of work.
 - Researching construction materials to ascertain their properties and suitability
 - Researching construction design job roles.
 - Researching construction technical and professional roles to ascertain own function on projects and those of other operatives in the collaborative process
 - The structure of the construction industry, including business types, large, medium, and small.
 - Researching the type of work undertaken within the construction industry and how it may change depending on company size.
 - The role and importance of CPD and how it affects the work of the construction operatives.
 - Sustainable construction solutions.
 - Researching the techniques aimed at maximising value and minimising waste within.
 - Researching the requirements of current UK Building Regulations to ensure compliance.
 - The procedures and processes for penetrating building structure as detailed in the Building regulations.
 - Standards regulation and guidance used to maintain good practice within the construction industry.
 - Researching corporate social responsibility principles for a range of organisations.
 - Using current UK and international standards (BSEN).
 - **Core skill C (CSC)** Communication e.g., providing information and advice to customers and/or wider stakeholders on the potential risks of a delay in the project owing to inclement weather.
 - Presenting a short-term programme to the site manager.
 - Presenting risk assessments, method statements and toolbox talk to enable safe working.
 - Communicating with the client when a change or alteration is required due to unforeseen circumstances
 - Communicating the potential implications of poor design to the different parties affected in the construction chain.

- Explaining the benefits to contractors, the client/customer, to profitability and project success detailing the Implications of not having accurate measurements
 - Communicating Information and data sources for construction projects
 - Communicating using BIM and workflow software packages
 - Promoting good customer service providing information and advice to customers
 - Implementing change requests from various parties, including clients
 - Communicating using technology connected to the internet of things and their role in the construction industry to assist in just in time and asset management.
 - Setting clear project goals and objectives, defining roles, setting realistic milestones and constraints on cost and time.
 - Preparing a short power point presentation on a chosen material i.e., concrete, brick, timber etc and present this to the group.
 - Producing sketch designs for a house and then produce a 3D model by hand and/or on sketch up.
 - You have seen a dangerous situation on site. Produce a written report for your supervisor.
- **Core skill D (CSD)** Working collaboratively with other team members and stakeholders e.g. to develop content to bid for a construction project.
 - Taking part in group discussions and presentations in collating information in response to a specification or client brief.
 - Following the correct procedures for reporting an incident or near miss in the workplace.
 - Reporting lines of escalation within construction roles.
 - Integration of all partners of the supply chain.
 - Building information modelling and the effect they have on real time project delivery in a collaborative way.
 - Working collaboratively with the different types of stakeholders e.g. client, team, and end user.
 - Collaborative approach to project delivery and reporting, and how this is applied in practice with the use of BIM and workflow software packages.
 - Working with a range of individuals applying equality and diversity legislation.
 - The use of conflict management techniques.
 - Behaving in an ethical way towards other team members and stakeholders.
 - Fundamental business values and commitment to customers and collaborative working with others.
 - Working collaboratively to ensure quality management systems are completed.
 - Ensuring team members and stakeholders know the key requirements of Building Regulations and approved documents.
 - Give each group a drawing and specification for a kitchen extension. They have to work as a team to work out the quantities of materials, and price the job, produce a method statement and programme, then present their finding to the client.

Maths, English and digital skills

Maths, English and digital skills have been mapped across the core content and each of the occupational specialisms. The lists below identify the core competencies which can be found in the skills sections of each performance criteria.

General English competencies

The general English competencies outline a framework of six general digital competencies, with no prioritisation or interpretation of order intended:

- EC1 – Convey technical information to different audiences
- EC2 – Present information and ideas
- EC3 – Create texts for different purposes and audiences
- EC4 – Summarise information/ideas
- EC5 – Synthesise information
- EC6 – Take part in/lead discussions

General Mathematical Competencies

The general mathematical competencies outline a framework of ten general mathematical competencies, with no prioritisation or interpretation of order intended:

- MC1 – Measuring with precision
- MC2 – Estimating, calculating and error spotting
- MC3 – Working with proportion
- MC4 – Using rules and formulae
- MC5 – Processing data
- MC6 – Understanding data and risk
- MC7 – Interpreting and representing with mathematical diagrams
- MC8 – Communicating using mathematics
- MC9 – Costing a project
- MC10 – Optimising work processes

General Digital Competencies

The following outlines a framework of six general digital competencies, with no prioritisation or interpretation of order intended:

- DC1 – Use digital technology and media effectively
- DC2 – Design, create and edit documents and digital media
- DC3 – Communicate and collaborate
- DC4 – Process and analyse numerical data
- DC5 – Be safe and responsible online
- DC6 – Controlling digital functions

5 Scheme of Assessment

Assessment methods

Learners must complete:

two externally set exams covering knowledge from the onsite construction core content (component 300)

The exams provide sufficient sampling of the content and consisting of a mixture of short answer questions (SAQ), some of which will be structured, and extended response. The balance of questions in assessing across assessment objectives (AOs) 1, 2 and 3 will allow for the appropriate differentiation of learners to support in the reliable setting of boundaries.

one employer-set project covering knowledge and skills from the Onsite construction core (component 300)

The employer-set project will be made up of well defined, real, industry-style brief. The brief will be complex and non-routine and require the use of relevant maths, English and digital skills. The brief will provide a valid context for the Level 3 candidate to demonstrate their knowledge and understanding of the core content and their core skills to solve occupationally relevant situations and/or problems.

And

one occupational specialism practical assignment made up of several tasks covering the knowledge and skills from the chosen occupational specialisms (components 305-308).

These assessments will feature a considerable practical element and are composed of a series of holistic practical tasks relating to the specialism at hand. They will take place over a period of time, scheduled at the provider's preference within an approximate three-month assessment window. By nature of the considerable practical elements, the tasks will generate significant ephemeral evidence and be heavily reliant on Internal Assessor observation notes and records for validation.

Grading and marking

The Onsite construction core (component 300) is graded overall A* - E plus ungraded (U)

The occupational specialisms (components 305 – 308) are graded overall Distinction, Merit, Pass and Ungraded. Each occupational specialism achieved will receive a grade.

Technical Qualification Scheme of Assessment overview

Core Component – Learners must complete **all** assessment components

Assessment component (number)	Method	Duration	Marks	Weighting	Marking	Grading
Exam paper 1 (031)	Externally set exam	2 hours	90	35%	Externally marked	This component will be awarded on the grade scale A* - E
Exam paper 2 (032)	Externally set exam	2 hours	90	35%	Externally marked	
Employer set project (033)	Externally set project	17 hours	100	30%	Externally marked	

Occupational Specialism Component - Learners must complete **one** assessment component

Assessment component (number)	Method	Duration	Marks	Weighting	Marking	Grading
Bricklaying (305)	Externally set assignment	24 hours	90	100%	Externally moderated	All occupational specialism components will be awarded on the grade scale P, M, D
Carpentry and Joinery (306)	Externally set assignment	27 hours	90	100%	Externally moderated	
Painting and Decorating (307)	Externally set assignment	27 hours	90	100%	Externally moderated	
Plastering (308)	Externally set assignment	26 hours	90	100%	Externally moderated	

Core component scheme of assessment

The assessments for this component consist of two core exams and an employer-set project, which are set against a set of assessment objectives (AOs) used to promote consistency among qualifications of a similar purpose. They are designed to allow judgement of the learner to be made across a number of different categories of performance.

Each assessment for this component has been allocated a set number of marks against these AOs based on weightings recommended by stakeholders of the qualification. This mark allocation remains the same for all versions of the assessments, ensuring consistency across assessment versions and over time.

AO weightings for the assessment components related to the core components are detailed below.

Core exam

Assessment objective	Description	Weighting
AO1 a Demonstrate knowledge	All AOs require the ability to recall knowledge. AO1a) refers to instances where the learner is simply required to demonstrate basic recall. In the test, this helps to give confidence in sufficiency of coverage of the content, and recognises that not all knowledge requires further understanding e.g. terminology, number facts etc.	10%
AO1 b Demonstrate understanding	The ability to explain principles and concepts beyond recall of definitions in order to be able to transfer these principles and concepts between contexts. Learners have built connections between related pieces of knowledge. AO1b) focuses on the ability of the learners to show understanding by summarising or explaining concepts in their own words, exemplifying, or comparing and making inferences in general terms that show e.g. cause and effect.	25%
AO2 Apply knowledge and understanding to different situations and context	Using and applying knowledge and understanding, of processes, procedures, generalisations principles and theories to specified, concrete situations. AO2 is about being able to take the understanding of generalities (AO1b) and apply them to specific novel situations. It is more granular than the more extended synthesis/creation that may respond to an analysis (AO3a) of a more holistic complex situation/brief.	45%
AO3 Analyse and evaluate information and issues	Learners will be provided with information e.g. in the form of a detailed scenario requiring the Learners to analyse the interrelated issues arising and evaluate, for example, the strengths and weaknesses or advantages and disadvantages of approaches they may take to achieve a good outcome. Marks will be given for the quality of analysis and evaluation and the range of considerations considered.	20%

Component	Assessment method	Description and conditions
Core exam	Externally marked tests	<p>These tests are externally set and externally marked and will be sat through question papers provided by City & Guilds.</p> <p>These tests are designed to assess learners' depth and breadth of understanding across the core component in the qualification at the end of the period of learning and will be sat under invigilated examination conditions. See JCQ requirements for details: http://www.jcq.org.uk/exams-office/ice---instructions-for-conducting-examinations</p> <p>Learners who fail either one or both exams in the core component will need to retake both exams and must do so in the same assessment window. Any retake must be completed within two years after the completion of the learner's T level programme.</p>

Component	Assessment method	Assessment overview	Permitted assessment materials
Paper 1	Externally marked tests	<p>These exams will be made up of different question types that include short answer questions, structured questions, and extended response questions. The exam paper will consist of part A and part B. The level of difficulty will increase through the paper with lower demand questions at the beginning of the question paper to higher demand questions at the end of the question paper.</p> <p>Content overview:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Health and safety in construction • Construction design principles • Construction and the built environment industry • Construction sustainability principles • Building technology principles 	<p>Pen with blue or black ink</p> <p>Non-programmable calculator</p>

Component	Assessment method	Assessment overview	Permitted assessment materials
Paper 2	Externally marked tests	<p>These exams will be made up of different question types that include short answer questions, structured questions, and extended response questions. The exam paper will consist of part A and part B. The level of difficulty will increase through the paper with lower demand questions at the beginning of the question paper to higher demand questions at the end of the question paper.</p> <p>Content overview:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Construction science principles • Construction measurement principles • Construction information and data principles • Relationship management in construction • Digital technology in construction • Construction commercial/business principles 	<p>Pen with blue or black ink</p> <p>Non-programmable calculator</p>

Both core exams will follow the same structure but each core exams covers different technical content. Each exam paper is made up of two parts:

- Part A (70%)
- and*
- Part B (30%)

Employer-set project

Assessment objective	Typical evidence	Approximate weighting
AO1 Planning skills and strategies	Clearly structured response to brief, cohesive response with ordered sections, logical approach to referencing, research and sources, response completed to deadline and meeting required parameters, sources used effectively and integrated into response (not just an afterthought), effective use of time allocation available for presentations.	14%
AO2 Apply knowledge and skills to the context of the project	Relevant core knowledge applied to respond to brief, references relevant legislation, building controls materials, concepts, waste disposal and site access considerations.	54%
AO3 Select relevant techniques and resources to meet the brief	Selection of techniques and resources in order to support a response to the brief; consideration of the techniques and resources that are most effective and appropriate to use, and accurate and informed use of these.	10%
AO4 Use Maths, English and Digital skills	Use of correct terminology, abbreviations, units of measurement in context, consideration of audience of brief response (technical vs non-technical wording), use of calculations / graphs etc. appropriately, consideration of the use of ICT and digital methods both in brief response and in presentation.	16%
AO5 Carry out tasks and evaluate for fitness for purpose	Considered analysis and evaluation of project outcome, what went well and what could be improved, response conclusion or evaluation section, identification of solutions in response to brief problem with evidence of evaluation of other options and reasons for rejection of other options where not appropriate.	6%

Component	Assessment method	Description and conditions
Employer-set project	Externally marked project	<p>This project is externally set and externally marked by City & Guilds and is designed to require the learner to identify and use effectively in an integrated way an appropriate selection of skills, techniques, concepts, theories and knowledge from across the whole of the BSE core content.</p> <p>Projects will be released to centre staff in advance of any of the assessment windows for each task. City & Guilds will provide centres with assessment windows for centres to timetable assessment sessions within, in accordance with the assessment times prescribed in the employer-set project centre guidance.</p> <p>Centres will be required to maintain the security of all live assessment materials until assessment windows are open. Projects will therefore be password-protected and released to centres through a secure method.</p> <p>Guidance on equipment, resources and duration will be released as appropriate to ensure centres can plan for delivery of the project in advance. The marking grid for the project will be available to centres from the start of the learning programme.</p> <p>Learners who fail the employer-set project on first submission can retake in any assessment window. Any retake must be completed within two years after the completion of the learner's T level programme.</p>

Component	Assessment Method	Assessment overview
Employer-set project	Externally marked project	<p>Content Overview:</p> <p>The employer-set project samples knowledge drawn from across the core content in relation to the specific project version context – however, due to their importance all versions of the employer-set project will cover content from the following core underpinning knowledge outcomes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Health and safety in construction • Construction design principles • Construction sustainability principles <p>Assessment overview:</p> <p>The employer-set project is an assessment made up of several tasks that will take place within controlled conditions, assessing the knowledge and skills learned as part of the core element of the T Level.</p> <p>Each project will be developed together with employers in the industry to reflect realistic types of developments, activities and challenges. The project is made up of a number of tasks which all relate to the same employer-set project brief and tender specification.</p> <p>1.1 – Research 1.2 – Report 1.3 – Project plan 1.4 – Presentation 2.1 – Collaborative problem-solving 2.2 – Evaluation</p> <p>The project only draws on the content from the common core knowledge that sits across all specialisms for onsite (specific knowledge and skills for each specialism will be assessed in the practical assignments)</p> <p>The project is linked to the core skills.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Problem solving • Research • Communication • Working collaboratively with others

Core grading

The T Levels Technical Qualification (TQ) in Onsite Construction core is made up of the below sub-components (and weightings).

- Exam (70%)
- Employer-Set Project (30%)

Uniform Mark Scale (UMS) grade boundaries

The table below shows the UMS (Uniform Mark Scale) values available for grades in the sub-components. It also shows the UMS values required to achieve each grade for the overall Core. This table will not vary across the series, the values are fixed for this TQ.

Grade boundary	Exam sub-component	ESP sub-component	Overall Core
A*	252 – 280	108 – 120	360 – 400
A	224 – 251	96 – 107	320 – 359
B	196 – 223	84 – 95	280 – 319
C	168 – 195	72 – 83	240 – 279
D	140 – 167	60 – 71	200 – 239
E	112 – 139	48 – 59	160 – 199
Unclassified (U)	0 – 111	0 – 47	0 – 159

Scheduling of the Employer-set project assessments

The employer-set project assessment window will occur from March to May annually. Specific dates will be released annually through the key date schedule for the following academic year

Task	Scheduling	Task Duration
1.1	City & Guilds sets the assessment window for the centre to timetable	3 hours
1.2	City & Guilds sets the assessment window for the centre to timetable	6 hours
1.3	City & Guilds sets the assessment window for the centre to timetable	3 hours
1.4	City & Guilds sets the assessment window for the centre to timetable	2.5 hours
2.1	City & Guilds sets the assessment window for the centre to timetable	1.5 hours
2.2	City & Guilds sets the assessment window for the centre to timetable	1 hour

Occupational specialism component scheme of assessment

What is the occupational specialism component?

The occupational specialism assignment consists of a project brief presented as client requirements or a specification of work that is realistic to the occupational specialism rather than detailed instructions on what to do, to allow the learner to demonstrate that they have the knowledge required to implement the brief. There will be several high-level tasks in every version of the assessment, and these will take the form of planning, installing, and service and maintenance. Within each high-level task there will be several sub-tasks that learners will need to complete as directed within the assessment documents. The sub-tasks will reflect the project brief for that version of the assignment.

How is the occupational specialism component marked?

Occupational specialism assessments will be set and marked at task level. Once learner evidence has been marked, Internal Assessors will make a holistic judgement on performance by applying the knowledge and skills that have been demonstrated to assessment themes within the marking grid.

Each learner will receive a total mark for each assessment theme. The total for each assessment theme is accumulated, giving a total mark for the assessment. Assessment themes will be common across every version of the assessment and will assess a similar range of evidence across assessment versions, ensuring comparability of demand between every version of the assessment.

Although evidence from across all tasks can be used to demonstrate performance against an assessment theme, internal markers will be directed to specific task evidence that must be used to support judgements on performance against the assessment theme. The assessment themes will be broad enough to ensure that all the performance criteria across the specialism are assessed, supporting reliability of the assessment.

In order to ensure reliability, and consistent and accurate judgements on performance, assessment themes may consist of sub-assessment themes due to the potentially wide content coverage and to ensure that the performance outcome is assessed to the appropriate depth and breadth. This still allows for the appropriate base mark to be applied to the assessment theme, but also ensures that the distribution of marks within and across bands is more manageable and increases the reliability of judgements made and marks awarded. Internal assessors will give an appropriate mark in relation to the learner's performance for each individual sub-assessment theme, but this will contribute to the overall mark for that assessment theme. Internal assessors will then need to evidence the decision for the mark awarded for each assessment theme on the Candidate Record Form (CRF).

Component	Assessment method	Description and conditions
Occupational specialism assignment	Externally set, externally moderated	<p>This assignment is externally set, internally marked and externally moderated, and is designed to require the learner to identify and use effectively in an integrated way an appropriate selection of skills, techniques, concepts, theories and knowledge from across the occupational area.</p> <p>Assignments will be released to centre staff towards the end of the learners' programme, usually the week before Easter each year.</p> <p>Centres will be required to maintain the security of all live assessment materials until assessment windows are open. Assignments will therefore be password-protected and released to centres through a secure method.</p> <p>Guidance on equipment, resources and duration will be released as appropriate to ensure centres can plan for delivery of practical assignments in advance. The marking grid for the assignment will be available to centres from the start of the learning programme.</p> <p>Learners who fail the occupational specialism following the first submission can retake in any assessment window. Any retake must be completed within two years after the completion of the learner's T level programme.</p> <p>Please note that for externally set assignments City & Guilds provides guidance and support to centres on the marking process and associated marking grid in the assessment pack for the qualification, and guidance on the use of marking grids.</p>
Bricklaying	Externally set, externally moderated	<p>Content overview</p> <p>Learners will be able to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Prepare for the construction of complex masonry structures • Construct complex masonry structures • Renovate masonry structures <p>Assessment overview</p> <p>Learners will be assessed against the following assessment themes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Health and safety • Design and planning • Presentation • Construct masonry structures • Repair masonry structures

Carpentry & Joinery	Externally set, externally moderated	<p>Content overview</p> <p>Learners will be able to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Prepare for the production of complex timber-based building products and structures • Produce complex timber-based products and components • Assemble complex timber-based products • Install complex timber-based products into complex structures <p>Assessment overview</p> <p>Learners will be assessed against the following assessment themes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Health and Safety • Design and planning • Produce complex timber-based structures • Fix and assemble components • Installation • Inspect/Quality check
Painting and Decorating	Externally set, externally moderated	<p>Content overview</p> <p>Learners will be able to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Prepare for the application of surface coatings and wallcoverings • Apply specialist surface coatings in complex environments • Apply specialist wallcoverings in complex environments <p>Assessment overview</p> <p>Learners will be assessed against the following assessment themes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Health and safety • Design and planning • Presentation • Preparation of surfaces and work area for applying specialist surface coatings • Application of specialist surface coatings • Inspect, finish and rectify for specialist surface coatings • Preparation of surfaces and work area for applying specialist wallcoverings • Application of specialist wallcoverings • Inspect, finish and rectify for specialist wallcoverings

Plastering	Externally set, externally moderated	<p>Content overview</p> <p>Learners will be able to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Prepare backgrounds for plastering • Apply plastering systems • Fix plaster casted from moulds • Repair plastering systems <p>Assessment overview</p> <p>Learners will be assessed against the following assessment themes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Health and safety • Design and planning • Presentation • Internal plastering systems • External rendering systems • Produce and fix mouldings • Repair to damaged surfaces
------------	--------------------------------------	--

Availability of assessments

The table below sets out the scheduled assessment windows annually for the T Level in Construction: Onsite. Exact key dates for assessment that are externally marked (core exams and the employer-set project) will be communicated to approved providers annually through the key date schedule.

Component	Series	Exam type	Calendar Month/s	Assessment window/set date
Core exam Paper 1	Summer series	Written exam	June	Set date/time
	*Autumn series	Written exam	November	Set date/time
Core exam Paper 2	Summer series	Written exam	June	Set date/time
	*Autumn series	Written exam	November	Set date/time
Employer-set project	Summer series	Project	April -May	Assessment window
	*Autumn series	Project	October - November	Assessment window
Occupational specialism	One series annually	Project	February – May (first assessment 2023)	Assessment window

*Please note that the autumn series is not only restricted to retakes.

6 Technical qualification grading and result reporting

Awarding the technical qualification grade

The technical qualification components are awarded as shown below:

Component	Grading
Core	A* - E
Occupational specialism	Pass, Merit and Distinction

Core component

Calculating the grade of the core component uses the aggregation of points from across all assessment components in the core to calculate the overall grade for the core component.

Core component grade descriptors

Component	Grade	Descriptor
Core	A	<p>To achieve an 'A' grade a candidate will:</p> <p>Show clear ability to demonstrate a comprehensive understanding of the full range of principles that influence construction processes and procedures in routine contexts and allow successful implementation to non-routine contexts.</p> <p>Make links between relevant knowledge and understanding when responding to problems in a logical and methodical format. Legitimate and justified approaches are provided in response to complex construction industry briefs and problems.</p> <p>Demonstrate the ability to comprehensively identify and interpret a full range of considerations in analysing complex briefs or problems. Including the impacts their decisions have on the wider industry and not solely on individual trades. There is a meticulous approach in the selection of tools, materials and methods when planning approaches or responses to construction industry briefs or problems.</p> <p>Use a range of communication strategies and an ability to adapt their style and format to respond well to audience and stakeholder needs in presenting approaches to solving problems.</p> <p>Demonstrate a high degree of accuracy in knowledge and skills from across the core content and critically evaluate their own performance in meeting a brief or problem to improve.</p>

Component	Grade	Descriptor
Core	E	<p>To achieve an 'E' grade a candidate will:</p> <p>Demonstrate a limited understanding some of the key principles and how they influence construction process and procedures in routine contexts.</p> <p>Make general links in knowledge and understanding that can sometimes be superficial and are supported by partial reasoning and not evidenced based that relates to routine problems or industry briefs.</p> <p>Respond to briefs or problems with little awareness of the impact in relation to the wider construction industry context. There is some understanding in selection of tools, materials and methods to meet the requirements of routine construction industry briefs or problems.</p> <p>Demonstrate a small range of communication strategies that are sometimes not suitable in language and format for audiences and stakeholders with inaccuracies in technical references.</p> <p>Provide an evaluation of performance and how requirements have been met is brief with no reference on how to improve.</p> <p>Candidates need to complete all components to be awarded the Technical Qualification. Any performance determined as not meeting the standard by City & Guilds will receive an unclassified (U) result</p>

Occupational specialism component

Calculation of the grade for the occupational specialism is based on setting grade boundaries for Pass and Distinction. The setting of grade boundaries is based on judgemental evidence, against the grade descriptors for the occupational specialisms, review of the Guide Standard Exemplification Materials (Grade Standard Exemplification Materials after the first award) and review of statistical evidence.

Pass and Distinction grade descriptors can be found in both learner and centre occupational assessment materials.

To successfully achieve an occupational specialism the learner needs to be recognised at threshold competence (Pass).

Threshold competence refers to a level of competence that:

- signifies that a student is well placed to develop full occupational competence, with further support and development, once in employment
- is as close to full occupational competence as can be reasonably expected of a student studying the TQ in a classroom-based setting (for example, in the classroom, workshops, simulated working and (where appropriate) supervised working environments)
- signifies that a student has achieved at least a pass in relation to the relevant occupational specialism component.

If a learner does not meet the minimum standards as determined by City & Guilds for either/both the core component and occupational specialism they will be issued with an unclassified (U) grade.

T Level Grading

To be awarded an overall T Level grade, a student must pass both components of their TQ, successfully, complete an industry placement and meet any other requirements set by the T Level panel within the Institute. T Levels will vary in size, largely dependent on the size of the TQ.

In meeting the above requirements, the learner will be eligible to be awarded an overall qualification grade for the T Level in Onsite Construction. The overall qualification grade will be based on performance in the core component and occupational specialism, as set out below.

Calculation of the T Level Qualification Grade				
	Occupational specialism Grade			
Core component grade	Grade	Distinction	Merit	Pass
	A*	Distinction*	Distinction	Distinction
	A	Distinction	Distinction	Merit
	B	Distinction	Merit	Merit
	C	Distinction	Merit	Pass
	D	Merit	Merit	Pass
	E	Merit	Pass	Pass

7 Administration

Lost candidate work

If work is lost, City & Guilds should be notified immediately of the date of the loss, how it occurred, and who was responsible for the loss. Centres should use the JCQ form, JCQ/LCW, to inform City & Guilds Customer Services of the circumstances.

Learners who move from one centre to another during the course may require individual attention. Possible courses of action depend on the stage at which the move takes place. Centres should contact City & Guilds at the earliest possible stage for advice about appropriate arrangements in individual cases.

Malpractice

Please refer to the City & Guilds guidance notes *Managing cases of suspected malpractice in examinations and assessments*. This document sets out the procedures to be followed in identifying and reporting malpractice by candidates and/or centre staff and the actions which City & Guilds may subsequently take. The document includes examples of candidate and centre malpractice and explains the responsibilities of centre staff to report actual or suspected malpractice. Centres can access this document on the City & Guilds website.

Examples of candidate malpractice are detailed below (please note that this is not an exhaustive list):

- falsification of assessment evidence or results documentation
- plagiarism of any nature
- collusion with others
- copying from another candidate (including the use of ICT to aid copying), or allowing work to be copied
- deliberate destruction of another's work
- false declaration of authenticity in relation to assessments
- impersonation.

These actions constitute malpractice, for which a penalty (e.g. disqualification from the assessment) will be applied.

Where suspected malpractice is identified by a centre after the candidate has signed the declaration of authentication, the Head of Centre must submit full details of the case to City & Guilds at the earliest opportunity. Please refer to the form in the document *Managing cases of suspected malpractice in examinations and assessments*.

Accessibility

In the design of the Technical Qualification and its assessments the following principles have been applied:

- In the development of content, tasks and assessments **all** learners are considered
- Well-designed materials that do not create barriers to attainment. This will include content being presented logically and uncluttered
- No particular characteristic or group of learners are disadvantaged by features of a qualification
- Language is appropriate including carrier language which is presented in its simplest for fair access to all learners
- In the design of content and assessments the impact on learners social, behavioural and emotional well-being will be considered
- Physical and sensory needs of learners in accessing content and assessments.

Access arrangements

Access arrangements are adjustments that allow candidates with disabilities, special educational needs, and temporary injuries to access the assessment and demonstrate their skills and knowledge without changing the demands of the assessment. These arrangements must be made before assessment takes place.

It is the responsibility of the centre to ensure at the start of a programme of learning that candidates will be able to access the requirements of the qualification.

Please refer to the *JCQ access arrangements and reasonable adjustments* and *Access arrangements - when and how applications need to be made to City & Guilds* for more information. Both are available on the City & Guilds website: <http://www.cityandguilds.com/delivering-our-qualifications/centre-development/centre-document-library/policies-and-procedures/access-arrangements-reasonable-adjustments>

Special consideration

We can give special consideration to candidates who have had a temporary illness, injury, or indisposition at the time of the examination. Where we do this, it is given after the examination.

Applications for either access arrangements or special consideration should be submitted to City & Guilds by the Examinations Officer at the centre. For more information please consult the current version of the JCQ document, *A guide to the special consideration process*. This document is available on the City & Guilds website: <http://www.cityandguilds.com/delivering-our-qualifications/centre-development/centre-document-library/policies-and-procedures/access-arrangements-reasonable-adjustments>

Informing candidate of pre-moderated marks

Centres are required to inform candidates of their marks **before** external moderation. It is important that candidates are informed of their pre-moderated marks are provisional and allow sufficient time for them to appeal if felt necessary while still allowing their agreed centre marked work to be available for external moderation on time.

Centres must also provide candidates with a copy of their marked work and the centre's internal appeals procedures on request.

Internal appeals procedure

For internally marked assessments, all centres must have an internal appeals procedure for candidates, which gives them the opportunity to appeal the centre mark for their work, before moderation takes place. The procedure must ensure:

- the person completing the appeal is competent and did not mark the work originally
- that any marking errors are identified and corrected
- the candidate is informed of the outcome, reason and any change in mark.

The City & Guilds appeals process also covers access arrangements, special consideration and malpractice. Applications are not accepted directly from candidates, but the centre can apply on a candidate's behalf. Where relevant, centres must tell candidates how to request this. The centre can refuse to make the application to City & Guilds, but the candidate must be given the opportunity to appeal this decision. This information must be included in the centre's internal appeals procedure.

Centres must provide candidates and City & Guilds with a copy of their internal appeals procedure, on request.

Results reporting

Institute for Apprenticeships and Technical Education (IFATE) will certificate students who have successfully completed all elements of the T Level in Construction: Onsite.

T Level results will be released on the Level 3 results day in August

Post-result services

The services available include a review of marking and review of moderation. Requests must be submitted within the specified period after the publication of results for individual assessments.

For further details of enquiries about results services, please visit the City & Guilds website at **www.cityandguilds.com**.

8 Components

Content of components

The components in this qualification are written in a standard format and comprise the following:

- City & Guilds reference number
- Title
- Level
- Guided learning hours (provisional)
- Assessment method
- Introduction section
- Underpinning knowledge outcome – including range and depth sections
- What learners need to learn
- Links to maths, English and digital skills
- Guidance for delivery
- Suggested learning resources
- Scheme of Assessment*

*Occupational specialisms only

Level:	3
GLH:	400
Assessment method:	Two Knowledge tests Employer-set project

What is the component about?

This component focuses on the learner's knowledge and understanding of contexts, concepts, theories and principles relevant to onsite construction. The component is designed to raise learners' awareness of the industries and develop knowledge and understanding of:

- Fundamental Health & Safety practices associated with carrying out construction work
- Scientific principles related to construction activities
- The construction industry and careers within it
- Principles of sustainability and design, relevant to construction projects
- Information, data and principles of measurements
- Tools, equipment and materials used in construction work
- Legislation, regulations and approved standards that apply to the construction industry

Learners may prepare by asking themselves questions such as:

- How are teams of different specialists co-ordinated to work together on construction projects?
- What are different career pathways and destinations within the construction industry?
- What factors influence whether construction projects are profitable?
- What kind of tasks do Onsite trades perform?
- What tools and equipment Onsite trades use as part of their role?

Underpinning knowledge outcomes

On completion of this Onsite Core, learners will understand:

1. Health and safety in construction
2. Construction science principles
3. Construction design principles
4. Construction & the built environment industry
5. Construction sustainability principles
6. Construction measurement principles
7. Building technology principles
8. Construction information and data principles
9. Relationship management in construction
10. Digital technology in construction
11. Construction commercial/business principles

Completion of the onsite construction core will give learners the opportunity to develop their maths, English and digital skills. Details are presented in the skills section of each criterion.

Onsite core content

1. Health and safety

Criteria

1.1 Construction legislation and regulations

Range:

Legislation and regulations - Health and Safety at Work Act (HASAWA), Reporting Injuries, Diseases and Dangerous Occurrences Regulations (RIDDOR), Control of Substances Hazardous to Health (COSHH), Construction (Design and Management) (CDM) regulations, Provision and Use of Work Equipment Regulations (PUWER), manual handling operations regulations, Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) at work regulations work at height regulations, Construction (Design and Management) Regulations 2007, control of noise at work regulation, environmental regulations, waste management.

What do learners need to learn?

The role of legislation and regulations in the construction industry, including the role of the Health and Safety Executive (HSE). How current legislation impacts employer, employee, and construction projects within a domestic and commercial setting.

The bodies responsible for maintaining and updating legislation and regulations. How to obtain legislation and regulations and the importance of ensuring the information is current.

To include regulations relating to provisions of welfare facilities during construction work (toilets, washing facilities, drinking water, heating, changing rooms and lockers, rest facilities etc) and access to information related to welfare responsibilities onsite.

The implications of not adhering to the legislation on the public, client, business and employers and employees including enforcements, penalties, and imprisonment.

The difference between statutory and non-statutory legislation, where each legislation is applicable in terms of construction activities.

Skills

CSB
EC5

1.2 Public liability and employer's liability

What do learners need to learn?

What liability is and what the current requirements are relating to public and employer liability for construction employees and employers.

The implications of public liability such as, injury, illness/death, legal action and compensation and employer's liability such as employee and public injury, accidents, medical cost, compensation, legal costs, and loss of income.

The role of and requirements of insurance and how it protects construction employees and employers.

Skills

EC5

1.3 Approved construction codes of practice

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Where to obtain approved codes of practice through the HSE L series publications. Their use, purpose, and legal status and how these are applied in the construction industry.	EC5

1.4 Implications of poor health and safety performance

Range:

Implications - penalties, improvement notice, prohibition notice, powers of prosecution.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Potential implications of poor health and safety performance in the construction industry including environmental, financial, legal, and ethical noncompliance.	EC3 EC5
How poor health and safety impacts individuals, including death/injury when working onsite (when working with asbestos, silica, working at heights, working with electricity, and working with onsite plant etc.).	
How it impacts at different levels (the employee, employer/ client/customer/public). How health and safety is addressed, i.e. through control methods (risk assessments, legislation etc.) and the benefits of addressing poor health and safety, including reduced injury, death, improved reputation, performance, and reducing costs.	

1.5 Development of **safe systems of work**

Range:

Safe systems of work - company management systems, risk assessments, method statements, permits to work, safety notices and CSCS cards.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Types of safe systems of work used in construction projects. Roles and responsibilities, recording and reviewing and any potential implications of not having systems in place.	EC3 EC5

1.6 Safety conscious procedures

Range:

Safety conscious procedures - safe systems of work, reporting of potential hazards, site inductions, training, toolbox talks, good housekeeping (working systematically, keeping areas clean and clear).

What do learners need to learn?

Procedures that aim to promote and support safety consciousness within construction sites/environments/workshop areas.

The benefits of having these procedures in place (fewer accidents and incidents) and the potential implications of not adhering to them – (injury/death, damage to work and equipment, loss of business, fines, increased costs, project timescales slipping).

Skills

EC1
EC3
EC4

1.7 Safety inspection of a work environment

Range:

Safety inspection - sensory inspections, visual inspections, recording documents.

What do learners need to learn?

The methods used to inspect a workplace to ensure it is safe for work. Review of area/site/workshop, use of guidance and HSE regulations documentation used to define safe methods and mitigate potential risks and technical health and safety terms used in the construction industry.

Types of safety inspection recording documentation:

- register of inspection
- access equipment
- work equipment

Skills

CSA
CSC
EC3
EC5

1.8 Recording and reporting of safety incidents and near misses

Range:

Recording and reporting - accident book, reporting procedure, accident, and incident reporting policy, RIDDOR reportable incidents.

What do learners need to learn?

The correct process to undertake and follow when reporting an incident or near miss in the workplace.

Skills

CSA
CSD
EC3

1.9 Emergency procedures for unsafe situations

Range:

Emergency procedures - Evacuations, electric shock, first aid.

Unsafe situations - Fire, gas leaks, terrorist threats, water leak, carbon monoxide, potential electric shock.

What do learners need to learn?

The correct procedures to follow if unsafe situations occur in the workplace.

Actions to be taken when dealing with fire situations.

The different fire extinguisher and their use.

Skills

CSC
EC5

1.10 Types of PPE.

Range:

Types of PPE - Head protection (safety hat, bump cap), eye protection (goggles, safety glasses, full face visor), ear protection (ear defenders, ear plugs), full body protection (overalls, work wear, elbow pads), hand protection (gloves, gauntlets), knee protection (knee pads, kneeling mat), foot protection (safety shoes, safety boots, safety trainers), respiratory protection (respirators, dusk mask, face fit), vibration protection, harnesses.

What do learners need to learn?

The purpose and correct use of appropriate PPE to mitigate risks.

1.11 First aid facilities

What do learners need to learn?

The first aid facilities that must be available in the work area in accordance with Health and Safety regulations.

1.12 Warning signs for the seven main groups of hazardous substance

What do learners need to learn?

The categories of safety signs.

The symbols for hazardous waste.

The meaning of each pictogram in the CLP Regulation and where they would be encountered.

1.13 Safe practices and procedures for the use of **access equipment and manual handling**

Range:

Access equipment - ladders, mobile scaffold towers, platforms, trestles, steps, podiums, staging, boom, and scissor lifts.

Manual handling – single, two-person lift, mechanical lifting aids.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
The different types of access equipment and manual handling operations.	EC5 MC4
The safety checks to be carried out on access equipment; visual, tagging, fit for purpose, secure level ground, operative's competency for use of equipment.	
Safe erection methods for access equipment.	
Factors that influence the choice of equipment for carrying out work at height based on the work being carried out, duration at work, action points for heights.	
Ratios and advantage of pulleys and other lifting aids	

1.14 Safe practices and procedures for working in excavations and confined spaces

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
<ul style="list-style-type: none">safe working in excavationsthe safety measures when working in excavationsthe dangers associated with excavationssafe working in confined spacesthe dangers associated with confined spacesthe safety measures used when working in confined spaces	EC5

2. Construction science principles

Criteria

2.1 Materials science principles

Range:

Materials - ferrous and nonferrous metals, plastic (thermosetting and thermoplastic), fireclays/ceramics, bricks, concrete, mortar, plasterboard, timber, timber and fibre-based sheet material, paint, solvents, adhesives, sand, lime, additives.

Principles - material properties, chemical composition, degradation, failure, effects of environmental conditions, ductility, malleability, conductivity, tensile strength, compressive, strength, durability.

What do learners need to learn?

The principles of material science in construction design and how buildings will perform in terms of durability and stability.

Properties of materials, their uses, and the reasons that they are suitable for application including:

- why different mortar mixes are used and what the different mixes are, to include lime, cement, and sand mixing ratios.
- tests for sand: cleanliness (silt test), bulking
- why different concrete mixes are used and what the different mixes are and how these are measured
- concrete: cement, fine aggregate, and coarse aggregate mixing ratios
- tests for concrete: slump test, compaction factor test, soundness
- setting times for mixed materials
- measuring qualities for practical application, gauging by weight or by volume
- methods of mixing concrete
- methods of mixing mortar
- brick classification, frost resistance, salt content, using technical information data sheets
- brick tests, crushing strength water absorption
- metals corrosion, how defects occur
- methods of material testing

Skills

CSB
MC1
MC2
MC4

2.2 Mechanical science principles

Range:

Mechanical science principles - force, work, energy, power, simple mechanics, basic mechanics.

What do learners need to learn?

Key principles of Mechanical Science and how they are used to inform construction methods including.

Energy - (Kinetic and potential).

Force - (is the direct contact between 2 objects i.e. tension, shear, compression bending).

Work - (energy transferred by force) Power (rate of which work is done – energy conversion to power).

Basic mechanics to include theory of moments, action and reaction, centre of gravity, velocity and ratio, mechanical advantage.

Simple mechanics to include levers, pulleys.

Calculations to include load bearing formulae.

Skills

MC1
MC4

2.3 Electricity principles

Range:

Electricity principles - sources of power, generation, transformation, distribution, voltage, current, resistance, electrical power, energy, efficiency.

What do learners need to learn?

Electricity principles in relation to the construction process and use of the completed building:

- types of electricity sources (including fossil fuel, nuclear and renewable energy)
- the types of power plants used to provide reliable sources of energy (including coal, oil, gas and nuclear).
- transformation (electromagnetic induction and types of transformers (step up and down, three phases, single phase).
- distribution (via networks to industry and domestic users).
- voltage currents and resistance and the relationship with power, energy, and efficiency. Why different equipment requires a different voltage, 12v, 110v, 240v, 415v
- Calculations relating to electricity principles

Skills

EC5
MC4

2.4 Structural science principles

Range:
Structural science principles - forces, loads, materials, structural members.

What do learners need to learn?

Structural science principles its use and effects and how it informs the construction and design of buildings including:

- the effects of forces on materials and building: compression and torsion stress, tension, bending, and shear
- the different types of loads acting on structures: vertical, horizontal, and longitudinal
- material properties: strength, malleability, hardness, elasticity
- different types of structural members: footings, walls, beams, roof trusses, columns, and beams.
- compliance with document A
- drilling and notching conventions
- importance of calculations being conducted in structural design: beam, load, column
- appreciate the effects of adjacent structures, trees, drains and sewers, ground conditions, on the design of foundations
- know where to find the Building Regulations that cover foundations
- calculations for forces, stress and strain

Skills

CSB
MC4

2.5 Heat principles

Range:

Heat principles - heat transfer, air temperature, air density humidity, condensation air movement, heat loss, thermal conductivity, resistance, convection cycles.

What do learners need to learn?

Key principles of heat transfer and its cause and effect within the built environment, including:

- heat transfer: conduction, convection, and radiation and how they are managed to lessen the environmental impact
- characteristics of air: temperature, density, and humidity
- condensation: sources, types and effects of condensation and controls
- thermal conductivity: R and U values
- what impacts heat loss in a building: building fabric, ventilation, and air temperature
- how buildings are affected by temperature change, (design, faults)
- how condensation is created, and buildings are designed to overcome this.
- effects of moisture on construction materials,
- methods of generating power within a building: solar, photovoltaic, heat recovery, gas, electric
- methods of heating / cooling buildings

Calculations used, to include thermal conductivity, resistance, heat loss.

Skills

EC5

EC6

MC4

2.6 Light principles

Range:

Light principles - refraction, difference in artificial and natural light, glare, directed and reflected light, flow of light energy, daylight factor, colour rendering.

What do learners need to learn?

How artificial and natural light are incorporated into the design of a building considering energy use and type of experience/benefit for the end user.

Skills

MC4

2.7 Acoustics principles

What do learners need to learn?

Key principles of acoustics and acoustic barriers and how they are applied to the built environment to ensure privacy and control/limit unwanted transference of sound internally and externally.

Factors that affect acoustics of types of buildings, including frequencies, reverberation, reverberation time, decibels, focusing, resonance, and echo.

Acoustic principles in action in the construction industry

- insulation
- sound absorption
- use of specific acoustic materials

The effect on the operative and upon the wider environment through noise pollution, and external sources of sound and noise.

Use of decibels: as a unit of measure, additional levels, and threshold limits.

- compliance with approved document E (resistance to sound)

Skills

EC2
EC6
MC4

2.8 Earth science principles

Range:

Earth science principles - physical geography, hydrology, geology, earth forces, natural phenomenon weather.

What do learners need to learn?

Earth science principles and how this impacts the built environment and basic construction design principles including:

- physical geography including land use, water levels and ground contamination, soil cleanliness and the use of soil samples
- hydrology including lakes rivers and water cycles
- earth forces and natural phenomenon including landslides, tidal factors, and earthquakes
- weather including climate change, temperature, rainfall and wind

Skills

MC5

3. Construction design principles

Criteria

3.1 Benefits of good design

Range:

Benefits – efficiency, aesthetics, sustainability, wellbeing and improved quality of life, value for money local/community improvement, on budget.

What do learners need to learn?

The benefits of good design and the potential implications of poor design (reduced saleability, reduced efficiencies, negative effect on local community) and the different parties affected in the construction chain (client, project sponsor, project team, consultants, suppliers, contractors and sub-contractors and end users).

Factors that can impact on the profitability of projects – over specification leading to higher costs, difficulty of assembly leading to increased timescales and increased budgets, Corporate social responsibilities (CSR), vernacular construction, codes for sustainable homes, project scales, brownfield versus greenfield sites.

Skills

CSC
EC6
MC8
MC10

3.2 Design principles

Range:

Design principles - Environmental Protection, safety, speed, economics, aesthetics, buildability manufacture, installation and construction feasibility, integration of services, infrastructure, inclusivity, accessibility, heat loss prevention, acoustics, lighting, and air quality.

What do learners need to learn?

Factors that need to be considered during the design of building services and how the range of design principles are influenced by the end design including buildability.

The stages and outcomes of the Royal Institute of British Architecture (RIBA) plan of work.

To include:

- environmental protection: sustainable technologies and materials, energy sources, energy reduction materials, local and natural environment
- safety: safe construction methods
- aesthetics (design features, materials used, colour)
- buildability manufacture: installation, feasibility, modern methods of construction, inclusivity, and construction timescales
- provisions (services and access)
- traditional versus modern methods of construction (timber frame, thin joint, etc.) and off-site construction
- listed Buildings regulations
- heritage regulations
- Local Authority restrictions

Skills

CSB
EC6
DC1
DC6

3.3 Role of different **disciplines** involved in design.

Range:

Disciplines - architects and all professional/trade occupations, planners and building inspectors, surveyors, quantity surveyors, civil engineers, draftsman, clerk of works, manufacturers.

What do learners need to learn?

A basic knowledge of key job roles within construction design including the responsibilities and reporting lines/lines of escalation within roles.

The key activities aligned to the disciplines with an appreciation of potential career progression routes.

Skills

CSB
CSD

3.4 Design **process** from conception to completion.

Range:

Process – definition, client needs, research, budget, site analysis, assessment of current and proposed characteristics, planning/regulations, approval/ review, design sign off.

What do learners need to learn?

The key stages of the design process from initial enquiry to completed design and factors that may impact or influence design such as CDM, budget, and end user requirements including:

- site analysis: location, size, topography
- planning: local planning, listed buildings, environmental factors, and regulations how to make a planning application, how the approval is gained, appeals procedures
- what a feasibility study is
- animals/infestation/Site of Scientific Interest (SSSI)/protection
- planning for utilities and connecting to services (water, drainage, gas, electric)
- what is the frontage line and building line and how are these determined?
- project planning, Gantt charts, critical path - use of information for costing and efficient resources

Skills

CSA
CSB
EC3
EC5
EC6
MC7
MC9

3.5 The concept of the whole building, including **life cycle assessment**.

Range:

Life cycle assessment - raw material supply, manufacture of construction products, the construction process stage, occupation, demolition, when the materials are disposed of or recycled.

What do learners need to learn?

The concept of the whole building and how design and construction is influenced by construction systems working together, including life cycle assessments and how they influence project planning and are influenced by regulations and legislation (environmental regulations/legislations inform on planning greener and smarter building with less impact overall on the environment) including material acquisition, manufacturing, use and final disposal.

4. Construction and the built environment industry.

Criteria

4.1 Structure of the construction industry

What do learners need to learn?

The structure of the construction industry, including roles and business types (sole traders, contractors, sub-contractors, small, medium, and large organisations) and roles and client types (private, commercial, public limited companies and the Government). Size and scale in determining who is involved.

The role of building regulators and the relationship with the customer/client (ensuring safety, health and welfare in and around built environments).

The range of work undertaken (commercial, residential, industrial, health, retail, recreational and leisure, utilities and transport).

Skills

MC3

4.2 How the construction industry serves the economy as a whole

What do learners need to learn?

How the construction industry contributes to the UK economy with reference to wealth generation from construction developments, area regeneration, improvements in infrastructure, and community developments, including housing, transport, leisure facilities, educational establishments and hospitals.

Factors that impact growth of the industry, including political changes, developments in technology/practice, skilled labour resources and environmental considerations.

Impact of national infrastructure projects.

Market intelligence and industry needs, labour forecasting.

4.3 Integration of the **supply chain** through partnering and collaborative practices

Range:

Supply chain – client, architect, engineers, building contractor, sub-contractors, operatives, manufacturers, suppliers.

What do learners need to learn?

The integration of all partners of the supply chain in the building process. Awareness of the importance of effective planning and scheduling (inventory management), stages of design, collaborative working (integrated systems and agreed roles and responsibilities and change management approaches) and the benefits (project cost savings, increased resources ensuring that the project is completed to standards, budget and on time, and the consequences of poor planning and poor communication (disruption, increased costs, negative reputation).

Skills

CSD

4.4 **Procurement** of projects within the construction sector

Range:

Procured - need/demand, tendering and bidding processes, supply chain, estimation, quotation, tender documentation.

What do learners need to learn?

The key stages within procurement and the development of construction projects with consideration of different scales of building projects from domestic through to commercial and industrial.

The types of common procurement routes (contractor led, design and build, fast track, lump sum, single stage, two stage).

Project, cash flow management, contract payment periods for suppliers, contractors and sub-contractors.

Skills

MC9
MC10

4.5 Roles and responsibilities of the **construction professions**

Range:

Construction professions - architect, civil engineer, craft operative, ground works, plant occupation, non-skilled operative, building services design engineer, building services engineer technician, building services engineer site management, facilities manager, client representatives, contract managers.

Construction operatives – Bricklayers, Carpenter, Joiners, Painter and decorators. Plasterers.

What do learners need to learn?

The key job roles (position or part played) and responsibilities (types of tasks and duties they are expected to complete) of construction professionals and the stages they may be involved in a construction.

4.6 The **role of Continuing Professional Development (CPD)** in developing the knowledge and skills of those working in the sector

Range:

Role of CPD - upskilling staff, maintaining occupational competence, legal requirements, product knowledge.

What do learners need to learn?

The role of CPD to individuals, companies and the building industry as a whole

The importance in maintaining occupational competence/currency and best practice and the link to keeping clients/customers/public safe.

CPD and career progression. Workforce planning.

Providers of CPD including:

- professional bodies
- accreditation bodies
- certification bodies
- manufacturers
- in house/ toolbox talk

Types of CPD, including formal, informal, qualifications, work experience, self-learning, and chartered etc.

4.7 Building information modelling (BIM)

What do learners need to learn?

The aspects of building information modelling and the effect they have on real time project delivery in a collaborative way and BIM government levels 1 to 3.

Including delivering real time projects:

- Digital Plan of Works (DPoW)
- Employer's Information Requirements (EIR)
- Common Data Environment (CDE)

Skills

CSD

4.8 PESTLE factors

Range:

PESTLE - political, economic, social, technological, legal, environmental.

What do learners need to learn?

Current examples of PESTLE and how it is used for analysis in building services and construction projects.

The potential impact these factors have on current and future building projects (changes post Grenfell, tax changes for self-employed, augmented reality and impacts of Building Regulations and compliance).

Skills

CSD

5 Sustainability principles

Criteria

5.1 Sustainability when **planning** and delivering a construction project

Range:

Planning - use of renewable and recyclable resources, reducing energy consumption and waste, creating a healthy and environmentally friendly environment, protecting the natural and physical environment.

What do learners need to learn?

The importance of sustainability in relation to the stages of project development.

Including design, planning and delivery and across different types/scales of construction project as well as environmental protection. The relevance of local sourcing, resource protection, re-use, and refurbishment of materials.

The common sustainability assessment methods used in planning and delivering a construction project including BREEAM, LEED, TRADA, and Well building standards.

Consideration around carbon footprints when planning construction projects.

Skills

EC5

5.2 Types of **sustainable solutions**

Range:

Sustainable solutions - social, environmental, economic, human (habitability).

What do learners need to learn?

The use of sustainable solutions including prefabricated construction, self-heal concrete, energy efficiency systems, insulation, green roofs, greywater harvesting systems, use of soakaways, sustainable drainage and smart glass/electrochromic glass and how sustainable materials are used (recycled bricks and tiles/slates and timber products in construction of building and roofs/locally sourced - reducing carbon footprint).

Skills

CSB

5.3 Environmental legislation

Range:

Environmental legislation - Environmental Protection Act, Climate Change Act, Clean Air Act, Water Act, Building Regulations, Control of Pollution (Oil Storage) (England) Regulations 2001, COSHH, WEEE, Hazardous Waste regulations.

What do learners need to learn?

The purpose of environmental legislation (protect, preserve the environment and control hazards to health) and the obligations and responsibilities of employers and employees in relation to construction/maintenance activities, best practice for pollution prevention and environmental protection measures, including hazardous waste, material considerations, disposal methods, BOCs, PPE, user guide instructions, specific risk assessments.

Skills

EC5

5.4 Environmental **policies** and initiatives

Range:

Policies - Hazardous Waste Act, Conservation of fuel and power Approved document L1A.

Impact in design - materials used, disposal methods, BOCs, PPE, user guide instructions.

What do learners need to learn?

Implementation of environmental policies and initiatives (onsite initiatives, BREEAM, Quality Mark, government subsidies, environment performance certificates) and the impact on design and construction.

Skills

EC5

5.5 Environmental performance measures

Range:

Measures - source of materials, use of materials, energy source, energy consumption, water source, water consumption, radioactive waste, flexibility, durability and resilience, pollution and waste processing, transport, landscape and ecology, deconstruction and disposal.

What do learners need to learn?

The key environmental performance measures of construction industry and how they are considered during design and monitored during building operation times. The types of schemes that can be used to certify levels of environmental performance in construction, including BREEAM, Passivhaus and Leadership in energy and environmental design (LEED).

Skills

EC5

5.6 Principles of heritage and conservation

Range:

Principles – restrictions, permission, legislation and guidance.

What do learners need to learn?

Heritage and conservation considerations associated with listed and other historical buildings (types of grades and restrictions) and maintenance of existing stock and how current regulations (Planning Act and Heritage Protection Bill) affect the selection of materials used for building activities.

Skills

EC5

5.7 Lean construction

What do learners need to learn?

The principles of lean construction (efficiency, best value, ensuring the work environment is clean and safe, improving planning and continuous review and improvement).

The techniques aimed at maximising value and minimising waste within the building services industry (just in time deliveries, reducing errors, recycling).

Skills

CSB

5.8 Waste management

Range:

Waste management - Waste Management plan, waste categorisation, segregation, reducing pollutants, recycling.

What do learners need to learn?

Transportation and disposal methods for waste (including general and specialist disposal, use of licensed disposal companies, use of registered waste carriers). Plans to reduce use of pollutants in construction projects including reduction of high carbon emissions, reducing land contamination, and correct waste disposal).

Skills

EC2
EC3
EC5

5.9 Energy production and energy use

Range:

Energy - Wind, water (hydro), solar, photovoltaic, nuclear, fossil fuels, ground, and wind source energy, biomass.

What do learners need to learn?

Types of energy produced including nuclear, heat and power combined, fossil fuels including alternative methods such as wind, solar, hydroelectric, and their impact when used (availability, impact on environment, costs).

Reasons for choosing energy sources discussing the advantages and disadvantages of each method (localism, regionalism).

Skills

EC6

6. Measurement principles

Criteria

6.1 Accurate and appropriate measurement

What do learners need to learn?

The benefits of accurate measurements to contractors, the client/customer, to profitability and project success, including accuracy in site/location/areas measurements to accurately calculate material quantities, which in turn enable accurate costing of construction projects, (including use of job, batch, activity, life cycle and other types of costing techniques depending on the project) and the implications of not having accurate measurements – in terms of costs, time, and safety.

Skills

CSC
MC1
MC9

6.2 Standard units of measurement and measurement techniques

Range:

Units of measurement - mm millimetres, m metres, km kilometres, g gram, kg kilogram, tn tonne, ltr litres, sq square and m², m³ cubic metres.

Measurement techniques – Approximation/estimation, use of measuring equipment including tapes, lasers and surveying equipment.

What do learners need to learn?

The types of units of measurement and how these are applied and used in construction projects including the methods of obtaining measurements and the calculations used to ascertain for (height, length, linear, distance, area, volume, weight, mass, ratio, quantity).

Skills

MC1
MC2
MC3
MC4

6.3 Measurement standards, guidance and practice

Range:

Measurement standards - scale, tolerances.

What do learners need to learn?

Standardised scales for recording or displaying measurements, including measurement rules. How tolerances are applied and implications of not meeting tolerances.

Use common scales: 1:1 1:2 1:5 1:10 1:50 1:500.

1:1250 1:2500 to communicate information by drawings to BS1192.

Skills

EC1
MC1
MC3
MC4

7. Building technology principles

Criteria

7.1 Construction methods

Range:

Construction methods - onsite, off site, renovation/refurbishment, maintenance.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Types of traditional and modern construction methods (including pre 1919 and post 1920 considerations) and their use and the benefits depending on the construction required.	EC2 EC5 EC6
Onsite: timber frame, brick and block, container straw bale, robotics	
Off-site: pre-assembled, precast, modular, panel systems, 3D printing	
Renovation and refurbishment: upgrades, cosmetic and structural changes	
Maintenance: fabric services, upgrades	

7.2 Forms of construction

Range:

Forms - substructure, superstructure, infrastructure, internal/external walls, external work.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Current forms of construction and their use and suitability for both built environment and civil engineering structures.	EC1 EC2 EC4 EC6
Substructures: types of foundations, basements, retainer wall	
Superstructure: roofs, walls, floors, windows, doors and frames	
Infrastructure: roads, sewage systems, railways, bridges	
Internal/external walls: cavity, solid, infill, stud, openings vertical and horizontal damp proof, weather tight, preventing water ingress and allowing for egress (weep holes)	
External work: paving, boundaries, drainage, parking, (finished surfaces, sub-base materials)	

7.3 Key content and required notifications of UK Building Regulations and **Approved Documents**

Range:

Approved Documents - Part A – Structure, part B – fire safety, part C – site preparation and resistance to contaminants and moisture, part D – toxic substances, part E – resistance to the passage of sound, part F – ventilation, part G – sanitation, hot water safety and water efficiency, part H – drainage and waste disposal, part J – combustion appliances and fuel storage systems, part K – protection from falling, collision and impact, part L – conservation of fuel and power, part M – access to and use of buildings, part P – electrical safety, part Q – security, part R - physical infrastructure for high speed electronic communications network.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
The purpose of all current UK Building Regulations in renovations and construction of buildings and building services.	CSB EC5

7.4 Building standards

Range:

Building standards: British standards, International standards (ISO), Common minimum standards for construction (CMS).

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Current British Standards which include waste management, BIM, fire safety.	EC5
International Standards which include standards for structures, materials, sustainability.	
Common minimum standards used for public sector projects. Their purpose and benefits (guidance, pushing up standards etc.) in construction and renovation.	

7.5 Manufacturers' instructions

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Type of manufacturers' instructions (maintenance, operation, and installation instruction manuals) and their purpose in the construction and maintenance of buildings and services (health and safety).	CSA

8. Information and data principles

Criteria

8.1 Data

What do learners need to learn?

Key elements of data, including accuracy, generalisation, interoperability, level of detail and metadata used to inform construction and building services processes.

Different sources that data can be generated from including:

- design and construction processes
- Building Information Modelling
- post occupancy evaluation
- utilities, building services, meters, building management systems.
- infrastructure and transport systems.
- enterprise systems such as purchasing systems, performance reporting, work scheduling.
- maintenance and replacement systems.
- operational cost monitoring.
- ICT systems and equipment.

Data from these sources can be used to understand behaviour, assess performance, improve market competitiveness, and allocate resources.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC5
MC6
DC3
DC4

8.2 Sources of information

What do learners need to learn?

Be able to interpret current and accurate types of information and data sources used within construction projects including:

- product data
- manufacturer's specifications client's specifications
- Common Data Environment (CDE)
- BIM
- Gantt charts
- critical path networks
- certification and commissioning data
- test data schedules
- condition reports

Skills

CSC
EC1
EC2
EC3
EC5
DC1
DC3
DC4

8.3 Data management and **confidentiality**

Range:

Confidentiality - encrypted data, virus protection software, software updates, firmware updates, GDPR Requirements, business procedures.

What do learners need to learn?

Current data protection legislation including GDPR and organisational procedures that are used to manage data and increase confidentiality (manage data access, encryption, acquisition, physically secure devices, secure disposal)

Data storage requirements in relation to security and protection and how they help to prevent common threats (cyberattacks, malware, Trojans, data loss, data recovery).

Skills

DC4
DC5

9. Relationship management in construction

Criteria

9.1 Stakeholders

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
The different types of stakeholders including client, construction team, suppliers, community and end user in construction projects.	CSD EC1

9.2 Roles, expectations and interrelationships

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
<p>The roles, expectations and interrelationships of all stakeholders throughout the construction project delivery at start, design stage, through construction, to handover and in use.</p> <p>To include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• hierarchy of project management• promoting good relationships across the project• cost control measures• time management methods• handover processes• Corporate Social Responsibilities (CSR) and S106• follow up and review	CSD EC1

9.3 Collaborative working to project delivery and reporting

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
The importance of a collaborative approach to project delivery (delivery, reporting, providing information at various stages in the development) and how this is applied in practice (with the use of BIM and workflow software packages as well as face to face methods).	CSC CSD EC1 EC2 EC3 EC5 DC3

9.4 Customer service principles

Range:

Customer service principles – good product knowledge, building trust, meeting timescales, good communication, efficiency, honesty and integrity.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
The basic principles of good customer service and the benefits of good customer service including, repeat business, good reputation, satisfied customers and employees.	CSC EC1

9.5 Team work to team and project performance

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
The importance of good team work to team and project performance (efficiencies, morale of staff, creativity, accountability open communication common goals) and the consequence of poor teamwork (conflict and tension, low engagement, lack of trust) and how it impacts on a construction project (effects of productivity and efficiency).	EC2 EC6

9.6 Team dynamics

Range:

Team Dynamics - knowledge of trade/business/product/service, accountability, cooperation, trust, support, reliability, effective communication, active participation, adaptability.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Qualities and characteristics of good team dynamics, including what is expected of a team member, team structure, what qualities are needed and how these qualities are demonstrated.	EC2 EC6

9.7 Equality, diversity and representation

Range:

Equality, diversity and representation - age, disability, gender reassignment, marriage and civil partnership, pregnancy and maternity, race, religion or belief, sex, sexual orientation.

What do learners need to learn?

Current equality and diversity legislation and the protected characteristics detailed under the Equality Act, Employment Rights Act, Human Rights Act, and trade unions, including its application in the workplace.

9.8 Negotiation techniques

Range:

Negotiation techniques - Distributive negotiation or Win-Lose approach, lose-lose approach, compromise approach, integrative negotiation or win-win approach.

What do learners need to learn?

Methods of negotiation and how they are used within the construction industry (acquiring land, obtaining planning permission, awarding contracts, negotiating change orders, time extensions and resolving disputes).

Skills

EC6

9.9 Conflict management techniques

Range:

Conflict management techniques - preventative measures, compromise, problem solving, avoiding, competing, forcing, alternative dispute resolution (Informal discussions, mediation, conciliation, arbitration).

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Conflict management techniques including preventative measures and common reasons for conflicts (ambiguous contract terms, breach of contracts, late supply of materials, programme delays).	CSD EC6 CS1
Using digital methods to resolve conflict including the use of BIM, controlling conflict with before it escalates. Use when construction projects change/alter or change.	

9.10 Methods and styles of communication

Range:

Methods - verbal (pitch and tone, questioning types open/closed), and non-verbal (body language, eye contact, facial expressions).

Styles - formal and informal.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
The styles and methods of communication, type of communication (face to face, email, letter, telephone, drawn information) and suitability for different situations that may arise throughout a typical construction project. Digital project management and how this can be used to communicate as part of the construction project teams.	EC1 EC2 EC4 EC6 DC1 DC3

9.11 Employment **rights and responsibilities**

What do learners need to learn?

The current employment rights and responsibilities of both employees and their employer.

Employment Rights: wage rules (minimum wage, pension), time off (holiday, maternity/paternity rest breaks), equal rights (against harassment and discrimination), health and safety and welfare, and access to representation in times of grievance (trade union representation/independent representation).

Responsibilities:

Employer to employee: work, pay, health, welfare and safety provided

Employee to employer: working to contract, complying with health, welfare and safety, confidentiality and reasonable behaviour as set in the company handbook.

Skills

EC5

9.12 Ethics and **ethical behaviour**

What do learners need to learn?

Ethics and ethical behaviour- (honesty, integrity, equality, loyalty, fairness, caring, respect, law abiding, commitment, reputation, accountability) in the construction industry.

9.13 Sources of information.

What do learners need to learn?

How sources of information, including web-based sources and social networking contribute to the knowledge sharing/stakeholder experience (sharing ideas and knowledge, advertising and promotion, getting customer reviews and feedback) within the construction industry.

Skills

CSD

10. Digital technology in construction

Criteria

10.1 Internet of things

Range:

Internet of things - Smart Technology, smart/automated building, smart learning and of artificial intelligence (AI).

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
The use of technology to capture data in a completed building and how this data is used for the purpose of manufacture and delivery.	DC1 DC3 DC5 DC6
The different uses of technology connected to the internet of things (smart building, smart applications and systems) and their use and role in the construction industry (productivity, assisting just in time, asset management, maintenance, smart equipment smart concrete etc.)	

10.2 Digital engineering techniques

Range:

Digital engineering techniques - simulation, animation, surveying, CAD modelling.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Current Digital engineering techniques and their application in the construction industry.	MC6 DC1 DC2 DC6
Simulation: structural analysis	
Animation: visualisation of structural behaviour	
Surveying: laser level and measuring and CAD modelling (2D drawings 3D modelling), drones	

10.3 Adapting **technologies** used in other industries and for use in construction and the built environment

Range:

Technology - Machine manufacturing through robotics, Computer Numerical Control (CNC), CAD/CAM scanning, computer modelling, geo surveying, drones.

What do learners need to learn?

The benefits of using current technologies from other industries (accuracy, accessibility, efficiency, reducing risk) and how they can be adapted for use in the construction and the built environment.

Skills

MC6

11. Construction commercial/business principles.

Criteria

11.1 Business structures

Range:

Business structures - Public Limited Company (PLC. Ltd.), Small and medium enterprises (SMEs), not for profit organisations/community interest.

What do learners need to learn?

Types of business structures that exist in the built environment and construction industry.

11.2 Business objectives

Range:

Business objectives: Financial and social, organisation culture, quality, innovation, compliance, sustainability.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
The business and corporate objective used to measure the performance of the organisation in the construction industry:	MC6 MC9
Financial: private organisations (profit, growth and innovation and market leadership) and not for profit (value for money, increased access, reduced poverty).	
Social: private organisations (providing employment) and not for profit (providing housing, healthcare, services and education).	
Organisational culture: beliefs, behaviours and ethical values aligning with business objectives.	
Quality: measurable objectives, including use of quality marks ISO etc.	
Innovation: allows for generation of ideas, innovation activities and goals aligning with business objectives.	
Compliance: regulatory compliance (external) rules and internal controls built into objectives.	
Sustainability: sustainability embedded into business objectives, from energy efficient construction to eco-friendly use of materials.	
Calculating estimates and quotes (material, plant and labour costs, overheads, profit, contingency, fees, VAT)	

11.3 Business values

What do learners need to learn?

The fundamental business values (financial stability, customer service, care for life, ethical and transparent, codes of conduct, commit to customer and collaborative working).

Skills

CSD

11.4 Principles of corporate social responsibility

Range:

Principles – economic, legal, ethical, environmental, philanthropy.

What do learners need to learn?

The basic principles of corporate social responsibility (CSR) and how it is used in the construction industry (in design, responsible purchasing, career management, use of local operatives/trades/suppliers and local sustainable materials, sustainable initiatives).

11.5 Principles of entrepreneurship and innovation

Range:

Principles - solution provider, development, vision, exploiting ideas, creativity, value added, viability.

What do learners need to learn?

Principles of innovation and entrepreneurship and role it plays in the construction industry (improved product service, increased growth/profit, advancements in industry).

11.6 Measuring success

What do learners need to learn?

How organisations use benchmarking, setting standards, Key Performance Indicators (KPI's) and target setting (input, output and process) when measuring business success.

Skills

CSA

11.7 Project management

What do learners need to learn?

The principles of project management including, effective planning, setting clear goals and objectives, defining roles and responsibilities, setting realistic milestones and constraints on cost and time. Ensuring all objectives are measurable and achievable including SMART technique/Prince2 etc.

Skills

CSC

11.8 Quality management

What do learners need to learn?

The quality management systems and techniques used in the construction industry including:

- self-assessment
- internal audit
- external audit
- quality control
- quality improvement
- ISO 9000

The purpose of quality management systems - to maintain the standard or quality of the work in a consistent manner.

Skills

CSD

Links to occupational specialisms

All aspects of the Onsite core content can be related and contextualised on delivery with the occupational specialisms. However, the following are **key areas** of the content that may be **of particular relevance** when delivering the practical content in the occupational specialisms and provide efficiencies for teaching core knowledge in context:

Onsite specific core content

- Health and safety – Regulations and safe working practices
- Construction design principles
- Construction sustainability principles
- Scientific principles
- Building technology principles
- Information and data principles

Guidance for delivery

- Visits/engagement with local industry, employers and manufacturers should be provided throughout the delivery
- Formative assessment – oral Q&A, SmartScreen worksheets (samples available) observation of measuring activities
 - Practical - Use of pre-set formative assessments carry out tasks and record on standardised form.
 - Knowledge – pre-set paper-based activity to confirm skills and understanding. Learners can use variety of methods to carry out activities, calculators, apps, office IT
- Ways of ensuring content is delivered in line with current, up to date industry practice
 - Centres will need to ensure a realistic representation of onsite components are available
 - Centres will need to provide the appropriate tools, equipment and materials
 - The provision must represent the type of equipment currently available in the UK Onsite industry
 - Current and emerging Onsite technology should be included in delivery where possible

Suggested learning resources

Books

- Building Construction Handbook – Fred Hall – Routledge 2017
- Building Regulations – Ray Trucker – Routledge 2019
- Metric Handbook – Pamela Buxton – Routledge
- Advanced Construction Technology 5th Edition – Roger Greene – Pearson's
- Chudley, R. (2016) Building Construction Handbook. Routledge.
- IRVINE, W. and MACLENNAN Surveying for Construction 5th Ed.
- Sadgrove B.M. Setting out procedures for the modern built environment. London.

Websites

- Institute for apprenticeships and technical education - **www.instituteforapprenticeships.org**
- Building Regulations portal - **www.planningportal.co.uk**
- British Standards Institution - **www.standardscentre.co.uk**
- RIBA - **www.architecture.com**
- Building information Modelling -**www.gov/government/uploads/system**
- RIBA plan of work - **www.ribaplanofwork.com**
- English Heritage - **english-heritage.org.uk**
- Historic England – **www.historicengland.org.uk**

Level:	3
GLH:	600
Assessment method:	Practical assignment

What is this specialism about?

The purpose of this specialism is for learners to know and undertake fundamental bricklaying work within different construction environment's such as domestic brick and block work (solid and cavity walling) design and build complex masonry structures and use masonry skills to refurbish different types of buildings. Learners will have the opportunity to plan, perform and evaluate their work whilst utilising a range of materials, methods and techniques to allow the learner to progress.

Learners will develop their knowledge and understanding and skills in:

- Fundamental Health and safety regulations, control of noise, and working at height, while working safely across different construction projects.
- Bricklaying tools and equipment, building regulations and methods of work.
- Setting out masonry structures and calculating for building resources.
- Establishing sub and superstructure elements of a building.
- Finishing and establishing working areas.
- Calculating both labour and material costs.

Learners may be introduced to this specialism by asking themselves questions such as:

- What kind of tasks does a Bricklayer perform?
- What tools and equipment do bricklayer's use as part of their role?
- What are the steps required to become a qualified bricklayer?

Completion of this specialism will give learners the opportunity to develop their maths, English and digital skills.

Underpinning Bricklaying knowledge outcome

On completion of this specialism, learners will understand:

1. Bricklaying knowledge criteria

Performance outcomes

On completion of this specialism, learners will be able to:

2. Prepare for the construction of complex masonry structures
3. Construct complex masonry structures
4. Renovate masonry structures

Completion of this specialism will give learners the opportunity to develop their maths, English and digital skills.

Specialism content

Outcome 1

Common knowledge criteria

Health and safety

1.1 Implications of legislation and guidance

Range:

Legislation and guidance - The Health and Safety at Work Act (HASAWA), Construction Design Management, (CDM) regulations, Reporting injuries, diseases and dangerous occurrences act (RIDDOR), Control of substances hazardous to health (COSHH), Provision and use of Work Equipment Regulations (PUWER), Manual Handling Regulations, Personal protective equipment (PPE) at work regulations, Respiratory protective equipment (RPE) regulations Work at Height regulations, Control of Noise at work regulations, Control of vibration at work regulations, Electricity at work regulations, Lifting operations and lifting equipment regulations (LOLER), Hazardous waste regulations, Approved code of practice (ACOP), HSE information.

What do learners need to learn?

The role of legislation and regulations in the production and installation of complex masonry-based products including the role of the Health and Safety Executive (HSE). How current legislation impacts employer, employee and complex masonry projects within a domestic and commercial setting.

The implications of not adhering to the legislation on the public, client, business and employers, including enforcements, penalties and imprisonment.

Skills
EC5

1.2 The identification of **hazards and risks**

Range:

Common hazards and risks - tripping hazards, slipping hazards, Inadequate or lack of personal protective equipment, Defective (unsafe) equipment, Cutting and dressing resources Manual handling, Working at heights. Moving vehicles and machinery.

Controls - identify correct PPE and maintain PPE, method statements, risk assessments, complete accident book/ record, training, good housekeeping, toolbox talks, job hazard analysis.

What do learners need to learn?

The types of hazards and risks associated with complex masonry activities, working at height, in trenches, on site. Methods used to identify hazards (walk around site, observing how task are preformed, assessing tools, equipment) and the precautions taken through the adoption of controls to minimise them.

Skills

EC5

Controls

1.3 Controls content of **inductions, method statements** and **risk assessments**

Range:

Inductions - site layout, site specific hazard, location of welfare facilities, location of emergency areas.

Method statements- understand job descriptions, hazards specific to the job, control measures.

Risk assessment - identify hazards, personnel at risk, measures to remove/reduce risk.

What do learners need to learn?

The content and purpose of inductions (awareness and site safety). Risk assessments and how this feed into the production of method statements in relation to bricklaying and complex masonry tasks.

Skills

EC1

EC2

EC3

EC5

Information

1.4 Types of information

Range:

Information - program of work, drawings (includes use of scales and drawing conventions), specifications, schedules, risk assessments, method statements, building regulations, data sheets, manufacturer's information.

What do learners need to learn?

How to obtain relevant information using a range of methods, including researching the internet, manufacturer handbooks, other primary and secondary sources, including seeking direct information from relevant parties and liaising with manufacturers, professionals, colleagues and terminology required to aid interpretation and development.

Skills

EC5
DC1
DC5

1.5 Requirements of building regulations and standards

Range:

Requirements- protect public interest, provides minimum standards for health and safety and general wellbeing, specifies standards.

What do learners need to learn?

Where to obtain information on current building regulations and standards (Planningportal.co.uk, gov.uk, library) and their purpose relating to complex masonry structures,

Skills

DC1

1.6 Quality standards applicable to masonry structures

Range:

Types of quality standards/ tolerances - gauge, level, plumb, square, ranging, dimensional accuracy, clean elevations, face.

What do learners need to learn?

Current quality standards (BS 5628-3, BS EN 771-1 NHBC standards) and tolerances applicable to masonry structures.

Skills

MC1
MC8

Tools and equipment

1.7 Types and handling of **tools and equipment** used for bricklaying

Range:

Tools and equipment

Hand tools - Laying Brick trowel, Pointing trowel, Pointing hawk, Spirit levels, 900mm 1.2m 2.0m, Pocket level, Hammers, (club, brick, comb Scutch), Line and pins, Quoin blocks, Brick bolsters, Jointing/plugging chisel, Tape measures, 3m 10m 30m; Half round jointer, Recess jointer, Gauge rod, Propriety corner profiles, Hand brush.

Equipment - Storey rod, Hand saw, Block splitter, Trammel heads, Trammel rod, Sanding block, Rasp/File, Tin Snips, Ranging poles, Surveying staff, Laser level, Optical level, Sliding bevel, Dividers, Templates, Strong boys, Sole plates. Buckets, shovels, spades, sweeping brushes and wheelbarrows, PPE.

Power - Drum Mixer (110v), Extension lead (110v), Hammer drill and bits, Jig saw (110v), Power plane (110v), Masonry saw/disc cutter (hand and table), Mortar silo.

What do learners need to learn?

Types of hand tools and equipment used in complex masonry projects and tasks and their characteristics, purpose and suitability for tasks

For example, the Pointing trowel – A handheld tool with either a wooden or plastic handle and trowel with metal pointed end. Used in construction to shape mortar into seams which joint breaks, stones etc. in masonry.

1.8 **Operation** and **handling** requirements of tools and equipment

Range:

Operation and handling - accuracy, safe working methods, cleanliness, PPE, trained, competent, storage, method statements, risk assessments.

What do learners need to learn?

Requirements when operating and handling tools and equipment. Including, safe handling and safe working methods, safe storage minimising potential for damage and risk of theft.

Skills

EC4

1.9 Importance of tools and equipment **maintenance** and how to maintain tools

Range:

Maintenance - cleaning routines for all hand tools and equipment, secure hammer heads, deburring bolster and chisels, sharpening bolsters and chisels, sharp scutch combs, lubricating tape measures, check levels for accuracy, storage methods, check spirit level and plumb rules for accuracy.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
The processes used to maintain tools and the importance of regular maintenance of tools and equipment to ensure safe working and fit for purpose, including PAT testing. Maintenance of tools and equipment (grinding the burring on bolsters and chisels, replacing wedges to loose hammer heads, checks on electrical equipment, guards and cable, cleaning tools). Check spirit levels for accuracy.	EC4

Scientific concepts and principles applied to bricklaying

1.10 Masonry **classifications** and the **implications** of use

Range:

Classifications - half brick wall, solid wall, load bearing, reinforced, hollow, composite, post tensioned cavity wall, partition wall, separating wall.

Implications - stability, appearance, efflorescence, staining, subsidence, water penetration (porosity, permeability, absorption) frost damage, spalling, cracking, movement.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Types of masonry classifications (including salt content and F/S numbers, porosity) the implications, for use and the suitability of materials for the chosen application (strength, aesthetics, cost, weight durability).	EC3 EC6 MC1 DC4 EC6

1.11 **Types** and classifications of mortars, **techniques** for strengthening mortars and the **Implications**

Range:

Types - lime mortar, cement mortar, ready mixed mortar (onsite or off-site).

Techniques – batching, chemical additive, increased aggregate gauge, increased cement content, use of adjusted mortar and concrete ratios.

Implications - resistance to loading, joint failure, lateral movement, variation in strength, resistance to attack by chemicals, colour variation, effects of excessive moisture.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Different types of mortar and how they are applied, the techniques for strengthening and the implications of use in different bricklaying situations. The purpose of lime mortar and the use of additives. Consequences of over strength mortars. Drying and setting times and breakdown of mortar and the causes.	EC1 MC1 MC3

1.12 Types of pointing techniques and materials

Range:

Techniques - weatherstruck and cut, tuck pointing.

Materials - coloured sand, gauged additives, sand lime, gauged aggregates, resin based, lime putty.

What do learners need to learn?

The types of pointing techniques and the use of appropriate materials, their application (by hand and gun) and suitability for different situations (appearance, colour, strength, heritage work, aesthetics).

1.13 Effects of the **external environment** on masonry products and structures

Range:

External environment - drainage management, tree proximity, water table, wind exposure, frost effects, prolonged adverse weather conditions.

What do learners need to learn?

Skills

EC5

The effects of the external environment on masonry products and structures. (including root growth, frost heave, clay, subsoils, water table, adverse weather, movement cracking, subsidence and effects of mining)

1.14 **Manufacture** of brick, blocks and mortar used in construction

Range:

Manufacture:

Bricks and blocks - kiln fired, steamed, autoclave, handmade, machine pressed, wire cut.

Mortar – various mixes to dry powders and materials depending on mortar type.

Properties:

Bricks and blocks - shape, size, colour, composition and density.

Mortar – workability, bond and compressive strength.

Characteristics

Brick and block - uniform, compact.

Mortar - adhesion, durable workable.

What do learners need to learn?

The manufacturing processes for bricks, blocks and mortars used in construction and their properties, characteristics their suitability for different purposes (i.e. load bearing capacity, thermal insulation, high compressive strength, low water absorption, use for strength and exposed positions and ways to avoid banding).

1.15 Causes, effects, prevention and treatment of efflorescence

Range:

Causes – water soluble salts, low temperatures, moist conditions, condensation, rain, water added during trowelling, ground water, not protecting the finished work.

Effects – white/off white deposit, spoils appearance of masonry.

Prevention - keep resources dry, cover work on completion, specify bricks less susceptible to efflorescence.

Treatment - brush off crystalline products in dry weather, use a muriatic solution, light sandblasting.

What do learners need to learn?

The causes, effects, prevention and treatment of efflorescence.

1.16 The principles of thermal and sound efficiency their purpose, application and installation

Range:

Principles and purpose - heat transfer, sound transmittance.

Application and installation - selection of resources, appropriate location.

What do learners need to learn?

The principles and purpose of thermal and sound efficiency (including limiting heat transfer through external walls, limiting sound transmittance through masonry structure). Their application and installation and selection and appropriate location for use.

Selection of resources

Including, mineral fibre, polyisocyanurate board (PIR), lamb's wool, insulation blocks, dense concrete blocks (sound).

Appropriate Location

Including, full envelope, walls (cavity), solid wall, external wall insulation (EWI), internal dry wall application. The relationship with masonry materials and techniques including, maintaining air tightness, taped insulation board joints, flush pointed mortar joints.

Skills

EC5

1.17 **Movement** joints and differential movement

Range:

Movements - vertical movement joints in long lengths of masonry, regulation of positioning of movement joints, materials used to create movement joints.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Movement joints used in the construction process, positioning types of movement joints (i.e. telescopic/flexible ties, strips of compressed board, mastic etc.) and their application (i.e. to absorb temperature expansion, absorb vibration or allow movement due to ground settlement or seismic activity).	EC1 EC5 EC6

1.18 **Resistance** to **contaminants and moisture**

Range:

Contaminants and moisture - sulphate attack, lime leaching.

Resistance - horizontal damp proof course, damp proof membrane, cavity trays, radon/gas barriers.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
The relationship between contaminants and moisture damp proof barriers and their purpose (to protect vulnerable positions in a cavity from moisture ingress) and their application and installation (where the risk of moisture bridging occurs).	

1.19 The relationship between masonry and different forms of **construction frames**

Range:

Construction frames - timber, steel, concrete, portal, structural insulated panels (SIPs), insulated concrete framework (ICF).

What do learners need to learn?
The relationship between masonry (used as cladding, structural support, insulation) and the different forms of construction frames used.
To include types of masonry support systems, (continuous angle, welded steel bracket, individual bracket and off the shelf/off site-built systems).

1.20 Chemical reactions from combining masonry materials, the effect of adding waterproofing chemicals and the **effect** plasters/mortars have on hardwoods

Range:

Effects - Colour and grain distortion, Removal of natural oils.

What do learners need to learn?

Skills

The effects of chemical reactions from combining masonry materials (plasters/mortars) with hardwoods (and the effect of adding waterproofing chemicals (water repellent, stain resistant, prolong life).

EC5

Building Technology

1.21 Integral building **components** and their **purpose**

Range:

Components and purpose - ties (help and maintain structural stability in cavity walls), expansion joints (to allow for structural/thermal movement in walls), lintels (carry the weight of masonry over openings), bearers/padstones (to distribute loadings), cavity trays and weep holes (used to direct water and moisture outwards from the cavity), fire stops (to stop spread of fire, DPC in cavity, non-combustible insulation), radon barriers (to ensure radon is directed to outside of building) DPC/DPM (stop the passage of water and moisture), restraint straps (aids stability).

What do learners need to learn?

Types of building components, their purpose and their application and installation in accordance with building regulations.

1.22 Types of **radial** and **battered** brickwork

Range:

Radial - serpentine wall, curved on plan (concave and convex), axed semicircle, three centred arch, segmental arch.

Battered - battered brickwork, buttress, tumbling in.

What do learners need to learn?

The different types of radial and battered brickwork used in complex masonry structures and the calculations used to construct both types of brickwork (including volume, cross sections height thickness and breadth). To include calculations for quantities of materials required.

Skills

MC1
MC2
MC4

1.23 **Types** of reinforced brickwork

Range:

Types - horizontal (expanded metal lath, welded fabric,), brick and a half wall vertical reinforcement, isolated brick piers including vertical reinforcement.

What do learners need to learn?

The different types of reinforced brickwork, their purpose (to increase tensile strength of the wall), application and installation (vertical and horizontal reinforcement in bed joints and masonry voids).

Skills

EC4
EC6

1.24 Different types of **openings**

Range:

Openings - fireplace, chimney, flues.

What do learners need to learn?

The different types of openings involved in fireplace and chimney construction (including single and back to back fireplace) and their purpose (to contain the combustion process and to conduct flue gases to the outside of the structure) and its application and installation in accordance with building regulations.

Including the processes to build new or repair, block up existing openings safely and without causing future damage.

1.25 Types of **finishes** to wall plate and rafter level

Range:

Finishes - mortar bedding of the wall plate, placing restraint straps horizontal and into gable end, Use of timber and restraint straps and bolts.

What do learners need to learn?

Positioning and securing of wall plates rafters and trusses and how they are secured to the structure to meet current building regulations.

Skills

EC5

1.26 Different types of bonds used in masonry structures

Range:

Bonds - English, Flemish, Stretcher, Header, block bonded quoins (commonly referred to as rusticated quoins), garden wall bonds, decorative panels – herringbone, interlacing and basket weave (diagonal and vertical), Dentil, Dog tooth and oversailing.

What do learners need to learn?

The different types of bonds used in masonry structures including (327.5 – 225+102.5) thick English Bond, Flemish Bond, English and Flemish Garden wall bonds, Dutch Bond, Monk Bond, Header Bond, Block bonded quoins and closing a cavity: Block on flat at gutter level/forming a stopped end.

1.27 Types of cladding systems

Range:

Cladding systems - brick, steel, timber, composite, plastic, concrete, slate, tile, glass.

What do learners need to learn?

The different types of cladding systems used in masonry structures their purpose (thermal insulation, weather resistance, improved appearance) application (curtain wall, sandwich panels, rainscreen, patent glazing) and installation (attached to primary structure).

1.28 Basic principles of cavity ties and ancillary brick support systems

Range:

Principles - structural stability to a cavity wall, ancillary, joining new brickwork to existing masonry.

What do learners need to learn?

The basic principles of cavity ties and ancillary brick support systems. Types of cavity ties (type 1 and 2) and their application depending on general purpose (type 1 used in domestic and small commercial buildings or type 2 heavy ties suitable for most buildings).

Skills

MC1
MC2

Maths

1.29 Application of maths

Range:

Type of application - areas, volumes, linear, circumference (perimeter), U values, Pythagoras Theorem.

Calculations - number of bricks per Liner Metre, number of bricks per m², volume of excavation M3, and volume of concrete required M3, surface area of columns/Piers, U values to a cavity wall, determine liner measurements, calculating waste, costing projects including VAT.

What do learners need to learn?

The application of maths and types of building calculations used in construction.

Skills

MC1
MC3
MC4

1.30 Application of geometry for setting out and verification

Range:

Application - setting out a range arches, calculations for concrete (area and volumes), obtuse and acute brickwork, right angled quoins, Pythagoras Theorem, curved walls on plan, arch geometry, calculations for volume and for area methods for setting out and building curved brickwork, establishing square by measurement (3-4-5).

What do learners need to learn?

The application of geometry for setting out including setting out semi-circular segmental and gothic arches, horizontal radial work using a template and a trammel. Finding an arch centre. The geometrical processes used to set out a range of arch shapes. The use of compass or dividers to create a range of angles for setting out brickwork.

Skills

MC1
MC4

1.31 **Application** of ratios to bricklaying tasks

Range:

Application - mortar mixes for low and high strength brickwork, mortar mix ratios for pointing new and existing brick/Block work.

What do learners need to learn?

The application of ratios used for mixing and preparing mortar for laying bricks and blocks and pointing and jointing mortar (for instance, chimneys 1:5 cement to sand, bricklaying 1:4 cement to sand, retaining walls 1:3 cement to sand).

Skills

MC1
MC3
MC4

Specific knowledge criteria for performance outcomes

Prepare for the construction of complex masonry structures (Outcome 2)

Business/commercial

1.32 **Costs** associated with the production, assembly and installation of masonry products and components

Range:

Costs - labour, materials, consumables/overheads, wastage, price per M2 of both brick and block work, pricing brickwork per liner metre.

What do learners need to learn?

The costs associated in the construction of complex masonry structures including the price of brickwork for cavity walling, detailed panels, raking cuts and building details at gable end and price work for different arch designs, how to use a centre line calculation for taking off and calculations for volumes for trenches and for spoil cartaway.

Skills

MC9

Outcome 2 - Prepare for the construction of complex masonry structures

Performance Criteria

2.1 Identify **information** requirements from a client brief

Range:

Information - size, location, design, function, budget, specification.

What do learners need to learn?

How to select and extract information required from a brief to meet the requirements of any given task from a variety of reliable sources. Consideration must be given to accuracy, currency and source of information.

Skills

EC5
EC6

2.2 Use **questioning techniques** to obtain and clarify information required

Range:

Questioning techniques - open and closed, probing, leading, funnel.

What do learners need to learn?

Applying the appropriate types of questioning to gain information, response or outcome required to manage stakeholder expectations (client/customer/contractor/supplier/employee/ employer) Whether in person or remotely via telephone, online video forums, email or other written form.

Closed – used when making a decision
Open – used when trying to get opinions
Probing – used when trying to get information that isn't forthcoming or to seek full understanding of a situation
Leading – used to gain influence and achieve desired outcome
Funnel – used when trying to get details about a situation

Skills

EC1
EC2
EC4
EC5
EC6

2.3 Calculate volume, area and linear measurements including areas for circles and their circumference

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
How to calculate areas of both brick and block face work, linear measurements of brick/block work and areas of door and window openings. Including an allowance for waste. Calculations for volumes of concrete and spoil including an allowance for bulking or swelling.	MC1 MC2 MC3 MC4

2.4 Measure: length, height and area

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
How to measure the lengths and height and calculate the area of face brick/block work/stone and local materials for complex masonry structures (to include common sizes measured by depth x height x length). Reviewing measurements against manufacturer's specification to support calculations.	MC1 MC2
The inter-relationship of materials, i.e. brick, block/stone and insulation, as well as cill height and head height.	

2.5 Interpret scaled drawings

Range:

Interpret - dimensional references, architectural features, position of door and window openings, roof configuration, establishing corner positions.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
How to interpret scaled drawings in elevation plan and section on orthographic projections and in isometric view.	MC5 MC7

2.6 **Inspect** tools and equipment and materials for defects

Range:

Inspect - visual inspection, PAT testing, calibration, routine checks for accuracy.

What do learners need to learn?

How to inspect and maintain the bricklayers hand tools, equipment and materials.
Burring on chisels and bolsters, wedges in hammers. PPE is fit for purpose.

2.7 Mark out measurements for **gauging** and setting out **bonding**

Range:

Gauge – check the height of course.

Level – make sure the course is level.

Plumb – make sure wall is vertical.

What do learners need to learn?

Use of measurements to mark out gauges and setting out bonds including checking spirit levels (using laser level or dumpy level) and building squares for accuracy (90).
The calculations for setting out bonds and the frequency the brickwork should be checked.

Skills

MC1
MC2

2.8 **Inspect** equipment and tools for accuracy

Range:

Inspect - faults, calibration, serviceable.

What do learners need to learn?

Inspection of equipment and tools in line with standard practice to ensure they are serviceable and fully operational including, correctly calibrated and set for accuracy/squareness.

2.9 Select materials and resources required to enable **setting out**

Range:

Setting out - profiles, builders square, tape measures, optical level, laser level.

What do learners need to learn?

How to identify correct tools and equipment to set out masonry below and above ground level.

2.10 Estimate **resource** requirements

Range:

Resource - bricks, blocks, mortar, insulation, DPC, tie Wires, concrete, labour, plant, wastage. Make costing using modern methods of construction e.g. timber frames. Waste removal.

What do learners need to learn?

How to take measurements and apply building calculations to calculate and estimate resources require. Including calculating materials (amount required by item based on measurement including wastage) labour (complexity of projects, timeframe, worker experience and plant availability) including any miscellaneous costs (insurance, bank charges, vehicles expenses) and contingency allowances (project slippage, sickness etc.). Creating a bill of quantities to capture resource and costing, depending on the brief/project requirements.

Skills

MC9
MC2

2.11 Follow a method statement and risk assessment.

What do learners need to learn?

To interpret or produce a method statement including process, steps and resources required to carry out the tasks safely without risks to health.

Create or follow instructions from a method statement and complete risk assessments. Prepare a toolbox talk to disseminate the findings of the completion of risk assessments and method statements.

Skills

EC1
EC2
EC3
EC4
EC5

Outcome 3 - Construct complex masonry structures

Performance Criteria

3.1 Present **information** on constructed masonry to stakeholders.

Range:

Information - working drawings, Building Information Modelling (BIM), building regulations.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
How to present using communication technology the design, construction methods and finished construction including multisensory, visual, audio, text, digital and diagrammatical.	EC1 EC2 EC3 EC4 EC6

3.2 Operate tools and equipment.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
How to use hand tools to lay and cut materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and according to health and safety instructions.	EC5

3.3 **Mix** mortar to application requirements

Range:

Mix - mortar/concrete by hand, Use of 110v mortar mixer what about the option of diesel mixer.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Methods used for gauging and mixing mortar accurately including how to batch by weight and volume and the types of mortar mix and ratio required (1:4, 1:6) for a range of applications (external brickwork, chimney).	MC1 MC2 MC3

3.4 Protect integrity and quality of **materials** during handling and storing

Range:**Materials** - bricks, blocks, mortar.**What do learners need to learn?**

The correct handling, storage, transportation and protection of bricklaying materials, including adhering to safe working practices. Preserved in good order (secure, static and weatherproof). To include use pallets, crates, boxes, correct stack techniques, appropriate wrapping and correct labelling of secured products. Pre and post inspection and package Considerations to include assembly order review, health and safety specifications for loading, and any special loading/transportation requirements by customer/transport operator prior to and during transportation. Types of transportation used to include light goods vehicle, larger vehicles, lorries or containers for boats.

Skills

EC5

3.5 **Maintain** plumb, line, level and axial deviation.

Range:**Maintain** - gauge, level, plumb, ranging, square.**What do learners need to learn?**

Maintaining accuracy in masonry including plumb, level gauge and range including use of plumb lines, spirit levels, lines and pins, string lines and water tube.

Skills

MC1

3.6 Construct **complex masonry structures**

Range:

Complex masonry structures - brick arches, horizontal and vertical radial brickwork, battered brickwork, decorative courses and panels, obtuse and acute quoins.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Types of complex masonry structures including arches, curved brickwork, angle quoins and how they are constructed, including the use of templates to aid construction.	MC1 MC2 MC3 MC4
Arches to include set out, temporary support (props, wedges) procedure (cut and construct) and safe removal of supports curved brickwork to include set out, templates, curved on plane, construct.	
Obtuse and acute quoins to include set out (special bricks to form angles), templates, cut components and set out and construct.	

3.7 Produce templates

Range:

Templates- segmental, semi-circle, obtuse, acute, axed bricks.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Produce templates for geometrical setting out of arches and angled brickwork.	MC1 MC4

3.8 Shape components for obtuse and acute quoins

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Use of special bricks and or methods with cut bricks and bonding arrangements required to form obtuse and acute angles.	MC1 MC4

3.9 **Insert** obtuse and acute quoins into masonry structures

Range:

Insert – English or Flemish Bond with a squint quoin.

What do learners need to learn?

Insert obtuse and acute quoins into masonry structures using a variety of patterns
How to build solid walls with obtuse and acute angles. How to bond quoins.

Skills

MC1
MC2

3.10 **Set** out decorative **brickwork features**.

Range:

Decorative brickwork features - block bonded/rusticated quoins, decorate panels, Victorian weave, decorate string courses, herringbone panels, basket weave panels, corbelling.

What do learners need to learn?

Setting out and constructing decorative brickwork including panels.

3.11 Shape masonry products to application requirements

What do learners need to learn?

Shape bricks for radial and battered brickwork and obtuse and acute angled quoins and forming arch bricks or voussoirs.

3.12 Advanced **bonding patterns**

Range:

Bonding patterns - English and Flemish garden wall, Dutch, Monk. Header bond.

What do learners need to learn?

How to set out and construct advanced/complex bonding patterns.

3.13 **Maintain** cavity widths, straight and returns and apply joints to finished masonry structures

Range:

Maintain - quoins, junctions, pointing, jointing.

What do learners need to learn?

How to maintain/build masonry structures (cavity walls) including lengths, widths (typically 100mm – 150mm), returns and heights depending on their use (as insulation, full fill, partial fill, blown etc.) and the corresponding U values.

Skills

MC1
MC2
MC3

3.14 Classify and organise waste for disposal

What do learners need to learn?

Classify waste relating to bricklaying requirements (i.e. concrete, brick, tiles and ceramics) Organise waste for safe including the use of segregated skips.

Skills

EC5

Outcome 4 - Renovate masonry structures

Performance Criteria

4.1 Assess suitability of information

Range:

Information - planning regulations, HSE Website, building regulations, The Heritage Directory, manufacturer's instructions and client requirements.

What do learners need to learn?

How to source relevant information contribute to renovation of masonry structures (researching for latest versions from manufacturer's instructions). Using trade verified web-based sources (using government, trade regulation and legislation sites). Consequence of poor information (incorrect standards and tolerance applied, health and safety affected, legal issues). Ensuring personal safety in trade open forums and networking groups (privacy settings, passwords protected, personal information retained) and ensuring the information gathered across sources is verified through appropriate channels.

Skills

EC5
DC1
DC5

4.2 Inspect masonry structures for **damage**

Range:

Damage - movement cracks, structural damage, water penetration, wind damage to gable end.

What do learners need to learn?

Identify damage to masonry - visual inspection (bulges, sways, leaning, cracks, broken components, sagging), materials testing (use of equipment) and establish the causes of the damage.

4.3 Remove **damaged materials**

Range:

Damaged materials - brick, block, wall ties, damp proof course (horizontal and vertically), lintels, stonework, range. timber (dry rot), asbestos.

What do learners need to learn?

Techniques to remove damaged materials safely without causing further damage to the structure (hammer and chisel, sand grit and blats, wire brush) including treatments for infected areas and remaining materials, fungicides and safe use of needles and shoring in removing existing structures.

4.4 **Maintain** integrity of masonry structure

Range:

Maintain - repointing, replacing loose brickwork.

What do learners need to learn?

Repointing or jointing masonry, matching mortar, cutting and matching for appearance and effective repair. Calculations in maintenance of masonry structures including materials, components and fixtures.

Skills

MC1
MC2
MC3

4.5 Match **masonry** to the period of construction

Range:

Masonry - imperial bricks, stonework and mortars.

What do learners need to learn?

How to match masonry according to different periods of construction, including heights, colour and positions of resources when building new to old. Importance of selecting correct mortars for use with different brick types.

Skills

EC5

4.6 **Blend** new masonry products and materials to existing building fabric.

Range:

Blend - colour/texture match/stain.

What do learners need to learn?

How to select and blend new brickwork to older existing brickwork, bonding into existing fabric (one brick, two brick blend). Checks for face, height length and bed depths and technical standards. To include heritage blend requirements.

Skills

MC1

4.7 Insert **supports** to maintain the structural integrity following refurbishment

Range:

Supports - adjustable steel props, strong boys, isolated brick/block piers.

What do learners need to learn?

How to provide temporary supports when carrying out repairs to masonry to support loads/form work during construction including floors walls and ceilings, underpinning for repair and during installations of lintels or RSJs and calculating used to ensure them accuracy.

Skills

MC1

Guidance for delivery

Opportunities for visits/engagement with local industry, employers and manufacturers should be provided throughout the delivery

Considerations for innovative methods of delivery to include blended learning and other forms of technology,

Innovative methods of delivery could include:

- Presentation/demonstration – delivery of topics using SmartScreen presentation (PowerPoint example available) lecture/discussions/oral Q&A enthusing and engaging learners through different teaching methods and resources
- Reinforcement of candidate learning – revisit learning, group discussions, peer support, sample questions

Formative assessment – oral Q&A, SmartScreen worksheets (samples available) observation of measuring activities

- Practical - Use of pre-set formative assessments carry out tasks and record on standardised form.
- Knowledge – pre-set paper-based activity to confirm skills and understanding. Learners can use variety of methods to carry out activities, calculators, apps, office IT

Ways of ensuring content is delivered in line with current, up to date industry practice

- Centres will need to ensure a realistic representation of bricklaying tasks are available
- Centres will need to provide the appropriate tools, equipment and test instrumentation for demonstration and practical training purposes
- The provision must represent the type of tools and equipment currently available in the UK bricklaying industry Current and emerging bricklaying technology should be included in delivery where possible

Suggested learning resources

Books

- City and Guilds Bricklaying textbooks levels 1, 2, and 3 - Clayton Rudman and Tony Tucker, Mike Jones
- Brickwork and Bricklaying – Jon Collinson
- Bricklaying Level 3 Diploma – Leeds College of Building – Oxford University Press Modern

Websites

- HSE - www.hse.gov.uk
- Building Regulations - www.gov.uk/building-regulations-approval
- English Heritage - www.english-heritage.org.uk
- The Brick Development Association BDA - www.brick.org
- FairTrades - www.fairtrades.co.uk
- Stone Federation GB - www.stone-federationgb.org.uk
- Association of Brickwork Contractors - www.aofbc.co.uk

Scheme of Assessment – Bricklaying

The Bricklaying occupational specialism is assessed by one practical assignment. The duration of the assessment is 24 hours. Learners will be assessed against the following assessment themes:

- Health and safety
- Design and planning
- Presentation
- Construct masonry structures
- Repair masonry structures

By completing the following tasks:

Task	Typical Knowledge and skill
Task 1 – Prepare and plan for the production and repair of complex masonry structures	<p>Displays a breadth of knowledge and practical application that enables them to carry out and plan the design of complex decorative brickwork.</p> <p>Candidates will need to produce a drawing to scale that clearly show the proposed work. Candidates will demonstrate a range of methods to produce working drawings Displays a breadth of knowledge and practical skills that enables them to carry out and plan for the completion of the work.</p> <p>Candidates will need to produce documents to industry standards that clearly state how they will carry out the installation.</p> <p>Knowledge and skills demonstrated will include design, measurement and calculations of quantities, production of a method statement and risk assessment, and the design and presentation of scale drawings.</p>
Task 2 Construct complex masonry structures	<p>Displays a breadth of knowledge and skills to construct complex masonry structures to specification successfully.</p> <p>The task is completed in a clear and logical sequence. Works in a safe manner. Providing protection for the area to ensure the safety of the general public and those carrying out the work</p> <p>Shows a systematic approach to the work and an awareness of safe and environmentally friendly methods of waste disposal.</p>

Task 3 – Renovate and repair masonry structures

Applies knowledge and skills in identifying, preparing and then rectifying common faults in a structure.

Completes the renovation/repair work to prescribed standards with due consideration to matching the finish with existing structure.

Shows a systematic approach to the work and an awareness of safe and environmentally friendly methods of waste disposal.

The information provided in the following tables demonstrates to approved providers the weightings of each performance outcome and how each performance outcome is assessed.

Performance Outcome and weighting (%)	High level tasks <i>Provide specific instructions for the candidates to provide evidence for and are the same for every version of the assessment</i>	Assessment Theme	Typical evidence
PO2 Prepare and plan for the construction of complex masonry structures (27%)	T1, T2 and T3	Health and Safety Design and planning	Risk assessments, PPE, safe working practice Method statements, scaled drawings, measurements, material/ tools lists, design of tasks
PO3 Construct complex masonry structures (57%)	T1	Presentation	Presents/communicates plan/design to stakeholder/correct terminology used.
	T2	Construct complex masonry	Preparation, use of tools, techniques, cutting, shaping and overall finish and appearance Set out and measurements joint sizes and panel components. Accuracy of plumb level and gauge of structures Secure bond and overall appearance. Accuracy of joint finish and overall appearance. Safe, efficient, and correct disposal of waste and general cleanliness of work area
PO4 Renovate masonry structures	T3	Repair of masonry structures	Maintain, match, blend, insert, use of tools inspection correct removal use of tools

Level:	3
GLH:	600
Assessment method:	Practical assignment

What is this specialism about?

The purpose of this specialism is for learners to know and undertake carpentry and joinery work. Learners will have the opportunity to plan, perform and evaluate their work whilst utilising a range of materials, methods and techniques

Carpentry and joinery are trades involving the use of timber in the building industry, from erecting timber frame, rooves and hanging doors through to making doors, windows, and stairs. This specialism will introduce the variety of timber and materials available to a carpenter and joiner and how these are cut, jointed and fixed to construct a variety of products. Learners will be introduced to safe working practices whilst carrying out carpentry and joinery work.

Learners will develop their knowledge and understanding of, and skills in:

- Knowledge of carpentry work undertaken
- Knowledge of joinery work undertaken
- Skills to plan carpentry and joinery work
- Skills to set out, mark out, cut and fix timber components to carry out structural and first fix carpentry
- Skills to mark out, cut, fit and fix timber components to carry out second fix carpentry
- Skills to set out, mark out, produce, assemble, and finish joinery products.

Learners may be introduced to this specialism by asking themselves questions such as:

- What skills do I need to be a successful carpenter/joiner?
- What kind of tasks does a carpenter and joiner perform?
- What tools, equipment and materials do carpenter and joiners use as part of their role?

Underpinning knowledge outcomes

On completion of this specialism, learners will understand:

1. Carpentry and joinery knowledge criteria

Performance outcomes

On completion of this specialism, learners will be able to:

2. Prepare for the production of complex timber-based building products and structures
3. Produce complex timber-based components
4. Assemble complex timber-based products
5. Install complex timber-based products into complex structures

Completion of this specialism will give learners the opportunity to develop their maths, English and digital skills.

Specialism content

Outcome 1

Common knowledge criteria

Health and safety

1.1 Implications of legislation

Range:

Legislation and guidance - The Health and Safety at Work Act (HASAWA), Construction Design Management, (CDM) regulations, Reporting injuries, diseases and dangerous occurrences act (RIDDOR), Control of substances hazardous to health (COSHH), Provision and use of Work Equipment Regulations (PUWER), Manual Handling Regulations, Personal protective equipment (PPE) at work regulations, Respiratory protective equipment (RPE) regulations Work at Height regulations, Control of Noise at work regulations, Control of vibration at work regulations, Electricity at work regulations, Lifting operations and lifting equipment regulations (LOLER), Hazardous waste regulations, Approved code of practice (ACOP), HSE information including HSE Woodwork Information Sheets, BWF information.

What do learners need to learn?

The role of legislation and regulations in the production and installation of timber-based products including the role of the Health and Safety Executive (HSE). How current legislation impacts employer, employee and Carpentry and Joinery projects within a domestic and commercial setting.

The implications of not adhering to the legislation on the public, client, business and employers including enforcements, penalties, and imprisonment.

Skills

EC5

1.2 The **identification of hazards and risks** and the development of **safe systems of work**

Range:

Hazards and risks - slips, trips and falls; cuts and lacerations, inhalation, sharp edges; plant and equipment; moving parts; working with adhesives; working at height; hazardous materials; power tools, electrocution.

Safe systems of work - identification of workplace hazards, risk assessments, method statements, employer and employee responsibilities, first aid requirements, accident reporting procedures, Sources of information.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
The types of hazards and risks associated with carpentry and joinery activities, working at height, in trenches, in workshops, on site. Methods used to identify hazards (walk around site, observing how task are preformed, assessing tools, equipment) and the precautions taken through the adoption of safe systems to minimise them.	EC5

Information

1.3 Types of **information** and how to obtain **relevant information** from building regulations and industry standards

Range:

Types - program of work, drawings (includes use of scales and drawing conventions), specifications, schedules, risk assessments, method statements, building regulations, data sheets, manufacturer's information.

Relevant Information - Planningportal.co.uk, gov.uk, HSE Website, building regulations, planning regulations.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
How to obtain and interpret relevant information using a range of methods, including researching the internet, manufacturer's instructions, other primary and secondary sources, including seeking direct information from relevant parties and liaising with manufacturers, professionals, colleagues.	EC5 DC1 DC5
Personal safety in trade open forums and networking groups (privacy setting, passwords protected, personal information retained) and ensuring the information gathered across sources is verified through appropriate channels.	

Tools and Equipment

1.4 Hand tools and equipment

Range:

Access equipment - ladders (pole, extension, roof, telescopic, step), podium, hop-up, scaffolds (independent, putlog, tower, proprietary, trestle).

Measuring equipment – tape measures, rules, digital.

Setting out and marking out - squares (steel, try, box, combination, mitre), drawing equipment (30/60 degree and 45 degree set squares, tee square, protractor, flexicurve, french curves, compass), sliding bevel, dividers/scribing compass, trammel heads and beam, gauges (combination, marking, mortice, cutting) straight edge.

Cutting - saws (hand, rip, hand/crosscut, floorboard, panel, tenon, pull, dovetail, pad, coping, hack), handpoint, chisels (bevel edged, mortice, firmer, paring, butt), planes (try, jack, smoothing, block, shoulder, rebate, plough, bullnose, hand router).

Shaping - spokeshaves (convex and flat), compass plane, scratch stock.

Assembly/fixing - sash cramp (T-bar and flat), G cramp, F cramp, mitre cramps, strap cramps, bench bearers, squaring rod, winding sticks, mallet (rubber and timber), hammer (claw, cross pein/Warrington, pin), punches, ancillary items such as (pincers, pliers, sanding blocks, scrapers, dogs, string line, chalk line,), levelling and plumbing tools (spirit levels, laser levels, plumb/centre-bob, scribing block) screwdrivers, adhesive applicators.

What do learners need to learn?

Types of hand tools and equipment used for access, measuring, marking out, cutting, shaping and assembling/finishing/fixing in carpentry and joinery tasks and their characteristics, purpose and suitability for tasks.

For example, the handsaw, consists of a handle and a metal blade with teeth of various shapes, profiles and sizes intended for cutting timber with or across the grain, and other materials.

Operated by hand movement and used to cut materials, including straight, angled and curved cuts.

1.5 Portable power tools

Range:

Portable power tools - power sources, (240V/110V, battery, gas, ballistic cartridge, pneumatic), cutting tools and associated tooling, chopsaw, circular saw (handheld and table), power planer, band saw (handheld), timber frame morticer.

Jointing/fixing tools - Drills, (Keyed, keyless, SDS, clutch settings, rotary, rotary percussion, percussion) including associated tooling, Biscuit jointer, Dowel and loose tenon jointers, nailers (framer and finishing), ballistic fixing tools, Impact/drill driver (including tooling).

Finishing tools - belt sander, orbital sander (including associated abrasive types and grades).

What do learners need to learn?

Types of portable power tools in carpentry and joinery used for cutting, shaping, jointing/fixing and finishing and their characteristics, purpose and suitability for the task.

For example, a power planer is used for planing sawn timber, producing small rebates. Parts of a planer include the bed, adjustment, waste ejection port, cutter block, motor, tooling.

1.6 Types of fixed machinery

Range:

Cutting - saws (dimensioning, rip, wall, crosscut/radial arm, narrow band and resaw) including tooling.

Jointing - hollow chisel morticer, including tooling, single ended tenoner including tooling, dovetail machine.

Shaping profiling and finishing - planers (surface, thicknesser, combination, multi head planer-moulders), spindle moulder including tooling, CNC router, table router including tooling, sanders (drum, bobbin, belt, disk).

What do learners need to learn?

Types of fixed machinery used for cutting, jointing and shaping/profiling/finishing and their characteristics, purpose and suitability for tasks and their power sources Power sources (three phase 415V, single phase 240V/110V, pneumatic).

To include setting up machines, maintenance and changing of tooling as required.

Parts of each machine, safety features such as guards, false fences, power feeds and braking. Safety aids used to protect the user and improve finish/performance. Extraction methods and maintenance of extraction systems.

1.7 Operation and handling requirements of tools and equipment

Range:

Operation and handling - accuracy, selection/suitability, common defects, cleanliness, PPE, trained, competent.

What do learners need to learn?

Requirements when operating and handling tools and equipment. Including, safe handling and safe working methods, safe storage minimising potential for damage and risk of theft (for electrical tools - damaged power cable, or tooling). It is checked for suitability (voltage, is it of sufficient power to carry out the work required). Appropriate PPE is selected and checked and after use safely stored.

Skills

EC5

1.8 Importance of maintenance and how to maintain tools and equipment

Range:

Maintenance - maintenance scheduling, sharpening, cleaning, lubrication, storage methods, common faults, efficiency/lifespan, quality of finished product.

What do learners need to learn?

Maintaining tools and equipment, its importance, and the consequences of not keeping up regular maintenance (breakdown, increased force required, poor finish, and reduced safety). For example, a power planer will be maintained by changing the blades/knives when they become dull, as dull blades will burn or otherwise produce a poor finish.

Skills

EC5

Wood science

1.9 Classification and types of timber

Range:

Classification and types - hardwood (oak, beech, ash, mahogany substitutes, teak substitutes, poplar), softwood (whitewood/spruce, European redwood, cedar).

Properties - colour/appearance, workability including ability to take a finish, grade/class, durability, density.

Processing - conversion methods (through and through, quarter sawn, tangential, boxed heart), seasoning (air, kiln), engineered (finger jointed, laminated), Treatments (acetylated, pressure treated/vac-vac, dipped, brushed and sprayed).

What do learners need to learn?

Skills

Classification and types of timber used in construction, their properties, and how they are processed. Including comparison of materials and processing methods and identifying the most suitable timber for any given purpose according to cost, durability, weight, appearance, workability, applied finish/preservative and end use.

For example, hardwood such as oak, which is a broad-leaved deciduous tree. It is dense and very durable. As the timber is dense, it does not require preservative treatment before use outside. It does not take paint finish very well but will polish to a very smooth finish. Timber has enhanced appearance when quarter sawn showing the medullary rays.

1.10 Natural, conversion and seasoning **defects** and those arising from time, use, neglect, and the elements

Range:

Natural Defects - shakes (ring, cup, upset/thunder, star and heart), knots (dead, live, face, edge and arris), sap/resin pockets, blue stain.

Conversion defects - waney edge, sloping grain.

Seasoning defects - collapse, case hardening, cupping, springing, bowing, twisting, end checking/splits, honeycombing.

Time use and neglect - UV damage, weathering, rot (dry, wet), insect attack, wear and tear.

What do learners need to learn?

Skills

Types of defects and their causes and the implication to the production and installation of timber-based components and. Including how defects can be minimised (removed or positioned appropriately on components to improve strength or appearance).

1.11 Types of man-made carpentry and joinery related **panel products**

Range:

Panel products - plywood, chipboard, fibreboard (L M and H), oriented strand board (OSB), door blanks, plasterboard, cement fibre board.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Types of manufactured carpentry and joinery related panel products, their characteristics, and their suitability for different purposes in construction. Including durability, stability, acoustic properties, and resistance to fire and moisture, weight, appearance, workability, stability, acoustic properties, resistance to fire and moisture, ability to take a finish and end use.	

1.12 Formats and stock **sizes** of timber-based products

Range:

Formats and sizes - commercially available timber sizes, commercially available sheet sizes.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Types of formats (board and sheet) and stock sizes of timber-based products and their suitability for different functions in construction. Common stock sizes for softwood (sawn and finished/PAR/PSE/CLS) standard thicknesses of hardwood boards, standard sheet sizes and thicknesses, metric sizes and imperial equivalents. Including: Standard timber sizes in metric or imperial equivalents, e.g. 50mm is 2 inches, and a 2440mm x 1220mm. Sheet of plywood is 8 feet by 4 feet. Sheet materials are also twice as long as they are wide. Add 6mm to sawn sizes from finished size (to allow for planing) for example, 50mm x 25mm sawn will give 44mm x 19mm finished size.	MC2 MC3

1.13 Sustainable timber

Range:

Sustainable timber- supply chain, licensing (FSC and PEFC), identification, waste management (reduce recycle and reuse).

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Sustainable timber, the supply chain and licensing (FSC certified etc.), the implications of use (reducing environmental impact in production, by products, chemicals and reducing emissions) and how to minimise waste (accuracy in calculations and quantities, repair, restore, adapt, recycled/reclaimed).	EC5 MC2

Fixings and ironmongery

1.14 Types of fixings and Ironmongery

Range:

Fixings – screws nails, pins bolts, cavity and solid wall fixings, chemical, star dowels, timber dowels, pins, staples.

Ironmongery- hinges, locks, latches, bolts, door furniture, door closers, door selectors, letter plates, window furniture, security ironmongery.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Different types of fixings and ironmongery and their characteristics, material properties, commercially available sizes, design features and suitability for different purposes including correct proportion, load, and compatibility with different wood types. Methods of driving fixings to maximise strength and minimise potential damage (splitting or bruising) Positioning conventions (hinge spacing, spindle height, security viewer position).	EC5

1.15 Types of adhesives

Range:

Types of assembly and finishing materials - Polyvinyl acetate (PVA), Polyurethane (PU), contact, epoxy resin, grab/panel, Resorcinol-formaldehyde (RF), Urea-formaldehyde (UF), Cyanoacrylate (superglue and activator) abrasives (grit grades, grit types, purposes, uses).

What do learners need to learn?

The types of adhesives and their suitability for different types of timber-based products (moisture resistance, gap filling properties, strength, staining and shelf/pot life), components and assembly requirements taking into consideration the open time, curing time, end location, cost, materials being bonded, workability and durability.

Maths

1.16 **Application** of geometry and formulas for the preparation, production, assembly and installation of timber-based components and products

Range:

Application - angles, shapes, points in space on a plane, lines, curves (circular and elliptical), true lengths and shapes; surface developments, calculate quantities (linear, area, volume) and determining (stair details, roof details, dimensions and pitch).

What do learners need to learn?

Application of geometry to the preparation, production, assembly and installation of timber-based components and products. Including determining positions, spacings, centres, angles and arcs. Diameters and radius of arcs, use of Pythagoras, division, multiplication to determine lengths, squareness, spacings of components, Producing geometrical mathematical diagrams. For roofs (development of shapes, determining true lengths and bevels) workshop rods for curved joinery, development of stair strings. Use of ratios - 1:3.1:4, 1:6, 1:7, 1:8 and ratios for adhesives.

Skills

MC1
MC2
MC3
MC4
MC5
MC7
MC8

Specific knowledge criteria for performance outcomes

Prepare for the production of complex timber-based products and structures components (Outcome 2)

Business and Commercial

1.17 **Costs** associated with the production, assembly and installation of timber-based products and components and how they impact on profitability

Range:

Costs - labour, materials, consumables, overheads.

What do learners need to learn?

Costs associated with the production, assembly and installation of timber-based products and components (on site and in workshops) and how they impact on profitability including planning, use of hired equipment, use of materials/wastage, time management, storage and phased delivery. Estimating quantities of materials with added percentage for waste. Calculate cost of total materials required, adding other variables such as labour and VAT.

Skills

MC2
MC9

Produce complex timber-based components (Outcome 3)

Complex shapes

1.18 Types of complex shapes

Range:

Shapes - single curvature, gothic, semi-circular, elliptical, segmental.

What do learners need to learn?

Types of complex shapes and the types of components in which they are used (rails, stiles, sills) and the types of tools used to produce shapes including router, bandsaw and hand tools including spokeshaves etc.

For example, a semicircular headed window will have the centre of the radius halfway along the springing line. The shape could be marked out with a set of trammel heads and beam, and the components shaped from solid, roughed out with a bandsaw then finished on a spindle moulder using a ring fence, bonnet guard, template and jig

Skills

MC4
MC7

1.19 Techniques used to form curved shapes and producing templates.

Range:

Techniques - built up curve, bent wood laminated.

What do learners need to learn?

Techniques used to form curved shapes (blocks of wood joined with adhesive to reduce short grain, laminated strips of timber pulled around a former using adhesive or steaming and bending around a former whilst hot and allowing to cool) and how to produce templates and work holding jigs from drawings.

Skills

MC7

Assemble complex timber - based products and components (Outcome 4)

Complex timber-based products

1.20 Types of timber-based products

Range:

Products - floors, walls, cut hipped roof, trussed gable-end roof, complex and nonstandard doors, panelling/cladding, veneers, windows with opening lights, shaped door and hatch linings, staircases with turns, structural carcassing, accessible encasements, partitions with openings, carcasses/units, products with single curvature features.

What do learners need to learn?

Types of timber-based products and their constituent timber-based components and function. How each of these products are assembled, what adjustments are required prior to final assembly, order of assembly and required resources.

Assembly techniques

1.21 Jointing methods

Range:

Methods - splicing, curved to curved, straight to curved.

What do learners need to learn?

Types of jointing methods and how they are achieved. Structural principles behind wood joints, shoulders, cheeks, haunches, wedges, draw dowels. Through and blind joints. Maximising joint strength. Allowance made for trimming of finished joinery.

Skills

MC3

1.22 Types of Jointing.

Range:

Types of jointing - bridle, mortice and tenon, dovetail, butt, mitre, heading, housing, birdsmouth and scribe

What do learners need to learn?

Types of jointing (framing, lengthening and widening) and their suitability for different products, environments and purposes. Joint proportions (2/3 tenon, 1/3 haunch on single tenon at top of door).

For instance, mortice and tenon joints can take many forms for various purposes, bare faced double tenon for a stair (string to newel) twin tenon (middle rail to stile where a mortice lock could weaken the joint) drawbored joints where it is difficult to cramp the work together.

Skills

MC3

1.23 Types of transportation **protection**.

Range:

Protection – waterproof membrane, bubble wraps, shielding bags, covered totes, safe cart covers, foam padding

What do learners need to learn?

Types of transportation protection and transportation techniques, storage and handling.

How finished products are handled carefully to avoid damage and covered in the areas that are prone to damage.

Install complex timber-based products into complex structures (Outcome 5)

Building Technology

1.24 How the type of structure of a building affects the installation task

What do learners need to learn?

The type of structure (shell, frame and solid) of a building and the different methods/materials used to install timber-based products. For example, fixings will be different depending on the structure (a solid structure will require heavy duty fixings). Consideration of tools and techniques used to limit damage to the original structure (correct fixings, drill bits, drill speed).

1.25 How the structure of building **components** affects the installation task including:

Range:

Roofs:

Different types of roofs - single, double, flat

Shapes of roofs - flat, lean to, hipped end, gabled, valley

Different types of roof coverings - tiles, slates, membrane

Different types of roofing components - rafters, wall plate, ridge, binders/collars/ceiling joist purlin,

Roof finishing's - eaves and verge finishing's, guttering and fascia's

Roof flashings - roof lights, chimneys

Openings:

Different types of openings - chimneys, stairwells, door, window.

Different types of windows - bay, sliding sash, dormer, Casement, storm proof /high performance

Carcasses:

Different types of carcasses - kitchen, wardrobes

Types of structural carcassing - floors, roof, hips and valleys

Doors:

Different types of doors - fire, composite, flush, panelled, glazed LB, FLB

Stairs:

Different types of stairs - cut string, open riser, closed string, stair with turns

Stair components - newel, string, tread nosing, riser, bullnose step, handrail, spindles, infills, carriage

Partitions:

Different types of partition - wood, metal, partition coverings, different types of plasterboard, plywood and cladding

What do learners need to learn?

How the structure of building components affects the installation task

For example, when fitting a stair into an opening, consideration must be given to access (will the stair come into the building) and the stair well (access above and associated safety arrangements).

Installation

1.26 Methods of **fixing**

Range:

Fixing - counter bored and pelleted, concealed brackets, fixing straps, anchor bolts, screws and plugs, expanding foam, grab adhesives, nails and pins, solid wall and cavity wall fixings cams and studs.

What do learners need to learn?

Methods of fixing and their suitability for different products, structures and purposes.

For instance, when fitting hardwood door linings, which will have a clear finish, screws and pellets will be used to conceal the fixings. The screws may be used in conjunction with plastic plugs if being fixed into masonry.

1.27 How to deal with unexpected **situations**

Range:

Situations - out of square buildings, uneven surfaces.

What do learners need to learn?

How to deal with unexpected situations (compensation, adjustment or making good) and the techniques used (levelling, scribing).

For example, if a wood moulding such as an architrave is to be fixed up to an uneven surface then it would be scribed using a scribing block and pencil or scribing tool.

Skills

MC1

Outcome 2 - Prepare for the production of complex timber-based building products and structures

Performance Criteria

Information

2.1 Identify information **requirements** from a brief

Range:

Requirements - size, shape, function, budget, timeframes, scale of project, materials, location, stakeholder(s) requirements.

What do learners need to learn?

How to select and extract the correct information required from a brief to meet the requirements of any given task. For instance, using a job sheet to determine details of a joinery product including customer, job number, design, specifications, and time allowed.

Skills

EC5

2.2 Interpret **drawings, specifications and schedules**.

Range:

Drawings - location, position, range, assembly, detailed. setting out rods.

Specifications - quantities, quality of work/materials, tolerances, finish.

Schedules - prescribed requirements/components.

What do learners need to learn?

How to interpret the types of information required to meet the requirements of any given task. Using the information to determine measurements, location and position task sequence, select required materials, calculate quantities of materials, determine types of finishes and tolerances allowed.

Skills

EC5
MC1
MC7

2.3 Use **questioning techniques** to obtain and clarify information required

Range:

Questioning techniques - open, closed, probing, leading and funnel.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Applying the appropriate types of questioning to gain information, response or outcome required to manage stakeholder expectations (client/customer/contractor/supplier/employee/ employer). Whether in person or remotely via telephone, online video forums, email or other written form.	EC3 EC5
Closed: used when making a decision	
Open: used when trying to get opinions	
Probing: used when trying to get information that is not forthcoming or to seek full understanding of a situation	
Leading: used to gain influence and achieve desired outcome	
Funnel: used when trying to get details about a situation	

2.4 **Calculate** lengths and angles required to meet specification

Range:

Calculate - lengths from drawings/plans using scales, lengths and angles using mathematical and geometrical methods, use of traditional methods (traditional measuring equipment), use of modern methods (digital measure, construction calculators).

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
How to calculate lengths and angles (90-degree corners, bisecting angles etc.) using relevant equipment (tape measure, construction calculators), information (drawings, scaled plans) and mathematical /geometrical methods (Pythagorean theorem) for any given task.	MC1 MC3 MC4 MC7

2.5 Measure length and calculate area and volume

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
How to measure length (including millimetres and metres, measuring equipment) and calculate linear area (length x width) and volumes (length x width x depth) for the production of complex timber-based building products and structures.	MC1 MC3 MC4 MC7
Use of Pythagoras theorem to calculate the true length of a hypotenuse.	

2.6 Produce scaled **drawings** by hand

Range:

Drawing type - orthographic, isometric, workshop rods, scaled (plan elevation and section).

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
How to produce (scaled) drawings using manual drafting methods to a prescribed brief including workshop rod production templates and patterns.	MC1 MC2 MC7
For instance, producing a workshop rod to full scale of a shaped item of joinery, including all required detail such as joint positions and proportions, sectional details, shape of item and checking for any errors as work progresses.	

2.7 Produce **cutting and material** lists

Range:

Cutting lists - Units, windows, doors, stairs, and allowance for waste.

Material lists - Quantities of materials (timber, sheet materials, fixings, ironmongery, metal studs).

What do learners need to learn?
Produce cutting and material lists, informed by drawings, setting out details and specifications.
Cutting list: listing all parts required for a task along with details of thickness, width and length including specification on waste allowance.
Material list: description of and quantities of materials required for task.

2.8 **Inspect** materials.

Range:

Inspect - grade, defects, quantity, quality, missing items, damage/breakages

What do learners need to learn?

How to inspect materials (visual and inventory for correct quantity and quality) before use and report any omissions (missing items) or defects (wind, cracks, shakes, water stains).

Skills

EC5

2.9 **Mark out** measurements on to timber-based products and sheet materials.

Range:

Mark outs - Joinery components from rod - Carpentry components from pattern

What do learners need to learn?

How to mark out materials, tools required (rules, tape, square, gauges) positions of components and joints to meet requirements of job specification and setting out (using patterns where appropriate to make templates).

For instance, using techniques to maximise accuracy such as use of face marks, (face to face) and batch marking out, checking for errors. Use of gauge rods setting out wall plates joists.

Skills

MC1

MC2

2.10 **Inspect** equipment.

Range:

Inspect - faults, accuracy, calibration, serviceable

What do learners need to learn?

Inspection of equipment and tools in line with standard workshop practice to ensure they are serviceable and fully operational including, correctly calibrated and set for accuracy/squareness.

Where necessary adjusting and tightening of equipment (such as crown guard, riving knife, or fence in the case of a circular saw) in line with training and guidance.

2.11 Follow a method statement.

Range:
Backgrounds - splatter dash to concrete, EML to wood/concrete, bonding agents

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
To interpret or produce a method statement including process, steps and resources required to carry out the tasks safely without risks to health. Including the preparation, production installation and assemble details, either in the workshop or onsite.	EC5

Outcome 3 - Produce complex timber-based components

Performance Criteria

3.1 Research **information** required for producing **complex shapes** and **components**

Range:

Information - catalogues, manufacturer's information, drawings, rod details, Building Regulations, legislation materials, risk assessment documentation, method statements, data sheets, cutting/material lists.

Types of complex shapes - single curvature, gothic, semi-circular, elliptical, segmental.

Types of components - rails, stiles, cills.

What do learners need to learn?

Information sources available for producing complex shapes and components to include information for tools required and best techniques for different types of curved shapes and components.

Skills

EC5

3.2 Use **geometry** to determine **complex 3D shapes**

Range:

Geometry - true lengths, bevells, surface development, determining curves (circles, ellipses, radii, centres, springing line).

Complex shapes - handrails with turns (single curvature), conservatory/porch roofs, cut roofs, shaped joinery.

What do learners need to learn?

How to carry out geometrical calculations accurately, to produce complex 3D components such as roof rafters, shaped stair strings and shaped joinery.

Skills

MC1
MC4
MC7

3.3 **Protection** of materials during handling and storing

Range:

Protection - racking systems, use of bearers, preventing distortion and damage, ensuring cleanliness, safe storage, use of correct stacking techniques, protection from weather damage, use of covers and wrappings.

What do learners need to learn?

How to protect the integrity, quality and conditioning of materials during handling and storage including general housekeeping and safety within the workshop.

3.4 Use woodworking **machinery** and **equipment**

Range:

Machinery - planer, narrow bandsaws, saws (circular, band), spindle/industrial/table router, hollow chisel morticers, sanders (bobbin, disk, belt).

What do learners need to learn?

To use woodworking machinery and equipment to produce complex timber-based components safely and according to the manufacturer's instructions. Accurate setting of machine tooling, such as hollow morticer chisel square to fence, with accurate setting of machine for depth of cut and distance of mortice from fence.

Skills

MC1

3.5 **Label** and prepare components

Range:

Label - face marks, edge marks, identification marks (component, profile location and joint location).

What do learners need to learn?

How to label and prepare components with reference to potential imperfections or defects in materials which will be identified through visual inspection. Orientation of the components to minimise defects.

3.6 Use tools including hand and power tools

What do learners need to learn?

How to select and use tools to produce complex timber-based components, work within recognised health and safety guidelines and safe working practices and in line with training/manufactures instructions to produce joints and components.

Skills

EC5

3.7 Create **templates** and work holding jig

Range:

Templates - pattern rafters for roof work, stair templates, radial and elliptically shaped templates for curved work.

What do learners need to learn?

How to create templates (pencil, pen marker or knife guide) and work holding jigs (to hold, guide or feed) for bespoke and curved work when using a moulding machine.

Skills

MC1
MC8

3.8 Produce Test pieces

What do learners need to learn?

How to produce test pieces for complex timber-based components. For instance, using a trial rebate to check dimensions are correct and if the machine requires further adjustment before the full run.

Skills

MC1

3.9 Produce **complex shapes** and their components using a range of **techniques**

Range:

Types of complex shapes - single curvature, gothic, semi-circular, elliptical, segmental and the types of components in which they are used e.g. rails, stiles, and cill.

Techniques - used to form curved shapes (e.g. built up, laminated); produce templates and work holding jigs from drawings; mark out and produce pattern rafters for complex cut roof components (common, hip, valley, crown jack and cripple rafters, purlins), mark out and cut complex roof components using patterns.

What do learners need to learn?

How to produce complex shaped components using a range of techniques and considerations including minimising wastage and following standard site working procedures, safe use and set up.

Skills

MC1

3.10 **Set up, adjust, and operate woodworking machinery** using **work piece support, safety aids** and standard workshop working practice

Range:

Set up and adjust - inspect for damage/faults, change tooling, adjust beds as required, adjust fences and settings, depth of cut.

Wood working machinery - circular saw, narrow band saw, surface planer, thicknesses, profiling machine.

Work piece support - roller table, Independent roller support stand.

Safety aids - push sticks/blocks, Jigs and saddles, standard workshop practice, safe use of equipment, training (only using equipment once trained to do so), minimising wastage, use of jigs and saddles (wedge jig, saddles for angled ripping).

What do learners need to learn?

The correct way to set up machines, then feed materials into woodwork machinery/equipment using work piece support and safety aids adhering to standard workshop working practice.

For instance, changing a cross-cutting blade for a ripping blade on a saw, resetting the riving knife to regulations, checking the guard, and setting the fence before setting timber using a push stick.

Skills

EC5

Outcome 4 - Assemble complex timber-based components

Performance Criteria

4.1 Assess **suitability** of information provided

Range:

Suitability - up to date, accurate, sufficient, and version controlled.

What do learners need to learn?

How to source relevant information (researching for latest versions from manufacturer's instructions) Using trade verified web-based sources (using government, trade regulation and legislation sites). Consequence of poor information (incorrect standards and tolerance applied, health and safety affected, legal issues). Ensuring personal safety in trade open forums and networking groups (privacy settings, passwords protected, personal information retained) and ensuring the information gathered across sources is verified through appropriate channels.

Skills

EC5
DC1
DC3

4.2 Use **tools** and **equipment** to assemble components to form products

Range:

Tools and equipment - cramps (sash, G and F), bench bearers, assembly jigs (step jig, ledged and braced door jig), squaring rods, mallets and hammers (claw/Warrington pin), draw pins, fixings (nails, pins, screws, bolts).

What do learners need to learn?

How to use tools and equipment to assemble components to form products following standard safe workshop working practice. Following a logical sequence having everything to hand before starting and having a prepared area such as bench bearers. Using the correct driving tool (hammer for wedges or nails). Mallet for assembly of components.

4.3 **Join** timber-based components to other non-timber- based components including fixtures and fittings

Range:

Join - Floors, Walls, cut roof (hipped, gable-end), trussed roof, panelling/cladding, windows, with opening lights, door and hatch linings and frames, staircases with turns, structural carcassing, kitchen carcasses, accessible encasements, partitions with openings, products with single curvature features, double and non-standard doors including associated ironmongery.

What do learners need to learn?

How to join and fix timber-based products to non-timber-based components. Fixing securely, using appropriate fixings and adhesives.

Skills

MC7

4.4 Use non-permanent joining **techniques** (dry fit)

Range:

Techniques - Use of cramps, draw pins, temporary fixing in.

What do learners need to learn?

How to use dry fit techniques in line with job specification requirements, check products are assembled correctly before gluing/permanent fixing. Adjusting as required until the dry fit is accurate and meets specification.

Skills

MC1
MC2

4.5 Use **permanent joining techniques**

Range:

Techniques - drilling, pegging/dowelling, scribing, wedging, nailing and screwing, use of adhesives.

What do learners need to learn?

How to assemble complex timber-based products in line with job specification requirements. Assembly following dry fit. Correct methodology and fixings used for permanent jointing/fixing of joints

Skills

MC1

4.6 **Finish** products ready for end-use

Range:

Finish - removing horns, removing arrises, clean up with smoothing plane, sand up to provide a key to take finish, apply basecoat finishes as required.

What do learners need to learn?

How to finish an assembled complex timber product with consideration of standard industry practices and good housekeeping

4.7 **Prepare** assembled timber-based products for transportation

Range:

Prepare - wrapping, boxing, palletising.

What do learners need to learn?

How to prepare the assembled timber-based product ready for dispatch to ensure it is preserved in good order (secure, static and weatherproof). To include use pallets, crates, boxes, correct stack techniques, appropriate wrapping and correct labelling of secured products. Pre and post inspection and package. Considerations to include assembly order review, health and safety specifications for loading, and any special loading/transportation requirements by customer/transport operator prior to and during transportation. Types of transportation used to include light goods vehicle, larger vehicles, lorries, or containers for boats.

Outcome 5 - Install complex timber-based products into complex structures

Performance Criteria

5.1 Assess risks associated with the installation task

Range:

Risks - access, slips, trips, falls, damage to product, risks associated with handling, cutting and the installation of materials.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
How to assess risks when installing complex timber-based products into complex structures (site inspections, consulting risk assessments and method statements).	EC5

5.2 Prioritise and schedule tasks

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
How to plan the task ahead, carrying out the work in a logical, orderly sequence.	EC3 EC5 MC10

5.3 Check compliance with regulations and standards

Range:

Standards - building regulations, drawings, specifications, tolerances.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Where to check compliance with building regulations and standards (HSE website) and when (before, during and upon completion of the installation).	EC5 DC1

5.4 Prepare timber-based products for installation

Range:

Prepare -trim and adjust, cut, plane, sand, finish or repair if required.

What do learners need to learn?

How to prepare timber-based products for installation (windows and doors), measuring the opening/area to be worked on and adjusting the item ready to fit.

Skills

MC1
MC7

5.5 Prepare environments for installation

Range:

Prepare - protection, removing existing component to be replaced, removing debris, levelling, cleaning.

What do learners need to learn?

How to safely prepare the area ready for installation, cleaning down, removing temporary hoarding or protection, clearing the area, protecting the area, providing barriers as required.

5.6 Position **fix and secure** complex timber-based and non-timber-based products to building fabric

Range:

Fix and secure - plumb, level, straight, secure.

What do learners need to learn?

How to position fix and secure complex timber-based products (e.g. ply, fibre and particle board) and non-timber-based products (UPVC cladding) including door frames, hang doors, windows and kitchens using appropriate fixings and according to specifications.

Skills

MC1

5.7 Maintain tools.

Range:

Maintain - clean, sharpen, store correct use

What do learners need to learn?

How to maintain and secure tools during installation, ensuring efficiency and quality of finish, minimise damage and loss.

Skills

EC5

5.8 Install **door and window ironmongery** into timber-based products

Range:

Ironmongery:

Doors - hinges, locks and latches, handles, knockers and knobs, push and kick plates, door closers, door selectors, sliding bolts, letter plates, security furniture.

Windows – handles, hinges, stays, casement fasteners, casement stays, grills, vents, security furniture.

What do learners need to learn?

How to install door and window ironmongery including locations, positions, and suitability for intended end use. Including the techniques used to ensure industry tolerances, e.g. techniques used to recess the leaves of hinges neatly without hinge bind and at the correct industry norm positioning (225mm up, 150mm down).

5.9 Carry out **quality checks**

Range:

Quality checks - plumb, level, straight, secure, correct size.

What do learners need to learn?

How and what to check when carrying out quality checks on completed work (checking for plumb, level and positioning within the structure and accuracy to the plan including size).

Skills

MC1

5.10 Adapt timber-based products to meet installation requirements

Range:

Adapt - trim, adjust, repair.

What do learners need to learn?

How to trim, adjust and repair product as required when fitting, completing the job to the required standard.

Guidance for delivery

Opportunities for visits/engagement with local industry, employers and manufacturers should be provided throughout the delivery

Considerations for innovative methods of delivery to include blended learning and other forms of technology.

Innovative methods of delivery could include:

- Presentation/demonstration – delivery of topics using SmartScreen presentation (PowerPoint example available) lecture/discussions/oral Q&A enthusing and engaging learners through different teaching methods and resources
- Reinforcement of candidate learning – revisit learning, group discussions, peer support, sample questions

Formative assessment – oral Q&A, SmartScreen worksheets (samples available) observation of measuring activities

- Practical - Use of pre-set formative assessments carry out tasks and record on standardised form.
- Knowledge – pre-set paper-based activity to confirm skills and understanding. Learners can use variety of methods to carry out activities, calculators, apps, office IT

Ways of ensuring content is delivered in line with current, up to date industry practice

- Centres will need to ensure a realistic representation of carpentry and joinery and components are available
- Centres will need to provide the appropriate tools, equipment and test instrumentation for demonstration and practical training purposes
- The provision must represent the type of equipment currently available in the UK carpentry and joinery industry
- Current and emerging carpentry and joinery technology should be included in delivery where possible

Suggested learning resources

Books

- Site Carpentry and Bench Joinery – City and Guilds
- Geometrical drawing – John J O'Connor - Gill Education
- Modern Carpentry – Fred T Hodgen – Drake 2005
- Carpentry and Joinery – Peter Brett _ Nelson Thornes 2010
- Carpentry and Joinery – Paul N Hasluck – Tools for working wood - 2010

Websites

- HSE - www.hse.gov.uk
- Building Regulations - www.gov.uk/building-regulations-approval
- English Heritage - www.english-heritage.org.uk
- Institute of Carpenters - www.instituteofcarpenters.com
- British Woodworking Federation - www.bwf.org.uk
- The National Association of Shopfitters - www.shopfitters.org
- The Carpenters' Company - www.carpentersco.com

Scheme of Assessment – Carpentry and Joinery

The Carpentry and Joinery occupational specialism is assessed by one practical assignment. The duration of the assessment is 27 hours. Learners will be assessed against the following assessment themes:

- Health and Safety
- Design and planning
- Produce complex timber-based products
- Fix and assemble components
- Installation
- Inspect/Quality check

By completing the following tasks:

Task	Typical Knowledge and skills
Task 1 – Prepare and plan for the production of complex timber-based products	<p>Displays a breadth of knowledge and practical application to set out complex timber-based products and components.</p> <p>Candidates display a breadth of knowledge and practical skills that enables them to carry out and plan for the completion of the work. Candidates will need to produce documents to industry standards that clearly state how they will carry out the installation. Knowledge and skills demonstrated will include design, measurement and calculations of quantities, production of a method statement and risk assessment and numerical skills to use setting out details to produce cutting lists and material lists, minimising wastage.</p> <p>Knowledge and skills to use safely and accurately hand and power tools and machines to make a template.</p>
Task 2 - Produce complex timber-based products	<p>Displays a breadth of knowledge and skills to produce complex timber-based components to specification successfully. Candidates will demonstrate I skills in marking components. Knowledge of health and safety, best practice and skills to use templates.</p> <p>Knowledge of health and safety in producing components with hand and power tools as well as woodworking machines, following a risk assessment and method statement.</p>
Task 3 – Assemble, fix and finish complex timber-based products	<p>Displays a breadth of knowledge and skills to assemble and finish complex timber-based products and components to specification successfully.</p> <p>Knowledge of safe and best practice procedures used to assemble, erect and finish joinery and carpentry projects, following a risk assessment and method statement. The task is completed in a clear and logical sequence. Works in a safe manner. Providing protection for the area to ensure the safety of the general public and those carrying out the Technical skills to assemble and finish the window and roof with a high degree of accuracy with attention to detail, knowledge of how to minimise damage to the finished item.</p>

Task 4 - Install complex timber-based products and components	Displays a breadth of knowledge and skills in installing complex timber-based structures and components, minimising damage. Knowledge of carpentry fitting skills and technical skills ensuring accuracy of installation and good finish, following risk assessment and method statement
--	---

The information provided in the following tables demonstrates to approved providers the weightings of each performance outcome and how each performance outcome is assessed.

Performance Outcome and weighting %	High level tasks Provide specific instructions for candidates to provide evidence for and are the same for every version of the assessment	Assessment Theme	Typical evidence
PO2 Prepare for the production of complex timber-based products and structures (30%)	T1 and T2 T1	Health and Safety Design and Planning	Risk assessments, PPE, safe working practice Method statements, measurements, cutting/component, tools lists, templates patterns, design of tasks Presents/communicates plan/design (Rod details) to stakeholder/correct terminology used
PO3 Produce complex timber-based products and components (30%)	T2	Produce complex timber products	Set up/mark out, calculations, maths, produce complex timber structures, accuracy of joints, quality of finish and housekeeping. Selection of tools, tool use and maintenance. Inspection, calibration and use of machines, accuracy of use .
PO4 Assemble complex timber-based products (20%)	T3	Fix and assemble components	Fix and assemble components, accuracy of adjust and fit of joints, use of tools. Accuracy of assemble and fix, use of tools. protection of finished product Selection of tools, tool use and maintenance.

<p>PO5 Install complex timber-based products into complex structures (20%)</p>	<p>T4</p>	<p>Installation</p> <p>Inspection/Quality check</p>	<p>Preparation, fix/install, standards, selection use of tools, and maintenance</p> <p>Inspection, quality check. verification of finished product</p>
--	-----------	---	--

307 Painting and Decorating

Level:	3
GLH:	600
Assessment method:	Practical assignment

What is this specialism about?

The purpose of this specialism is for learners to know and undertake painting and decorating work. Learners will have the opportunity to plan, perform and evaluate their work whilst utilising a range of materials, methods and techniques.

Learners will develop their knowledge and understanding of, and skills in:

- Knowledge of health and safety as applied specifically to painting and decorating.
- Knowledge of tools, equipment and materials utilised in the process of painting and decoration.
- Knowledge of a range access equipment
- Knowledge of a range of processes to prepare for the application of surface coatings and wallcoverings.
- Knowledge of identification of high-quality finishing processes.
- Skills of planning and implementation including preparation of the work area.
- Skills of identifying and selection procedures for correct tools, equipment and materials.
- Skills of identifying and rectifying faults in surfaces, materials and application.
- Skills of application techniques for water borne and solvent borne coatings.
- Skills of application techniques for a range of wallcoverings.

Underpinning knowledge outcome

On completion of this specialism, learners will understand:

1. Painting and Decorating knowledge criteria

Performance outcomes

On completion of this specialism, learners will:

2. Prepare for the application of surface coatings and wallcoverings
3. Apply specialist surface coatings in complex environments
4. Apply specialist wallcoverings in complex environments

Completion of this specialism will give learners the opportunity to develop their maths, English and digital skills.

Specialism content

Outcome 1

Common knowledge criteria

Health and safety:

1.1 Implications of **legislation**

Range:

Legislation and guidance -The Health and Safety at Work Act (HASAWA), Construction Design Management, (CDM) regulations, Reporting injuries, diseases and dangerous occurrences act (RIDDOR), Control of substances hazardous to health (COSHH), Provision and use of Work Equipment Regulations (PUWER), Manual Handling Regulations, Personal protective equipment (PPE) at work regulations, Respiratory protective equipment (RPE) regulations Work at Height regulations, Control of Noise at work regulations, Control of vibration at work regulations, Electricity at work regulations, Lifting operations and lifting equipment regulations (LOLER), Hazardous waste regulations, Control of lead at work (CLAW) Approved code of practice (ACOP), HSE information.

What do learners need to learn?

The role of legislation and regulations in painting and decorating including the role of the Health and Safety Executive (HSE). How current legislation impacts employer, employee and painting and decorating projects within a domestic and commercial setting.

The implications of not adhering to the legislation on the public, client, business and employers, including enforcements, penalties, and imprisonment.

Skills

EC5

1.2 The identification of **hazards**

Range:

Hazards - sharp edges, moving parts, working with chemicals, existing toxic / hazardous materials -lead, asbestos, mould. Working at height, slips, trips and falls, fumes, dust, cuts, use of PPE, RPE, fall arrest equipment.

What do learners need to learn?

The types of hazards and risks associated with painting and decorating activities, working at height, in trenches, in workshops, on site. Methods used to identify hazards (walk around site, observing how task are preformed, assessing tools, equipment) and the precautions taken through the adoption of safe systems to minimise them.

Skills

EC5

Information

1.3 Types of **information**

Range:

Information - specifications, drawings (orthographic projection, isometric projection, hand, computer-aided design (CAD) including the drawing information: scale, symbols, hatchings), method statements, schedules, bill of quantities, programme of works, Building Information Modelling (BIM), safety data sheets, risk assessments.

What do learners need to learn?

The types of information used to manage, support and organise projects for the application of surface coatings and wallcoverings including the planning, preparing, measuring, marking out, application methods, manufacturer's guidance and safety legislation.

Skills

EC5

1.4 How to obtain relevant **information** from Building Regulations and standards

Range:

Information sources - GOV.uk, HSE, Manufacturers, Local authorities, and Energy savings trust.

What do learners need to learn?

Building Regulation and standards Information relevant to the preparation and application of surface coating and wallcovering, where it is sourced and its importance (sustainable use of materials) in the profitable completion of a given task.

Skills

EC5

Tools and equipment

1.5 Types of tools and **equipment** for tasks

Range:

Equipment:

- **Work area preparation**- dust sheets, protective sheeting, masking materials,
- **Access equipment** - hop ups, steps, ladders, working platforms, tower scaffold
- **Measuring equipment** - tape measures, rulers, levels
- **Marking out equipment** - pencil, chalk line, straight edge
- **Cutting equipment** - shears, trimming knives
- **Surface preparation** - sanding machines, sanding block, scrapers, filling knives, steam stripper, hot air gun, caulking gun, paint removal machines
- **Applications** - brushes, rollers, trays, scuttle, kettle, spray equipment, paint application machines, paperhanging equipment, pasting machines
- **Safety** - PPE, signs and barriers, fall arrest equipment.

What do learners need to learn?

The identification of the tools and equipment listed in the range. How each of their individual characteristics match their purpose and suitability for the tasks at hand.

Skills

EC5

1.6 **Operation and handling** requirements for tools and equipment

Range:

Operation and handling - accuracy, safe working methods, cleanliness, trained, competent, maintenance, storage, method statements, risk assessment, PPE.

What do learners need to learn?

How to safely handle and operate tools and equipment correctly, following recommended guidance and safe working practices.

The implications of not adhering to safe working practices, risk assessments, method statements or the correct PPE for a given task such as, injury, illness, death.

The implications using the incorrect tool for the task, or using the appropriate tool incorrectly, resulting in poor standard of work, extra costs in time and materials.

Skills

EC5

1.7 Importance of **maintenance and** how to maintain equipment

Range:

Maintenance - cleaning, lubrication, storage methods.

What do learners need to learn?

How to maintain tools and equipment, and the implications of not keeping up regular maintenance such as, the longevity of the equipment, the safe working operation and its performance.

Skills

EC4

EC5

1.8 The **environmental impact** of tools and equipment

Range:

Environmental impact - manufacture, transportation, quality, disposal (improper waste disposal), reusable items, sharps.

What do learners need to learn?

What is the environmental impact of tools and equipment through their lifecycle and how their impact can be reduced (for instance using cardboard paint kettles, recycling of old tools) and the implications this can impose on the environment

Skills

EC4

EC5

1.9 Principles of waste management

Range:

Principles - re-use, recycle, reduce, correct disposal methods.

What do learners need to learn?

What are the principles of waste management (re-use, recycle, reduce and disposal) and why it is important to segregate waste and dispose of the waste correctly. For instance, the disposal of sharps and contaminated waste, evaluation of the costs from not following waste management and the implications on landfills.

Skills

EC4
EC5

Science

1.10 Internal and external **environmental effects** which may affect the preparation and application of surface coatings and wallcoverings

Range:

Environmental effects - weather, temperature, humidity, type of substrate, ventilation/air conditioning.

What do learners need to learn?

How do various internal and external environmental conditions effect and impact on the application of surface coating and wallcoverings. For instance, high humidity resulting in inconsistent drying times, alkaline surfaces causing chemical reactions, physical damage and defects.

Skills

EC4
EC5

1.11 Principles of **moisture transmission and ventilation**.

Range:

Moisture transmission and ventilation - internal, external, structural.

What do learners need to learn?

Identify the types of moisture transmission and ventilation and how they can affect various substrates, for instance, condensation affecting drying times of the coating, and their adhesion to the substrate.

Identify the appropriate specialised primers and the application methods required to rectify the conditions created from moisture transmission and poor ventilation (stain block to rectify the staining effects from damp).

Skills

EC4
EC5

Maths

1.12 **Application** of geometry to the preparation and application of surface coatings and wallcoverings

Range:

Application - length, perimeter, girthing, area, volume, angles, shapes, points in a plan, lines and curves, Pythagoras theorem.

What do learners need to learn?

Identify and use the appropriate geometry and mathematical equations for the preparation and application of surface coating and wallcoverings to enable accurate calculations of materials and resources. Calculating wallpaper quantity from room measurements and allowing an additional percentage for offcuts. Working out paint quantities, from room size measurements, number of coats against material spreading rates.

Skills

MC1
MC2
MC4

1.13 Application of **ratio**, proportion and rates of change

Range:

Ratios related to - thinning of paints, paint thickness, drying times, filler, 2-pack paint, working time, mixing colour, manufacturer's instructions.

What do learners need to learn?

Identify and use the correct and appropriate ratio calculations for the preparation and application of surface coating and wallcoverings. Including working out the correct thinning of paints and the correct 2-pack paint and filler ratios, following manufacturer's instructions and the implications from incorrectly calculating the ratios i.e. coating not drying or drying too quickly before application.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC3

Business/commercial

1.14 **Costs** associated with the preparation and application of surface coatings and wallcoverings

Range:

Costs - quantities, location, area, size and complexity, overheads, waste, quality of finish hire vs purchase of equipment, effects of labour, quality of materials, efficiency.

What do learners need to learn?

What the costs associated with correct and incorrect preparation are and how the surface preparation, before application of surface coatings and wall coverings, can impact on profitability (for instance, appropriate application methods on a large external wall, evaluate using a brush application against hiring or buying an airless spray unit).

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC9

Building technology

1.15 Key factors and **systems** of working in different sectors

Range:

Factors - signage, barriers, protective coverings and routes, low VOC, working hour restrictions, accessibility, good communication, updating information to client's ventilation, good communication.

Systems - safe working methods.

What do learners need to learn?

What are the key factors and systems to consider when working in different sectors such as occupied properties, health and education facilities where residents, patients and learners may be present. The safety of others in the vicinity of work being carried out, what precautions, operations and facilities need to be provided to protect members of the public and other work colleagues and the implications of liability such as damage, injury, illness and death.

Skills

EC4
EC5

1.16 Different **types** of construction materials to be coated and their **reaction** to coating materials

Range:

Types- timber, timber sheet products, metals, plaster, plasterboard, brickwork/blockwork, previously painted surfaces, plastics.

Reactions - physical, chemical.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Identify the different types of materials which are to be coated and any possible reactions from surface coatings. Understand the reasons for adopting the appropriate methods for their preparation including primers used and the safety considerations required in the process. Water based products on ferrous metals may promote rust or solvent based products on alkaline plaster may cause saponification.	EC4 EC5

1.17 The relationship between the **type** of building structure and the painting and decorating **task** to be completed

Range:

Type - new, commercial, domestic, industrial, heritage.

Task - scale, size, protection of surfaces, preparation of work area, access and thoroughfare, street work.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Understand the requirements when working on different types of building structures and evaluate the implications of using water borne and solvent borne coatings. The importance of identifying the type of building structure and using the appropriate preparation, application and surface coating. For instance, large commercial work may favour the use of airless spray, where a listed heritage building may require adopting more traditional methods of application.	EC4 EC5

Coating Science

1.18 Classification of paint coatings

Range:

Classification – function: decoration, preservation, identification. paint content: pigments, resins, thinners, driers, paint body, sanitation. Physical properties of surfaces: tactility, porosity, capillarity, adhesion, opacity, density. Chemical properties of surfaces: alkalinity, acidity, inertness, soluble, salt content, water. Drying methods, evaporation, oxidation, polymerisation.

What do learners need to learn?

Understand the classification and function of paint coatings, their properties and identify their characteristics and their suitability for different purposes, i.e. external softwood is coated for preservation and decoration, where metal pipework in an industrial complex is coated for preservation and identification.

What are the components of a paint coating and identify how each of the primary coating dries. For instance, water-based coating dry by evaporation and coalescence.

Skills

EC4

EC5

1.19 Properties of commonly used materials and potential chemical reactions when using common surface coatings and decorating materials

Range:

Properties - water based, solvent based, spirit based, high solid adhesive, low solid adhesive.

Chemical reactions - chemically active: alkaline (saponification), acidic. mould growth, lack of adhesion, reversible and non-reversible.

What do learners need to learn?

What are the properties of commonly used surface coating materials and identifying how best to deal with any potentially chemically active surfaces and their treatment? i.e. understanding and overcoming the implications of using a water-based emulsion required to be applied to a reversible coating of lime wash.

1.20 **Causes** and symptoms of **defects** found in coatings

Range:

Causes - poor preparation, poor application technique, incorrect material selection.

Defects - physical, chemical, environmental.

What do learners need to learn?

Identify and understand the causes, symptoms and characteristics of defects found in coatings and the impact of those defects on the application and the finished effect. For instance, poor application of a gloss coating can result in the physical defect of runs or sags which will need to be abraded to be removed.

Skills

EC4
EC5

1.21 The environmental **impact** and **considerations** of paint manufacture

Range:

Impact - local pollution, global pollution.

Considerations - water based against oil based, recycling, transportation, use, disposal, VOC's.

What do learners need to learn?

What is the environmental impact and implications of the manufacture, selection, use and disposal of paints, for instance pollution, sustainable resources.
Evaluate water based against solvent based paints as to the impact each has on the environment.

Skills

EC4
EC5

Surface Coating Application

1.22 Application techniques and factors affecting their suitability

Range:

Application Techniques - brush, roller, spray.

Factors - size of task, complexity of work area and environment, space for working, noise, fume, dust pollution, ventilation, protection of surfaces and work area.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Identify and understand the appropriate application techniques and their suitability when applying surface coatings to the areas. Include complex areas such as large ceilings, panels, windows and alcoves whilst considering the environment around these surfaces.	EC4 EC5

1.23 The **implications** of not following manufacturers' guidance for application, drying and recoating times

Range:

Implications - defects, financial, time, wastage.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
What are the implications of the potential defects that may occur if manufacturer's guidance is not followed, for instance not following thinning guidance may require recoating incurring financial and time implications.	EC4 EC5

1.24 Principles of good design

Range:

Principles

- **Theory of colour** - including primary, secondary, tertiary
- **Colour referencing systems** - BS 4800, RAL, NCS, Munsell
- **Colour terminology** - colour, hue, contrast, tone, value, tint, shade
- **Colour schemes** - monochrome, analogous harmony, achromatic, complementary
- **Visual design** - shape, pattern. Effects of artificial light: metamerism

What do learners need to learn?

What are the principles of good design and what impact does colour theory have on visual design and light when creating decorative schemes, for instance advancing colours reds/oranges receding colours greens/ blues systems.

Identify the different referencing systems and understand the terminology used in these systems.

Skills

EC4
EC5

1.25 Application of specialist decorative techniques

Range:

Decorative techniques - rag rolling, additive, subtractive, sponge stippling, dragging, glaze and wipe, replicate oak and mahogany using graining methods, replicate carrara and vert de mer using marbling methods, single and multi-plate stencilling designs, gold leaf application, paint finish effects (glitter paints, metallic, chalk paints, textured effect paints).

What do learners need to learn?

Understand and be able to apply to the desired effect, a range of decorative technique processes using a range of materials and methods. Including how to mix and adjust paints for decorative techniques and what processes are appropriate for the substrate.

Skills

EC4
EC5

1.26 **Techniques** for identifying and **rectifying** coating defects

Range:

Techniques - visual checks for defects.

Defects - patchiness, misses, uneven pattern, skid marks, uneven appearance, lack of adhesion, shrivelling, flaking tarnishing.

Rectify - correct poor/incorrect preparation, and application.

What do learners need to learn?

Identify and understand a range of coating defects and the appropriate methods and what techniques are used to identify and rectify them.

Wallcovering and adhesive science

1.27 Ways in which wallcoverings and adhesives are **classified**

Range:

Classification - paper production methods, printing methods, types, properties, size, application methods, adhesives.

What do learners need to learn?

Understand and identify how various wallcoverings and adhesives are classified, and what each of their characteristics and properties are.

How are the wallcoverings produced and evaluate their suitability in various environments, for instance, durability and cleanability in a high traffic area.

Skills

EC4

EC5

1.28 Properties of commonly used **substrates** and potential chemical reactions when using wall coverings

Range:

Substrates - timber, metal, plaster, brick, block etc, plasterboard, previously decorated surfaces.

What do learners need to learn?

What are the properties of common substrates and any potential chemical reactions (preparation and application defects) when applying wallcoverings.

To include previous coverings, size, application, sealers, efflorescence, damp.

Skills

EC5

1.29 Causes and symptoms of **defects** found in wallcoverings and adhesives and the **implications** to their application and the finished effect

Range:

Causes - inappropriate selection of materials for surface, poor preparation, poor application.

Defects - pre-application defects, post application defects.

Implications - financial, time, wastage.

What do learners need to learn?

Identify and understand defects found in both pre and post application of wallcoverings and their adhesives.

What are the implications from poor preparation, poor selection and poor application when applying wallcoverings.

Skills

EC5

1.30 The environmental **impact** of wallcovering and adhesives

Range:

Environmental impact – manufacturing methods, transportation, disposal methods.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Environmental impacts from the manufacturing, use and disposal of wallcoverings and adhesives, for instance, sustainable resources, health and safety, including environmental implications of disposal.	EC5

Wall Covering

1.31 **Principles** of good design.

Range:

Principles - planning process, setting out process, pattern types, visual balance, aesthetics.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Why the planning process is so important before cutting or application of wallcovering and the implications of not following the setting out procedures. Understand the principles of good design when setting out wallcoverings including balance, pattern types, and use of repeats, colour and contrasts, for instance the pattern is in the middle to produce a balanced effect on a chimney breast.	EC5

1.32 Hanging **techniques** for differing wallcoverings

Range:

Techniques - manufacturing guidance, pasting and hanging methods, cutting methods, folding techniques.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
The importance to read and following manufacturer's instructions before cutting or application of the wallcovering. Understand, follow and apply pasting, folding, hanging, and cutting techniques appropriate to the wallcovering and surface.	EC4 EC5

1.33 **Techniques** for dealing with **structural complexities** and their applications

Range:

Techniques - correct selection and application procedures.

Structural Complexities - working on staircases, ceilings, odd shaped and oversized spaces, chimney breasts, alcoves, columns, reveals.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
How to identify structural complexities and assess their individual challenges.	EC4
The appropriate application techniques when measuring, selecting, cutting and applying wallcoverings appropriate to the various structural complexities.	EC5

1.34 The **implications** of not following manufacturers' guidance for application, drying and finishing

Range:

Implications – wastage, time, financial.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
What the implications are of not following manufacturer's guidance during application, drying and finishing of wallcoverings, for instance, financial, economic and reputation.	EC5 DC1

1.35 The importance of **techniques** used to reduce wastage

Range:

Techniques - correct measuring procedures, measurement methods (area method, girthing method).

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Understand and apply techniques and procedure used to ensure economy and the impact on reduction of waste. For instance, measuring techniques to reduce wastage.	MC1 MC2
Why it is important to use the correct procedure for the specific type of wallcovering to reduce wastage. For instance, drop pattern paper using 2 rolls.	EC4 EC5

1.36 Techniques for **identifying and rectifying** wallcovering defects

Range:

Identification - visual checking.

Rectifying techniques - correct material selection, preparation and application processes, removal and rehanging.

What do learners need to learn?

What are the techniques used when identifying wallcovering defects.

Identify and understand defects found wallcoverings (miss-match due to oversoaking/ not following manufacturer's instructions).

What the processes are that can be used to rectify defects.

Skills

EC5

Specific knowledge criteria for performance outcomes

Prepare for the application of surface coatings and wallcoverings (Outcome 2)

Preparation Methods

1.37 Suitability of preparation methods for the task **environment**

Range:

Environment – surfaces, timber, metal, trowelled, plasterboard surfaces and previously decorated surfaces.

What do learners need to learn?

Skills

What are the ranges of methods required when preparing interior and exterior surfaces. How do these surfaces react to preparation methods.

EC4
EC5

What the specialist techniques are for different surfaces.

1.38 The importance of **protection** of work in progress and completed work

Range:

Protection – domestic areas (room furniture, floor/carpets, door and window furniture, wall-mounted fixtures and fittings, television, media/IT systems, lighting) and commercial areas (workstations, machinery, equipment, furniture, lighting).

What do learners need to learn?

Skills

Types of protection that are required depending on the task/specification. Including the importance of maintaining a clean workspace, and the correct disposal of waste during progress and on completion.

EC4
EC5

1.39 How to apply **traditional and modern** preparation **techniques** for different types of surfaces

Range:

Traditional techniques - may include materials and processes that require permits or license (e.g. lead based).

Modern techniques - preferably used to reduce VOCs and low risk methods for removal (e.g. non heat).

What do learners need to learn?

Skills

Types of preparation methods (both traditional and modern) used for a range of bare and previously decorated surfaces and substrates.

EC4
EC5

Consideration must be given to factors that could affect preparation techniques, age of building, building type, health & safety and environment.

Outcome 2 - Prepare for the application of surface coatings and wallcoverings building products and structures

Performance Criteria

2.1 Identify **information requirements** from a brief

Range:

Information/requirements – size, shape and scale of project, function, budget, material specification.

What do learners need to learn?

Identifying, selecting and extracting the correct information from a brief to meet the requirements of any given task.

Skills

EC4
EC5

2.2 **Interpret** drawings, specifications and schedules

Range:

Interpret - specifications, of painting works, schedules of paint colours and finishes, drawings, plans, elevations, sections, method statements, schedules, bill of quantities, programme of works, Building Information Modelling (BIM), safety data sheets, risk assessments.

What do learners need to learn?

Understand and interpret the various types of information required to meet the requirements of any given task and understand importance of key documents to completion of job to requirements.

Impacts of failing to adhere to the drawings, specifications and schedules.

Skills

EC5
MC7

2.3 Use **questioning techniques** to obtain and clarify information required

Range:

Questioning techniques – open/closed, probing, funnel.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
How to use and apply appropriate questioning techniques to ascertain and clarify the information required for any given task when talking with clients/customers and using note taking for clarification.	EC1 EC2 EC4 EC5 EC6
Closed: used when making a decision	
Open: used when trying to get opinions	
Probing: used when trying to get information that is not forthcoming or to seek full understanding of a situation	
Leading: used to gain influence and achieve desired outcome	
Funnel: used when trying to get details about a situation	

2.4 Advise customers on **design choices**

Range:

Design choices - size and scale of project, function of project, ascertain client requirements, provide examples when advising clients, design principles related to form, shape, scale, colour, pattern, appropriate material selection from a range.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
How to provide well informed advice to clients on design choices, including colour schemes and products using terminology based on established design principles.	EC1 EC2 EC4

2.5 Use **appropriate terminology** with key stakeholders

Range:

Appropriate terminology - clear unambiguous terminology used when explaining unfamiliar terms. Acronyms need explaining or writing in full with clear explanations. Drawings, pictures, or written texts used to confirm or add further explanation. Refer to given project documentation.

What do learners need to learn?

How to use concise clear unambiguous language and refer to key documentation to assist in explaining concepts with key stakeholders. Use of developing technologies can help improve presentation techniques, for instance digital.

Skills

EC1

2.6 **Design** decorative scheme to meet customer requirements

Range:

Design - follow the brief, colour theory and terminology, colour referencing systems, sample schemes and boards, alternative solution.

What do learners need to learn?

How to select from a range of colour specifications using appropriate colour terminology to design a decorative scheme to meet the needs of the customer.

What effects colours can have on rooms and buildings, for instance, advancing / receding.

What design types are appropriate to styles of decorative finishes (Georgian, Victorian, Modernist, Art Deco and others).

Skills

EC5

2.7 Calculate area and volume of different geometric **shapes**

Range:

Shapes - square, rectangle, irregular shapes such as L shaped, cube, cylinder, circle.

What do learners need to learn?

How to calculate areas and volumes of different geometric shapes using a range of mathematical processes when preparing and applying paints and wallpapers to avoid over ordering or under ordering.

Skills

MC1
MC2
MC4

2.8 Produce **scaled drawings** by hand

Range:

Scaled drawings - plan, elevation and section. Including 1:1250-Site plan, 1:100 ground and first floor plan, 1:100 elevations, 1:100 sections, symbols and hatchings to elevations and plans and sections. Hatchings: blockwork, brickwork, insulation, concrete, hard-core.

Symbols: window and door on plan, north point, title block.

What do learners need to learn?

How to produce building (scaled) drawings using manual drafting methods to a prescribed brief. Identify equipment used to create scale drawings.
An understanding of why scale drawings are used.
Identify hatchings and symbols that are used in scaled drawings.

Skills

MC7

2.9 **Inspect** materials

Range:

Inspect - missing items, breakages, damage to items, frost damage, check use by dates, quality, match specification, record keeping of deliveries.

What do learners need to learn?

How to inspect materials and delivery notes before use and use appropriate report procedures for any omissions or defects.

What are the consequences of missing items, breakages for the company and productivity.

Skills

EC5

2.10 **Prepare** working environment for task

Range:

Prepare - clear work area, secure working area to protect public, workforce. Protect surfaces, use correct selection procedures for materials, tools and equipment. Select and use appropriate access equipment. Follow correct working processes for the preparation of a range of surfaces. Keep a clean and tidy workspace. Clear away at end of each stage and end of project.

What do learners need to learn?

How to prepare and set up the work area safely in preparation for appropriate commencement of work.

What are the implications of not protecting the surrounding area appropriately in terms of financial, reputation and time.

Why the area is required to be secure and consequences if not secure.

Why is it important to work cleanly and clear as you work considering safety, professional image.

Skills

EC5

2.11 Mark out measurements on to materials and backgrounds

Range:

Mark out - rulers, tape measures, plumb lines, chalk lines, spirit levels, laser levels, pencil.

What do learners need to learn?

Use the correct equipment for planning and setting out measurements.

Skills

MC1

2.12 **Inspect** equipment

Range:

Inspect - oil moving parts, free from damage, levels calibrated, mechanical equipment serviceable tested before use.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
How to inspect and provide maintenance to equipment to ensure safe and proper function. What are the impacts from using of unsafe equipment. Why equipment should be maintained and serviced regularly.	EC5

2.13 Estimate **resource requirements**

Range:

Resources - labour, materials, overheads, plant and equipment, profits, VAT.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
The difference between an estimation and a quote.	MC9
How to estimate the resources required, for the task given including time, materials and equipment availability.	
Impacts of incorrect estimation.	
How to work out the total cost for a job, Inc. VAT.	

2.14 **Follow** a method statement

Range:

Follow - parameters of the activity or project, plant and equipment required, procedures, safe working methods, risk assessments, emergency procedures, safe handling and storage of materials to prevent pollution, waste disposal procedures.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Create or follow a plan of work adhering to safe working methods including risk assessments when carrying out activities.	EC1 EC2 EC3 EC4 EC5
Importance of following method statements and what is the impact of not following (personally, business, financially and environmentally).	

Outcome 3 - Apply specialist surface coatings in complex environments

Performance Criteria

3.1 **Apply** coating techniques for complex areas

Range:

Apply - water borne, solvent borne, interior, exterior.

What do learners need to learn?

How to apply appropriate surface techniques and treatments for complex areas including broad, linear and specialist. Ensuring safe methods of working and following specification and manufacturer's guidance. Suitability of coating type for task, environment, sustainability and required finish.

Skills

EC5

3.2 **Apply** water borne and solvent borne coatings

Range:

Application - rollers with sleeves of synthetic filament, woven pile, woven fabric, mohair, lamb's wool, short, medium, long pile; brushes in natural bristle, synthetic filament; trowel/texturing tools including rollers and brushes; equipment: roller cages, paint stirrers, strainers, paint pots, extension poles, buckets, scuttles, trays, dust sheets, masking machine.

What do learners need to learn?

How to apply water borne and solvent borne coatings, using the correct tools and equipment for a given task. Ensuring safe methods of working and following specification and manufacturer's guidance. Suitability of coating type for task, environment, sustainability and required finish.

Skills

EC5

3.3 Use different types of **equipment** to apply different coatings in complex areas

Range:

Equipment - brush and roller, airless spray, HVLP, brushes and specialist equipment for specialist techniques: broken colour effects, stencilling, marbling, graining and gilding.

What do learners need to learn?

How to determine the correct equipment dependent on the application and complex areas. How to use the appropriate equipment safely and correctly. Factors including finish, accessibility, area, environmental and health and safety.

Skills

EC5

3.4 **Inspect** finish

Range:

Inspect - visual checks to ensure quality and specification has been met, check for runs and other defects, smooth even finish with no misses, test wet and dry film thickness to compliance with the given specification.

What do learners need to learn?

How to inspect finishes of work to ensure the specification is met and that it is defect free. What equipment and procedures can be adopted to inspect the finish.

Skills

EC5

3.5 **Rectify** irregular **surface coating problems**

Range:

Problems - misses, grinning, runs and sags, excessive brush marks and ropiness, fat edges and wet edge build up, paint on adjacent surfaces, roller edge marks and roller skid marks, irregular cutting in, orange peel, excessive bits and nibs.

Rectification – eradicate poor material selection, poor preparation and poor application.

What do learners need to learn?

What are the characteristics and causes of various surface coating defects. How to visually identify the defects in surface coatings and select the appropriate remedies to rectify them.

Skills

EC5

Outcome 4 - Apply specialist wallcoverings in complex environments

Performance Criteria

4.1 **Measure** lengths

Range:

Measure - folding rule, tape measure, straight edge, pencil.

Cut - shears, trimming knives, fabric-backed vinyl joint cutter, plastic protective strip.

What do learners need to learn?

Techniques can be used to make the measuring process more efficient, for instance, length on length.

Use a range of cutting equipment and methods for wallcoverings to minimise waste.

Skills

EC5
MC1
MC4

4.2 **Cut** wallpaper for complex environments, minimising waste.

Range:

Cut - shears, trimming knives, fabric-backed vinyl joint cutter, plastic protective strip.

What do learners need to learn?

Use a range of cutting equipment and methods for wallcoverings to minimise waste.

Skills

MC1

4.3 **Apply** adhesives to wallcoverings

Range:

Application - adhesive to back of covering, adhesive to wall surface.

Tools for application - folding rule, tape measure, straight edge, pencil.

What do learners need to learn?

The importance on following manufacturer's pasting instructions, and the implications of not following them (defects, imperfections).

Skills

EC5

4.4 Apply **techniques** for the hanging of a **range of wallcovering**

Range:

Range of wallcoverings – liner, foil, polystyrene, anaglypta, foil, printed, flock, bamboo, vinyl, blown vinyl, solid sheet, fabric, mylar, non-woven, pre-pasted, washable, easy walls, moisture resistant, grass cloth, embossed, patterned.

Techniques - wallpaper identification, vertical application, horizontal application, planning processes, measuring and cutting, pasting and hanging, cutting around obstacles.

What do learners need to learn?

Importance for selecting starting and finishing points, and methods used.

How to use appropriate techniques when planning, setting out and hanging a range of wallcoverings.

Why it is important to adopt appropriate hanging techniques, work cleanly and follow Manufacturer instructions and guidance.

Skills

EC5
MC1
MC2
MC3

4.5 Apply **techniques** for hanging wallcoverings in complex environments.

Range:

Techniques -vertical application, horizontal application, planning processes, measuring and cutting, pasting and hanging, cutting around obstacles.

What do learners need to learn?

Select and use the correct techniques, tools and equipment for hanging wallcoverings in complex environments. Complex environment includes working on staircases, ceilings, odd shaped and oversized spaces, chimney breasts alcoves, columns, reveals, internal and external angles.

Why it is important to adopt appropriate techniques and tools for cutting complex areas including star cuts, angled cuts and splicing.

Skills

EC5

4.6 **Inspect** finish

Range:

Inspect - defects, cleanliness.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
How to inspect wallcovering finishes for defects and ensure cleanliness throughout. Why it is important to pay particular attention to joints, i.e. cutting, surface damage, paste, loose edges, bubbling.	EC5

4.7 **Rectify** complex wallcovering problems

Range:

Rectify - preparation, pasting methods, application methods, cutting techniques.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
How to identify complex wallcovering problems and defects and when is it best appropriate to apply and carry out rectification methods, during and after application.	EC5

Guidance for delivery

Opportunities for visits/engagement with local industry, employers and manufacturers should be provided throughout the delivery

Considerations for innovative methods of delivery to include blended learning and other forms of technology

Innovative methods of delivery could include:

- Presentation/demonstration – delivery of topics using SmartScreen presentation (PowerPoint example available) lecture/discussions/oral Q&A enthusing and engaging learners through different teaching methods and resources
- Reinforcement of candidate learning – revisit learning, group discussions, peer support, sample questions

Formative assessment – oral Q&A, SmartScreen worksheets (samples available) observation of measuring activities

- Practical - Use of pre-set formative assessments carry out tasks and record on standardised form.
- Knowledge – pre-set paper-based activity to confirm skills and understanding. Learners can use variety of methods to carry out activities, calculators, apps, office IT

Ways of ensuring content is delivered in line with current, up to date industry practice

- Centres will need to ensure a realistic representation of carpentry and joinery and components are available
- Centres will need to provide the appropriate tools, equipment and test instrumentation for demonstration and practical training purposes
- The provision must represent the type of equipment currently available in the UK carpentry and joinery industry
- Current and emerging carpentry and joinery technology should be included in delivery where possible

Suggested learning resources

Books

- Level 2 Diploma in Painting and Decorating - Cook A, Fearn, C, Walter, S, Yarde, B, Burdfield, M Published by: City & Guilds 2014
- Painting and Decorating 6th Edition - Butterfield, D, Fulcher, A, Rhodes, B, Stewart, B; Tickle, D; & Windsor, J
- Published by: Wiley-Blackwell, 2011)
- Design and Construction Best, - A; de Valence, B; & Langstone, C
- Published by Butterworth-Heinemann, 2002

- Parry's Graining & Marbling - (John Wiley & Sons 1995)
- Practical Gilding - Peter and Margaret Mactaggart
- Published by: Archetype Publishing Ltd
- Painting & Decorating Level 3 Published by OUP Oxford, 2015

Websites

- HSE - **www.hse.gov.uk**
- Building Regulations - **www.gov.uk/building-regulations-approval**
- English Heritage - **www.english-heritage.org.uk**
- PASMA Mobile tower scaffold industry body - **www.pasma.co.uk**
- Painting and Decorating Association - **www.paintingdecoratingassociation.co.uk**
- British Decorators Association - **www.british-decorators.co.uk**

Scheme of Assessment – Painting and Decorating

The Painting and decorating occupational specialism is assessed by one practical assignment. The duration of the assessment is 27 hours. Learners will be assessed against the following assessment themes:

- Health and safety
- Design and planning
- Presentation
- Preparation of surfaces and work area for applying specialist surface coatings
- Application of specialist surface coatings
- Inspect, finish and rectify for specialist surface coatings
- Preparation of surfaces and work area for applying specialist wallcoverings
- Application of specialist wallcoverings
- Inspect, finish and rectify for specialist wallcoverings

By completing the following tasks:

Task	Typical Knowledge and skills
Task 1 – Plan and present for the application of surface coatings and wallcoverings	<p>Displays a breadth of knowledge and practical skills to plan for the completion the redecoration of a living room.</p> <p>Candidates will need to produce documents to industry standards that clearly states how they will carry out the redecoration.</p> <p>Knowledge and skills demonstrated will include measurement and calculations of room areas, production of a method statement and risk assessment, and the design and presentation of a mood board to the client, that includes a scale drawing of the room, applying knowledge in the use of colour theory.</p>
Task 2 – Apply specialist wall coatings and wallcoverings	<p>Displays a breadth of knowledge and skills to apply surface coatings and wallcoverings to the given specification successfully.</p> <p>Applies knowledge and practical skills in the protection of surfaces and area, preparation of surfaces, application of patterned and non - pattern wallpapers, paints including decorative techniques, making use of brush, roller and spray application.</p> <p>Work in a safe manner and demonstrate the ability to work to a brief. Tools, materials and equipment are selected and used correctly. All work should be carried out in line with relevant manufacturer's instructions/building regulations, including the maintenance of a safe and tidy work area.</p> <p>Inspect finishes and rectifies any defects appropriately.</p>

The information provided in the following tables demonstrates to approved providers the weightings of each performance outcome and how each performance outcome is assessed.

Performance Outcome and weighting (%)	Task <i>Provide specific instructions for candidates to provide evidence for and are the same for every version of the assessment</i>	Assessment Theme	Typical evidence
PO2 Prepare for the application of surface coatings and wallcoverings	T1 and T2	Health and Safety Design and Planning Presentation	Risk assessments, PPE, safe working practice Method statements, scaled drawings, measurements, material/tools lists, design of decorative scheme, advising design choices, representative of scheme Presents plan/design to stakeholder/correct terminology used
PO3 Apply specialist surface coatings in complex environments	T2	Preparation of surfaces and work area for applying specialist surface coatings Application of specialist surface coatings Inspect, finish and rectify for specialist surface coatings	Work area prepared, surface reviewed, and defects corrected prior to application Set up, use of tools, application techniques, accuracy to chosen design scheme Inspection of finish, defects rectified
PO4 Apply specialist wallcoverings in complex environments	T2	Preparation of surfaces and work area for applying specialist wallcoverings	Work area prepared, surface reviewed, and defects corrected prior to application

		Application of specialist wallcoverings	Set up, use of tools, application techniques, accuracy to chosen design scheme
		Inspect, finish and rectify for specialist wallcoverings	Inspection of finish, defects rectified

308 Plastering

Level:	3
GLH:	600
Assessment method:	Practical assignment

What is this specialism about?

The purpose of this specialism is for learners to cover all aspects of the plastering trade including both traditional and modern methods and techniques in both private and commercial sector of the construction Industry. They will gain knowledge and understanding of skills and techniques required to practise and demonstrate the ability to carry out and complete specific solid plastering, rendering and fibrous related tasks.

Learners will prepare and plan tasks, evaluating resources and programs to complete plastering activities within set time frames. They will demonstrate accurate measuring, setting out of complex surfaces to allow for specific installation and application of solid and fibrous plaster components in line with technical information sources.

Learners will develop their knowledge, understanding and skills in:

- Internal and external plastering materials
- Selecting and using plastering materials and methods for moulding work
- Plastering application methods
- Planning and preparation requirements
- Safe working methods when on site and in the workshop

Learners may be introduced to this specialism by asking themselves questions such as:

- What skills do I need to be a successful plasterer?
- What kind of tasks does a plasterer perform?
- What tools, equipment and materials do plasterers use as part of their role?

Underpinning knowledge outcome

On completion of this specialism, learners will understand:

1. Plastering knowledge criteria

Performance outcomes

On completion of this specialism, learners will be able to:

2. Prepare backgrounds for plastering
3. Apply plastering systems
4. Fix plaster casted from moulds
5. Repair plastering systems

Completion of this specialism will give learners the opportunity to develop their maths, English and digital skills.

Specialism Content

Outcome 1

Common knowledge criteria

Health and safety

1.1 Implications of legislation and guidance

Range:

Legislation and guidance - The Health and Safety at Work Act (HASAWA), Construction Design Management, (CDM) regulations, Reporting injuries, diseases and dangerous occurrences act (RIDDOR), Control of substances hazardous to health (COSHH), Provision and use of Work Equipment Regulations (PUWER), Manual Handling Regulations, Personal protective equipment (PPE) at work regulations, Respiratory protective equipment (RPE) regulations Work at Height regulations, Control of Noise at work regulations, Control of vibration at work regulations, Electricity at work regulations, Lifting operations and lifting equipment regulations (LOLER), Hazardous waste regulations, Approved code of practice (ACOP), HSE information including HSE Woodwork Information Sheets.

Implications- fines, imprisonment, loss of reputation, loss of current or potential staff, down time and loss of productivity, loss of future contracts.

What do learners need to learn?

The role of legislation and regulations in the plastering/rendering tasks and activities, including the role of the Health and Safety Executive (HSE). How current legislation impacts employer, employee and Plastering projects within a domestic and commercial setting.

The implications of not adhering to the legislation on the public, client, business and employers.

Skills

EC4
EC5

1.2 The identification of hazards and risks

Range:

Hazards - slips, trips and falls; sharp edges; working with adhesives; working at height; hazardous materials.

What do learners need to learn?

The types of hazards and risks associated with plastering and rendering activities, (working at height, confined spaces). Methods used to identify hazards (walk around site, observing how task are preformed, assessing tools, equipment) and the precautions taken through the adoption of safe systems to minimise them (Risk assessment, adherence to regulations, manufacturer's instructions).

Skills

EC5

Communication

1.3 The impact of **positive** and **negative** body postures and tone of voice on effective communication

Range:

Positive impact - good relationships, improves team working, motivation, communication, increased morale, boost productivity, satisfaction improves.

Negative impact - poor relationships, teamwork suffers, low morale, poor communication, misunderstanding arises, increased dissatisfaction.

What do learners need to learn?

The impacts of positive and negative body language on communication considering approach and conduct, audience, expression and translation.

Examples of positive body language and tone of voice: open body position, upright relaxed, regular eye contact, voice clear and engaged.

Examples of negative body language and tone of voice: closed body posture, slouched, arms crossed, avoidance of eye contact, voice indistinct and unengaged.

Skills

EC1

EC2

EC4

EC5

Information

1.4 Types of **information**.

Range:

Information - drawings, specifications, manufacturer information, schedules, method statements, programme of work

What do learners need to learn?

How to obtain relevant information using a range of methods, including researching the internet, manufacturer handbooks, other primary and secondary sources, including seeking direct information from relevant parties and liaising with manufacturers, professionals, colleagues.

Skills

EC4

EC5

MC5

MC6

1.5 **Requirements** of building regulations and standards

Range:

Requirements- protect public interest, provides minimum standards for health and safety and general wellbeing, and specifies standards (and tolerances).

What do learners need to learn?

The requirements of building regulations and industry standards in the plastering industry to protect people's safety, health and welfare and promote sustainable development and less negative impact on the environment local and global.

Ensuring the plastering and rendering work is carried out and completed to certain standards and quality set by the industry (straight and line-able, plumb, level, correct dimensions, acceptable surface which are defect free).

Skills

EC5

Tools and equipment

1.6 Types of **tools** and **equipment** used for plastering tasks.

Range:

Hand Tools - hand board, finishing trowel (materials, sizes, types) bucket trowel, gauging trowel, margin trowels, floats (materials types sizes), levels (traditional, water, laser), straight edge, feather edge, Darby, small tools (types), joint rules, busk, files, craft knife, square, water brush, tool brush scratcher, snips, tape measure, lath hammer.

Power tools – mega mixer, drill, hammer drill, drywall gun.

Equipment - drum/cement mixer, pan mixer, mixing bath, drag (larry), shovel, brush, access equipment.

What do learners need to learn?

Types of hand tool, power and equipment used in tasks such as installing, mixing, applying, keying and finishing plastering systems, their characteristics, purpose and suitability for completing different aspects of work (fibrous plastering, dry lining, internal solid plastering and rendering work).

For example, a darby, is used to ensure walls and floor are even and ready for decorative finish. It is a long and straight piece of thin metal or plastic with a centre straight handle and front side smooth front finish.

Skills

EC4

1.7 Operation and handling **requirements** of tools and equipment.

Range:

Requirements - age restrictions, training, competence, maintenance and storage, PPE, Provision and Use of Work Equipment Regulations 1998 (PUWER), risk assessment and method statements.

What do learners need to learn?

Requirements when operating and handling tools and equipment. Including, safe handling and safe working methods, safe storage, minimising potential for damage and risk of theft.

Adhere to regulations and legislation when complying with operation and handling requirements.

Skills

EC4

EC5

1.8 Importance of **maintenance** and how to maintain equipment.

Range:

Operation and handling - efficiency, minimise down time, increased productivity, safe usable condition.

Maintenance – cleaning, storing, access, inspection, setting up, portable appliance testing (PAT), reporting.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
The processes used to maintain tools and the importance of regular maintenance of tools and equipment to ensure safe working and fit for purpose, including PAT testing.	EC4 EC5
Understand the implications of poor maintenance which lead to loss of production, poor finish and a risk to health and safety.	

1.9 Types of **fixings** for installing plastering components.

Range:

Fixings - drywall screws varying sizes, coarse thread suitable for fixing to timber, fine thread for fixing to metal, nails varying sizes (galvanised finish, jagged shank for increased holding strength, large head to distribute load), plugs, nails and insulation fixings.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Types of fixings, their characteristics, material properties, stock sizes and suitability for different purposes including compatibility and suitability with internal/external situations. Fixing methods and process used to ensure materials and components are securely fixed to background surfaces such as timber, metal and solid substrates.	EC4 EC5 MC1 MC2 MC9
Including different types of fixing tools, SDS drill, impact driver, dry wall, collated, nail gun, stapler.	

Scientific concepts and principles applied to plastering

1.10 Plastering materials science

Range:

Type of Plaster - Class A (plaster of Paris), Class B (retarded plaster) and Class C (anhydrous plaster).

Characteristics - plaster containing gypsum, lime, or cement, as a dry powder and is mixed with water.

Types of render materials and products - traditional, pre-blended systems.

Characteristics – traditional, loose materials, cement, sand, aggregate.

What do learners need to learn?

Plastering materials science - consideration given to the type of plastering and rendering products that are used with plastering installation situations and their compatibility/suitability to achieve the desired finish.

The importance of their characteristics including how materials set and the timings of materials including strength and curing to ensure successful installation and application of different plastering/rendering systems.

In addition, consideration given to background surfaces and compatibility with plaster as well as traditional and modern backing and finishing plasters, additives and polymers, bonding agents, chemicals, reinforcements and types of beads, minimum/maximum thickness.

Working out correct quantities of traditional and modern materials including adding additives for producing mixed plaster and render in line with specifications ratios and manufactures information. Measuring traditional loose materials by volume in line with specification ratios, measuring chemical liquid additives by milligrams and grams, mixing pre-blended plaster weight and water ratios.

Skills

EC4

EC5

MC1

MC2

MC3

MC6

1.11 **Principles** of thermal and sound efficiency and the **relationship** with substrates and plastering materials and techniques

Range:

Principles - heat transfer/insulation and sound transmittance/insulation/absorption.

Relationship - U values of substrates i.e. blockwork, brickwork, concrete, insulating plaster products, thermal boards, backing plasters, EWI systems.

What do learners need to learn?

The principles of sound and thermal efficiency including U values, acoustics valuation, and performance with consideration to the implications of relevant legislation and regulations.

The process and benefits of installing internal and external wall insulation and the types of systems that can be installed by direct bond and mechanical fixing. The implications associated with installing internal and external systems with regards to thermal performance (water vapour, moisture, condensation).

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC1
MC2
MC4
MC5
MC10

1.12 **Principles** of fire protection

Range:

Principles - Prevention: controlling ignition and fuel sources so that fires do not start.

Containment: fire should be contained to the smallest possible area, limiting the threat to life safety and the extent of property likely to be damaged.

Types of products used for passive fire protection - Plaster boarding to steel beams and columns, fire resistant partitions, fixings, manufacturer's information, specifications, Approved Document B.

What do learners need to learn?

Principles of fire protection with reference to materials used and methods of application, plastering and plasterboard products and their performance within a building.

Consideration given to evaluation and performance requirements Follow current legislation (introduction to Document B) and regulations. Understand how to position, fit and improve fire rating methods within buildings, reasons for achieving increased fire performance ratings within buildings to increase safety protection and ensure safe evacuation procedures using appropriate materials such as fire line plasterboard, components and intumescent sealants.

Skills

EC4
EC5

1.13 **Chemical reactions** from various plasters and additives and the **effect** these can have on the finished product

Range:

Chemical reactions - efflorescence – migration of salt to the surface of a porous material

Effect - reduced bonding, reduced strength, overall appearance.

Remedial work - waterproofer (creates surface imperious to water ingress), dextrin (gives a harder surface finish to a plaster cast), retarder (creates a slower setting plaster), accelerator alum (creates a quicker setting plaster), accelerator rendering (speeds up the setting process of cement to protect from frost), and pigments (add differing colours).

What do learners need to learn?

Identifying type of problematic damp and moisture related substrates and their effects on different surfaces and the different forms of remedial procedures of reducing, stopping, controlling damp, moisture and increased condensation levels in structures. Selecting suitable additives for enhancing plasters and rendering systems. The benefits of chemicals used in plastering and rendering products. Including retarders, accelerators, additives, water proofer, stabilisers, plasticiser, salt inhibitors, cement, gypsum, lime with consideration of impacts on workability, strength, curing, air drying.

Measure and gauge correct quantities of liquid chemicals using millilitres and litres of liquid additives to enhance the plastering material. Interpret specifications and manufactures information when measuring and gauging powder-based materials by volume to ensure the mixed plaster or render is suitable and performs for the intended work.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC1
MC2
MC3

1.14 Water, moisture and damp, condensation and the **importance** and implications of damp proofing/tanking including chemical damp proofing

Range:

Importance - prevention of water ingress to a building structure and damage caused, i.e. damaged plasterwork, rotten timbers and possible collapse of floors and other timber structures.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
The importance and implications of damp proofing/ tanking and chemical damp proofing from water, moisture, damp and condensation and the problems associated with backgrounds and applied plasters, their effects, and methods for repair and reinstating to prevent rising and penetrating damp.	EC4 EC5
The different waterproofing systems used to control penetrating and rising damp: recognise methods and procedures for installing and applying tanking slurries, chemical inserted damp courses, types and techniques of slurry application, membrane installation to basements.	

1.15 **Causes, symptoms** and rectification of **faults** in **plastering systems**

Range:

Plastering systems -Internal solid plastering, external rendering, cast and run in situ mouldings.

Causes: - Poor mix, poor preparation i.e. backgrounds/ mould preparation, incorrect application, poor material storage, out of date materials, structural movement, lack of movement beads, weather conditions, damp, water ingress.

Symptoms: -Bond failure, cast sticking, flash setting, cracking, crazing, dusting/deterioration visible signs of damp, surface blowing (frost/efflorescence).

Faults - Structural movement, wood rot, damp, suitability of plastering product.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Cause and symptoms of defective work faults, and the effects of poor surface preparation and problems associated with key and poor bond. Suitability of background and materials chosen for the work, compatibility of plaster/render products, poor gauging and mixing of materials and additives, poor application and techniques and work standards met when preparing, applying and finishing traditional and modern plaster and render products to meet specifications and industry standards.	EC4
The different effects of structural and surface defects and methods chosen to rectify and make good.	

Maths

1.16 **Application** of maths including working out quantities both in areas, linear and volume.

Range:

Application - areas (walls, ceilings, windows doors), Volumes (floor screed) Linear (beads, cornice), circumference (walls, ceilings, floor screed, beads, cornice), U values (compliance with Approved Documents part L), Pythagoras Theorem (setting out).

What do learners need to learn?

The application of math's including working out quantities in areas, linear, and volume in both metric and imperial units of measurements, when planning plastering and rendering related tasks. For instance, calculating loose materials, pre-blended bagged materials, beads/fixings, sheet materials and allowances for waste.

Working out singular linear measurements and perimeter for calculating lengths of internal and external beads for walls and ceilings with openings, forming drips and bell casts, expansion and stops.

Working out areas and volumes of internal and external plastering materials for complex curved surfaces, inclined surfaces, beams and returns, attached and independent piers.

Skills

MC1
MC2
MC3
MC4
MC5

1.17 **Application** of geometry.

Range:

Application - setting out, Pythagoras Theorem.

What do learners need to learn?

The application of geometry in plastering tasks. Consideration should be made to the use of geometry to set out and install complex plastering work using metric measurements, transferring measurements from datum's, using ratios, bisecting techniques, and use of radius rules from drawings, specifications, schedules and method statements - measuring, setting out, squaring levelling, plumbing and bisecting when setting out complex work: plain walls and ceilings, walls and ceilings with openings, walls with returns, walls with attached piers, beams, independent piers, curved surfaces, incline surfaces.

Interpret technical information from drawings to accurately set out and install plaster and render systems in line with specifications and manufactures information to meet and comply with schedules and work programs.

Skills

MC1
MC4
MC5

1.18 Application of **ratios** to plastering tasks

Range:

Ratios - water ratios according to manufacturer's recommendations, mix ratios for PVA, SBR, water proofer, other additives.

What do learners need to learn?

The application of ratios in relation to measuring materials to meet specification ratios, calculating and gauging for mixing traditional loose binders, aggregates, additives, and pre-blended plastering and rendering mixes to ensure correct strength and consistency of materials. Measure and apply bonding agents, sealers and primers in line with manufactures instructions. Select and consider appropriate resources and equipment for example when mixing loose aggregates and binders, pre-blended plasters, premixed materials to ensure accurate mixing and consistency to meet the industry standards.

Follow manufactures information and instructions for mixing correct quantities of chemical and powder-based additives. Use appropriate techniques for diluting and applying PVA solution, grit bonding adhesives, SBR slurry to adequately prepare different types of backgrounds to receive plaster and render application. Interpret technical information to prepare, mix, dilute and apply sealers, primers and salt inhibitors on specific surfaces.

Skills

MC3
MC4

Specific knowledge criteria for performance outcomes

Prepare backgrounds for plastering (Outcome 2)

Business/commercial

1.19 **Costs** associated with the preparation of backgrounds for plastering.

Range:

Costs - labour, location, transportation, overheads, materials, design implications, waste, climate conditions, renewable and sustainable requirements.

What do learners need to learn?

The costs associated with the preparation of backgrounds for plastering with consideration on how they impact profitability and how selecting appropriate plastering systems to meet the buildings performance needs may impact on costs including traditional or modern, age and design performance. Type and method of work being undertaken, new, old, matching existing, restoring or renovation, deadlines, skills required

Type of preparation work, planning work schedules, working out and calculating costs for labour, evaluating materials for recycling. Purchase and hire costs of appropriate equipment, machinery, access, costing and estimating materials and components, process and techniques for removing materials and waste, segregation and disposal including land fill costs.

Skills

MC1
MC9
EC4
EC6

Protection

1.20 Techniques used to protect the areas of work

Range:

Effects - colour and grain distortion, Removal of natural oils.

What do learners need to learn?

The types of methods used to protect internal and external surfaces such as openings in structures, building elements, services, mixing areas and general work areas as well as types of covering materials prior to carrying out the plastering work.

Protecting surfaces from different climate conditions, accidental damage and vandalism.

Protecting the public and nearby properties from noise and dust pollution, ensuring safe access routes.

Skills

EC4
EC5

Background preparation

1.21 The differing internal/external **backgrounds** and the preparation needed to allow for effective plastering to take place

Range:

Backgrounds - Solid backgrounds brick and block, composite, concrete, stone/slate, plasterboard backgrounds, expanded metal lath, timber lath.

What do learners need to learn?

The different types of internal and external backgrounds and areas including walls, ceilings, curved walls, piers, columns and beams with consideration to preparation methods needed to allow effective plastering to take place.

Identify suitable backgrounds and methods of preparation to ensure successful bond, preparing backgrounds by hand, mechanical means, applying bonding agents and installing reinforcing materials to ensure adequate key and bonding ability

Analysing materials and evaluating different methods for preparing backgrounds, gauging, mixing and applying slurry coats to ensure correct strength and durability, working out quantities of metal lath sheets and fixings to cover surface areas, working out and calculating to install and fix traditional timber laths to receive three coat plasterwork. Planning and working out the application process, one coat, two coat and three coat plastering work.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC1
MC2
MC3
MC4
MC5

1.22 Suitability of materials, equipment and **techniques** to control suction

Range:

Techniques - scraping down, grinding/raking out of mortar joints, brushing down, hacking, removal, chemical keys, bonding agents, EML, rib lath, mechanical keys and water Scratch coats, damping down, removal of mortar spots, scutching to create key, slurry coats.

What do learners need to learn?

The suitability of materials, equipment and techniques used to control suction and with consideration to manufacturer's instructions.

Understand and recognise different surface preparation methods to control suction and form a key, by hand, mechanical method and applying bonding agents to ensure successful compatibility of plaster application. Use appropriate techniques and procedures to prepare, apply, rule, key and finish scratch coats, base coats and finishing plasters.

Skills

EC4
EC5

1.23 Suitability of materials, equipment and techniques to produce a key.

Range:

Hand tools - lump hammer, broom, bolster, floor scraper, scutch hammer, claw hammer, paint brushes, paint rollers, tin snips, spirit levels, window gauge, tape measure, straight edge, timber rules.

Power tools - SDS hammer drill, rotary scabblers/strippers, angle grinders, mechanical breaker.

What do learners need to learn?

Recognise different techniques and methods to prepare background surfaces by hand or mechanical means, form a key by hand or mechanically to ensure adequate adhesion of different plaster applications.

Identify different surfaces and select appropriate bonding agents to improve key in line with the manufacturer's instructions. Use mechanical stripers, breakers, grinders, needle gun scabblers to prepare poorly keyed surfaces

Install mechanical key expanded metal lath sheet and coil to reinforce weak substrates.

Measure and calculate correct amount of sheet and coil expanded metal lath materials and fixings when preparing and reinforcing backgrounds using area and linear formula including allowance for waste. Using appropriate metric measurements to cut materials accurately, position and fix in line using correct number of fixings in line with specifications and manufactures information.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC1
MC3

Apply plastering systems (Outcome 3)

Application of modern and traditional plastering systems

1.24 The suitability of trim beads for internal and external use

Range:

Trim beads types:

- **Galvanized beads** - main use internal due to thin coating which can be removed when used with external render, most beads are available in thin coat and floating coat versions.
- **Stainless steel** - main use external work.
- **Plastic** - beads main use external rendering and swimming pools (due to chemical attack).
- **Corner beads** - form external angles.
- **Stop beads** - form finished edges.
- **Plasterboard edge beads**- form finished edge.
- **Bell cast bead** - forms weathering to base of external renders.
- **Movement beads** - used where cracking could occur, i.e. expansion joints in brick/blockwork.

What do learners need to learn?

Types of beads and their suitability (benefits/potential limitations) for external and internal surfaces. And procedure of installing, position and purpose when forming angles to returns, splays, stops, movement joints and drips when installing plastering and rendering systems.

Using accurate measuring techniques to work out correct quantities of different types of beads for positioning and fixing onto internal and external elevation surfaces using metric linear and perimeter formula. Identifying and selecting correct depth of beads in line with accommodating subsequent application of plaster and render coats (appropriate thickness 10mm ,15mm or 20mm). Use dimensions to set out beads plumb, level, square and correct margin on plain and complex.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC1
MC2
MC5

1.25 How to **cut and fix** various metal/plastic trim beads

Range:

Processes to cut and fix - setting out, measuring, installing using dabs, nailing, use of staples and mechanical fixings.

What do learners need to learn?

Skills

Standard processes for cutting, fixing positioning different types of standard and thin coat beads.

EC4
EC5
MC1
MC2
MC5

Interpret drawings to set out and Install in the correct location to accommodate and assist different plaster and render applications, use correct techniques and methods for plumbing, levelling, aligning and checking margins when fixing to openings, returns, beams, attached and independent piers

Measuring beads accurately to required length when positioning and fixing singular and multiple beads including accurate joining at right angles and abutments.

The techniques and methods for fixing in line with the background and system, correct centres when using different types of fixings (mechanical fixings, staples or adhesive dabs).

1.26 Modern **techniques** used to apply plaster to **internal surfaces**

Range:

Internal surfaces - solid block/brick/stone/ slate/concrete masonry backgrounds, textured, solid old plaster and timber/metal studs/joists.

Type of walls -plain walls, walls with returns, walls with openings, curved walls, beams, plain ceilings, ceilings with curves and raking ceilings.

Techniques - preparing, installing plasterboards, mixing, applying keying, ruling, consolidating and finishing, spray application, two coat work, three coat work, direct bond, plaster boarding, dry wall systems and render finishes.

System of application - Scratch coats, pricking up coats, backing floating coats and finishing coats.

What do learners need to learn?

Traditional and modern techniques used to apply plaster to different types of internal wall surfaces, including, two coat work, three coat work, Techniques for preparing, applying, keying scratch coats, ruling different surfaces plain and complex, squaring, consolidating and devil floating, cutting back at beads, frames, corners, services, scraping back base coats and applying finishing top coats, using different types of techniques.

Install direct bond and mechanically fix standard and performance plaster board and finishing dry wall systems including taping and jointing.

Techniques for preparing, applying, and finishing traditional and modern pre-blended and premixed render finishes. Measuring and working out area dimensions of materials such as plasterboard, transferring dimensions from backgrounds to cut out services, setting out correct fixing centres for mechanical fixings and nail-able plugs and dry wall adhesive, mixing correct amount of plastering materials to ratio of water and apply the correct thickness in line with setting out lines for plain walls, walls with openings and returns in line with drawings, specifications and manufactures instructions.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC1
MC5

1.27 Traditional **techniques** for plastering

Range:

Techniques - fixing laths, applying sand/lime plasters.

What do learners need to learn?

Applying three coat plastering to timber lath backgrounds, using traditional techniques and methods for preparing backgrounds, applying and finishing three coat plastering work. With consideration of the importance when cutting in and cleaning of internal walls angles, ceiling and skirting lines, cleaning of beads, timber door linings and window frames, removal of plaster from service points as well as the importance of completing work in line with industry standards.

Working out correct quantities of timber laths and stainless-steel fixings to prepare backgrounds surfaces, correct position and fixing of laths allowing measured gaps between to accommodate for plaster penetration. Mix traditional sand lime materials by gauging volume of different materials for batching mixes in line with specification ratios, apply plastering materials to correct thickness to avoid sagging and ensure adequate curing to receive further application of base coats.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC1
MC2

Application of render products

1.28 Techniques used for application of external render finishes

Range:

Materials – including loose materials, pre-blended materials, pre-mixed materials.

Backgrounds surfaces – including solid block/brick/stone/ slate/concrete, composite, masonry backgrounds, insulation expanded metal lath.

Type of walls – including plain walls, walls with returns, walls with openings.

Methods - including preparing, mixing, applying and finishing.

System of application – including scratch coats, pricking up coats, backing floating coats and render coats.

Types of render finish – including plain face, textured, scraped, dry dash, wet dash, ashlar, Tyrolean and sprayed/rubbed.

What do learners need to learn?

Applying and finishing techniques for different render surfaces preparing for follow on application, application, keying, straightening including traditional and light weight renders. With consideration of the types of common backgrounds for receiving plastering/render systems.

The different preparations for elevation surfaces to include walls with openings, forming reveals, heads, stops, drips including expansion.

Form returns free hand, reverse rule method and timber rules including the use of angle beads.

This includes external wall insulation, cement board and the need to install different types of reinforcements such as expanded metal lath and mesh clothes, location of beads in line with the drawing, specification and manufacturer's instructions.

Interpret drawings, specifications and manufactures instructions to accurately work out and calculate correct amounts of traditional and modern rendering materials for external elevations. Mix materials in line with specification ratios too meet the required industry standard.

Work out plain and complex surface areas to receive render by interpreting technical information and work out coverage of different rendering products.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC3
MC1
MC2
MC5

Fix plaster (Outcome 4)

Casting from moulds on bench

1.29 Methods for constructing a running mould including materials used

Range:

Material used-

Parts - template, profile, stock, slipper, brace, and muffle.

Types - single slipper, double slipper, double stock, peg moulds, hinged moulds, run plaster reverse mould, piece mould, case mould, flood mould, insertion mould, run loose piece mould.

What do learners need to learn?

Selecting, measuring materials and components for producing running moulds. Using appropriate constructing methods for producing a running mould. Use transferring techniques for consideration to creating templates from drawing/squeeze when obtaining profiles and matching existing design patterns, identifying different parts of the running mould (stock, slipper brace) using timber, attaching template to stock, fixing stock to slipper and fixing brace to stock and slipper.

Interpret drawings to identify, select and cut timber components to correct dimensions and accurately assemble each part using appropriate fixings.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC1
MC3
MC2
MC5

1.30 Types of **materials** used to produce moulds used in casting

Range:

Materials - plasters, reinforcements, additives, retarders, accelerators, flexible moulding compounds, sealing agents, release agents, glues, fibreglass, clay, fixings, laths.

What do learners need to learn?

Identify, select and prepare various types of materials used to produce moulds used in casting. Select, prepare, measure, gauge, mix and dilute different type of materials additives, glues, reinforcements and release agents when producing moulding work.

Prepare different types of materials associated with the casting process, work out correct proportion/ratio/percentages of different casting materials: powder materials and additives, measure correct amounts of liquid materials such as methylated spirits, shellac, rubbers, sealants, fibreglass, glues and reinforcement matting, strands and timber.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC1
MC3
MC5

1.31 How to **prepare** the casting bench ready for running a reverse mould

Range:

Preparation - repair timber /plaster topped, prepare surfaces, seal, shellac, grease.

What do learners need to learn?

The process required in the preparation of the casting bench ready to run a reverse mould with consideration of tools, materials, traditional vs modern construction (plaster topped/timber topped).

Skills

EC4
EC5

1.32 **Process** for applying casting plaster to the bench to produce a reverse mould.

Range:

Process - setting up and preparation of fibrous bench to run and cast mouldings, set out and select specific hand tools, apply release agents and sealers, fix running rule and establish a suitable working surface.

What do learners need to learn?

Prepare surfaces and equipment to produce reverse moulds. Use appropriate coring out methods and techniques traditional and modern. The process and techniques required for applying casting plaster to the bench to produce a reverse mould including muffling of moulding to allow coring.

Skills

EC4
EC5

1.33 **Methods** of preparing the reverse mould for casting

Range:

Methods - sealing, greasing agents and release agents (French chalk, tallow, paraffin/vegetable oil, methylated spirits and shellac flakes).

What do learners need to learn?

The methods and techniques for preparing the reverse mould for casting. Preparing and mixing sealers release agents, application tools, cleaning down reverse moulds.

Mixing sealers and release agents to the correct consistency and apply to reverse mould surfaces in line with the manufacture's information in preparation for casting.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC1
MC3
MC5

1.34 **Methods** of mixing the casting plaster to produce the cast

Range:

Methods – firstings, secondings, one- and two-gauge process.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Gauging materials to ensure correct consistency and strength, demonstrate methods and techniques for mixing the casting plaster to produce the cast using two-gauge system. Incorporating and positioning of reinforcements and building up strike offs materials.	EC4 EC5 MC1 MC3 MC5
Gauge different types of casting plaster to correct ratio of water for consistency and strength, adding correct amount of retarders and accelerator to reduce and increase setting times to meet different time frames used to complete the casting process.	

1.35 **Methods** used to reinforce casts

Range:

Methods - Hessian ropes, timber, matting, fibres, wooden laths, lightweight metal sections, (GRG), matting continuous strand (GRG) fibres.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Methods used to reinforce casts made from reverse moulds.	EC4 EC5 MC1
Measuring and preparing and positioning different types of reinforcements materials to strengthen moulding work.	
Plan and prepare material by working out and calculating the required amount of different reinforcement materials to be incorporated with the casting process using linear measurement for laths, ropes and metal sections, use area when working out matting and weight or volume when adding fibres.	

In-Situ moulds

1.36 **Techniques** for taking templates of existing in-situ moulds

Range:

Techniques - Design pattern - Plain and ornamental.

Types of squeeze process - Cut and draw, clay, plaster and rubber/silicone.

What do learners need to learn?

Techniques for taking templates of existing in situ moulds with consideration of design pattern required including plain and ornamental and types of squeeze process including cut and draw, clay, plaster and rubber/silicone.

Using different techniques for transferring dimensions and design of moulding members to reproduce and match moulding designs plain and ornamental.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC1

1.37 **Methods** of running moulds in-situ

Range:

Methods -. running, forming, turning, spinning, scotch bracketing, coring out, topping off.

What do learners need to learn?

The methods and techniques of running moulds in-situ. Producing straight and curved runs, preparing backgrounds to reduce weight by installing keels and of brackets and coring out.

Demonstrate techniques for applying and finishing/running down moulding runs.

Using different methods for producing traditional in situ moulding work straight and curved.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC1
MC2
MC3
MC5

Fixing moulds

1.38 How to cut mitres

Range:

Cut - free hand, template, mitre box.

What do learners need to learn?

Demonstrate how to set out projection and depth lines on wall and ceiling backgrounds and transfer measurements to accurately cut mitres and stop end returns free hand, demonstrate how to set out and transfer measurements to cut mitres using both internal and external angles using a mitre box.

Using linear measuring techniques to cut mouldings to the required length in line with background surfaces. Set out depth and projection lines to carry out pre-installation positioning and fixing of moulding work to ensure all members adequately meet up and line.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC1
MC3
MC2
MC5

1.39 Methods of fixing plaster casts

Range:

Methods - screws, adhesives.

What do learners need to learn?

Methods of fixing plaster casts, with consideration to techniques for preparation, setting out, fixings and lining all members. Assess backgrounds and weight of moulding to establish when to use different types of fixings procedures and methods

Assess the type of moulding work being fixed for weight and background characteristics. Position and fix mouldings using correct amount of mechanical fixing and adhesive in line with the weight and stress of design.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC3
MC1
MC2

1.40 **Principles** of jointing casts when fixing

Range:

Principles - leaving gaps, application of plaster to gaps.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Principles of jointing casts when fixing, with consideration of the type of fixing used, internal/external mitres, stop ends, straight joints and stopping in. Aligning and stopping in different type of moulding members.	EC4 EC5

Repairing plastering systems (Outcome 5)

Repairing plastering systems

1.41 **Techniques** for the inspection of plastering systems

Range:

Techniques - visual, manual, mechanical testing (impact, adhesion).

What do learners need to learn?

The techniques for the inspection of plastering systems. With consideration to the reasons for carrying out checks (defect analysis and identification) and assessing material quality for plastering and rendering systems including effects of damaged and defected plasters, renders, plasterboard and accessories used with the work and possible defects that can be caused. Choose appropriate methods for reinstating and making good, defected surfaces.

Skills

EC4
EC5
EC1
EC2

1.42 How to **protect** surrounding areas when repairing plastering systems

Range:

Protect - protect surfaces and surroundings, remove /relocate services, protection of public areas and access and egress routes, (polythene sheeting, floor protection, door and jamb protection, protection of glazing).

What do learners need to learn?

Protection methods for surrounding areas when repairing plastering systems with consideration to method statements, waste management and potential consequences of poor protection measures in the work area.

Respecting client property and personal items whilst carrying out repairs.

Skills

EC4
EC5

1.43 Methods for the removal of damaged plaster in various internal plastering systems

Range:

Methods – hand and mechanical, waste and disposal.

What do learners need to learn?

Key removal methods for damaged plaster in internal plastering systems.

Using appropriate techniques and different methods used to remove loose or stubborn plastered surfaces by hand or mechanical means.

Select appropriate PPE from risk assessments and carry out the work in line with method statements.

Skills

EC4
EC5

1.44 **Techniques** for the removal of damaged ornate plaster systems

Range:

Techniques – assess moulding surfaces, preparation, match mould pattern.

What do learners need to learn?

Methods for the removal of damaged ornate plastering systems and the types of procedures for removing defective internal plastering work to reinstate and make good (e.g. repairs to lath and plaster/plasterboard and solid walls).

Skills

EC4
EC5

1.45 **Methods** for the removal of damaged renders in various external rendering systems

Range:

Methods – by hand, mechanical means (breaker, grinding, scabbling).

What do learners need to learn?

Methods and techniques for the removal of damaged renders in various rendering systems and the process of removing defective plain and ornate moulding work to reinstate and make good by selecting appropriate tools and completing the work in line with the method statement.

Skills

EC4
EC5

1.46 How to **reinstate** internal plasterwork to various plaster systems

Range:

Reinstate - float & set, board & set, bonding agent & set, patch repairs.

What do learners need to learn?

Methods used to reinstate external render system. Consideration of materials, preparation methods and process to carry out and make good/reinstate defective internal plastering work (plasterboard, solid walls) to meet industry standards by selecting appropriate tools and completing the work in line with the method statement.

Mixing different type of modern and traditional materials and bonding agents to carry out the repairs to meet industry standards

Calculate areas for reinstating and work out the correct amount of materials for preparing backgrounds and making good surfaces. Mix materials to the correct consistency and strength and carry out the repair work in line with manufactures instructions.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC3
MC1
MC2
MC5

1.47 **Reinstating** external render systems

Range:

Reinstate - hand applied, scratch coat, floating coat, aggregates, machine applied, beads, hard angles.

What do learners need to learn?

Methods used to reinstate external render system. Consideration of materials, preparation methods and process to carry out and make good/reinstate defective internal plastering work (plasterboard, solid walls) to meet industry standards by selecting appropriate tools and completing the work in line with the method statement.

Demonstrate appropriate techniques to prepare, apply and finish defective surfaces using one, two and three coat application.

Interpret and follow technical information to carry out and complete the work.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC1
MC2
MC3
MC5

1.48 **Methods** of reinstating ornate plaster systems

Range:

Methods - matching up to existing work, plug and screw, nail, adhesive, wire and wad.

What do learners need to learn?

Methods used to reinstate ornate plaster work. Consideration of materials, preparation methods and process to make good defective plain and ornate moulding work, including joint lines.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC1
MC2
MC3
MC5

Outcome 2 - Prepare backgrounds for plastering

Performance Criteria

2.1 Interpret drawings, specifications and schedules

Range:

Interpret - materials type, positioning, shapes of mouldings and joints, scale, dimensions, costs, timescales.

What do learners need to learn?

How to use technical information available to aid the preparation of backgrounds for plastering (Work planning, selecting materials and the preparation /installation methods to be used) to meet job requirement. Plan and schedule the work in line with time frames allowing sufficient time for drying and setting of materials.

Set out dimension and transfer levels datums to position mouldings accurately in line with drawings and specifications.

Interpret information from drawings and specifications to work out and calculate costs and quantities of required labour, materials and equipment when producing a schedule to complete work-related tasks in line with work programmes.

Skills

EC5
MC7
MC1
MC2
MC5

2.2 Use questioning techniques to obtain and clarify information required

Range:

Questioning techniques - open/closed, funnel, probing, leading.

What do learners need to learn?

How to use questioning techniques to obtain the information, response or outcome required to effectively complete the task. Questioning may be in person or remote i.e. on the telephone.

Closed: used when making a decision

Open: used when trying to get opinions

Probing: used when trying to get information that is not forthcoming or to seek full understanding of a situation

Leading: used to gain influence and achieve desired outcome

Funnel: used when trying to get details about a situation

Skills

EC1
EC2
EC3
EC4
EC5
EC6

2.3 **Measure** length, area and volume.

Range:

Measure - backgrounds surfaces (walls and Ceilings) pre-blended plasters, loose plastering materials, sheet materials, beads, additives, components, fixings.

What do learners need to learn?

How to measure surfaces for plastering systems. Working out quantities of materials and waste for plastering projects in line with drawings, specifications and manufactures instructions.

Identifying different types of materials and recognise the appropriate formula to work out surface areas to receive plastering work: linear, area, cubic and volume.

Gauging materials using millilitres, litres, grams and kilo grams in line with manufactures information sources to produce plastering materials that meet the required standards regarding quality and strength.

Skills

EC4
MC1
MC2
MC3
MC4
MC5

2.4 Produce **scaled drawings** by hand in plan, elevation and section

Range:

Scaled drawings - drawing equipment, symbols, hatchings, scale, orthographic and isometric projections.

What do learners need to learn?

How to produce scaled drawings by hand. Consideration should also be made to the correct interpretation of scales and use of units of measurement appropriate to specification.

Using appropriate geometry techniques and equipment to produce orthographic and isometric drawings to produce different drawing designs using different scaled measurements and hatching symbols to identify materials.

Skills

MC1
MC2
MC7
MC8
MC9

2.5 Inspect **backgrounds** for suction and/or defects

Range:

Backgrounds: aerated blocks, breeze blocks, concrete blocks, engineering bricks, common bricks, stock bricks, clay bricks, stone, composite.

What do learners need to learn?

Inspect and analyse the characteristics of different types of background surfaces in preparation for carrying out plastering work. Select appropriate methods and procedures for controlling suction by carrying out a simple water absorption test to determine low/medium and high absorption rate.

Assess backgrounds for key, strength and suitability of plaster application.

Skills

EC4
EC5

2.6 **Remove** loose materials from backgrounds

Range:

Remove - hand or mechanical.

What do learners need to learn?

How to remove loose material from backgrounds in accordance with the task. Assess risks and hazards with the work activity to ensure compliance with health and safety legislation when carrying out the removal of loose plaster/render from backgrounds.

Consider the effects of removing defective plaster on surrounding surfaces, selecting appropriate tools and equipment and access and plan the work using safe techniques and methods.

Skills

EC4
EC5

2.7 Apply **preparations**

Range:

Preparations - clean background surfaces, primer, bonding agent, dubbing out coat, scratch coat, damping, hacking.

What do learners need to learn?

How to apply preparations methods, removing dust and controlling suction, using tools, equipment and materials for preparing surfaces, mixing plastering materials, applying, keying, and finishing in accordance with manufacturer's guidance and specification.

Identifying and selecting appropriate hand tools for mixing and applying primers and bonding agents (brush applied, roller or thrown on by paddle).

Skills

EC4
EC5

2.8 **Inspect** materials

What do learners need to learn?

How to carry out inspections (visual) on materials for quality and any potential defects (e.g. correct type of plaster etc.) If defects are identified consideration should be made as to whether defects can be removed or minimised or if disposal of unusable materials is necessary.

Carry out visual checks on delivered and stock materials for good storage, quality of product, date, and shelf life to ensure they are fit for purpose.

Skills

EC2
EC5

2.9 **Inspect** tools and equipment.

Range:

Inspect – Visual check, check lists, maintenance records, service document, PAT testing.

What do learners need to learn?

How to carry out inspections of tools and equipment (safety guards, electrical cables) in line with standard workshop practice to ensure they are serviceable/fully operational including checking fitness for use.

Where necessary adjusting and calibrating of equipment in line with training and guidance. Escalate/report faulty or inappropriate tools/equipment that have been identified in line with health and safety reporting.

Skills

EC4
EC5

2.10 Estimate **resource requirements**

Range:

Resources requirements - timelines, materials, quantities, stock, equipment availability, resources/labour, location, budget.

What do learners need to learn?

How to estimate requirements with consideration. With reference to all available sources (job specification, plans, drawings). Plan schedules, materials and resources accurately for the proposed work.

Calculate labour requirements, materials and equipment in line with work programs. Check stock levels of materials in line with schedules to ensure continuation and minimise disruption to work patterns, assess quality of materials including shelf life.

Skills

EC4
MC1
MC2
MC9

2.11 Follow a method statement

What do learners need to learn?

How to follow a method statement to carry out work duties safely, methodically, and competently in line with the method statement with consideration to the location of tasks – (workshop and onsite task requirements).

Skills

EC1
EC2
EC5

2.12 Apply keys to differing **backgrounds**.**Range:**

Backgrounds - Splatter dash to concrete, EML to wood/concrete, bonding agents.

What do learners need to learn?

How to apply and form keys to a range of background surfaces by forming hand and mechanical key to improve adhesion of plaster using traditional and modern methods

Fix mechanical reinforcements, measure mix, apply slurries and bonding agents

Measure and calculate correct amounts of liquid/powder-based bonding agents too ratio of cement for producing slurries to ensure the applied plaster bonds adequately to the background surface. Ensure materials are mixed to the required consistency and strength for applying onto the background. Work out and calculate correct amount of expanded metal lath area and linear including fixings to produce a mechanical key on low suction and weak backgrounds.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC3

2.13 **Protect** surrounding areas

Range:

Protect - dust sheets, timber sheeting, visqueen, netting, and hoarding.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Protect internal and external surfaces prior and during the work activity. Including surfaces such as windows, doors, services, drains, furniture, floors, surrounding surfaces using a range of coverings.	EC4 EC5

Outcome 3 - Apply plastering systems

Performance Criteria

3.1 Protect integrity, quality and condition of materials during handling and storage

What do learners need to learn?

Protect and store material to maximize limitation of product. Considers safe handling, lifting and transporting requirements of materials and components to competently complete plastering/rendering related tasks.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC2
MC3

3.2 Use tools including hand and power tools.

What do learners need to learn?

Use tools including hand and powered tools (both wired, and battery operated) in relation when preparing, mixing, applying, ruling, keying backing, finishing coats (plasters/renders) including installation of performance plasterboard system to the job specification. All tools should be used in line with safe working practices and in line with training/manufactures instructions.

Skills

EC4
EC5

3.3 **Set out** plasterboard to stud work and direct bond

Range:

Set out - checking backgrounds, set out dimensions.

What do learners need to learn?

Set out plasterboard to studwork and direct bond. Plans the work task in line with the drawing and specification, carries out pre-installation checks, prepare background surfaces and selects appropriate materials, fixings and adhesives for the chosen system.

Check backgrounds for correct dimension of stud and joist centres to receive plasterboard sheets at appropriate thickness (400 mm centres and 600 mm centres).

Calculate surface areas and work out the correct amount of plasterboard sheets and fixings for installation including allowances for waste.

Work out correct amount of dry wall adhesive to install plasterboards by direct bond installation.

Skills

MC1
MC2
EC4
EC5
MC5

3.4 **Fix** plasterboard to timber/metal stud work and solid backgrounds

Range:

Fix - traditional lath, wall plates, dry wall screws, jointing tape, jagged plasterboard nails, adhesive.

What do learners need to learn?

Techniques and methods to fix timber lath on to backgrounds to receive traditional pricking up coats.

The procedures to install and fix plasterboard systems to timber, metal and solid backgrounds using mechanical fixings and direct bond.

Apply different types of finish including taping and jointing systems

Calculate the required amount of sheet materials, components, fixings and reinforcements using area and linear measurement for a given task.

Using different fixing procedures for installing dry lining e.g. vertical positioning and fixing, horizontal positioning and fixing, staggered fixing, double staggered fixing.

Setting out chalk lines for pre-installation of direct bond plain walls, window walls and forming square returns.

Skills

MC1
MC2
MC3
MC5
EC4
EC5

3.5 Mix mortar, including plaster and render**Range:**

Mix - ratios, thickness, materials, consistency, additives, equipment, procedure.

What do learners need to learn?

To mix mortar, including plaster and render gauging quantities of loose materials such as aggregates, binders and additives when mixing including mixing pre-blended plasters and renders to ensure accuracy of strength and consistency of materials for applying and finishing.

Measure and gauge traditional loose materials and additives by volume and weight in line with specification ratios and manufactures information to produce mortar for consistency and strength.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC1
MC3
MC2
MC5

3.6 Apply light weight **plasters** to internal surfaces

Range:

Plasters: two coat, three coat and finishing plaster.

What do learners need to learn?

To apply light weight plasters to internal surfaces, selecting suitable and compatible gypsum-based plaster systems. Use techniques for applying, ruling and consolidating the surface of backing coat including cutting back. Consider any reinforcement requirements before applying finishing plaster to solid and plasterboard background surface ready for decoration.

Calculate and work out correct amount of pre-blended bagged plaster to the correct percentage/ amount of water using metric litre measurements to ensure plaster is mixed to the correct consistency and quality in line with the manufacture's information instructions.

Calculate and work out approximate coverage and timings of different lightweight plaster.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC1
MC3
MC2
MC5

3.7 Apply tape to a drywall system joint

What do learners need to learn?

To apply tape to drywall system joints, preparing plasterboard surfaces and carrying out tape and joint application to butt joints, internal and external corners and spotting to fixings. Prepare jointed surfaces by sanding and sealing if they are being decorated.

Use linear and area formula measurements to calculate the required amount of jointing adhesive, tape, beads, sealers, and primers for producing tape and joint surfaces for installing dry lining systems.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC1
MC3
MC2
MC5

3.8 Apply render plasters to internal surfaces

What do learners need to learn?

To prepare, mix and apply specialist render systems to internal surfaces. Applying and forming plain and textured surfaces in line with manufactures instructions. Apply different backgrounds such as EWI, Cement board, EML and solid.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC1
MC3
MC2
MC5

3.9 Fix laths to surfaces

Range:

Laths - expanded metal, rib and timber.

Finishes - plain face, ashlar, tyrolean and dry dash.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Produce traditional external render finishes using a range of techniques and application methods. Finish different types of plain and textured surfaces using appropriate hand tools and equipment.	EC1 EC4 EC5 MC1
Follow manufactures technical information for working out render surface coverage areas for different elevations of the building including apex surfaces, bay windows and other complex areas.	MC3 MC2 MC5

3.10 Apply light weight **one coat renders**

Range:

One coat render - plain, ashlar, brick render, pebble dash/ dry dash, rough casting/wet dash, scraped texture, rubbed texture and tyrolean.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Apply and finish lightweight one coat premixed and pre-blended renders to form plain/ complex surfaces in line with the manufacturer's instructions.	EC1 EC2 EC3
Mix ratios depending on strength, correct consistency of material for application and correct colour consistency.	MC1 MC2 MC3
Add correct amount of water percentages to pre-blended materials to ensure correct colour, consistency and strength in line with the specification, schedules and manufactures instructions.	MC5
Schedule each phase of the work to allow materials to set and cure e.g. applying primers, bonding agents, base coats and topcoats. Estimate drying and setting time of different render systems.	

Outcome 4 - Fix plaster casted from moulds

Performance Criteria

4.1 Transfer moulding shapes to metal

Range:

Transfer - drawings, draw directly onto zinc, use of squeeze to produce a drawing, stick pre- drawn template to zinc.

Moulding shapes/members - cyma recta, cyma reversa, ovolo and cavetto, fillet, scotia, torus/bead, drip, weathering.

What do learners need to learn?

Transfer moulding shapes to metal. Construct reverse running moulds from drawings, specifications and squeezes, transfer moulding outlines designs to templates and assemble various running mould components to construct a reverse running mould.

Use geometry equipment and graph paper to draw and produce moulding member designs and transfer dimensions accurately on to profiles to meet the specified design in accordance with drawings.

Skills

MC1
MC2
MC3
MC5
MC7
MC8

4.2 Cut shapes from metal

Range:

Cut – Hand and power tools, Aviation snips curved and straight, nibblers, files straight, half round, round, drill, screw gun, vice.

What do learners need to learn?

Transfer moulding profile outlines to sink or aluminium metal sheet and cut out shapes accurately using appropriate hand tools and power tools in line with the method of work and required design profile.

Transfer moulding member designs accurately from templates and profiles to ensure accurate designs are produced.

Skills

EC1
EC4
EC5
MC1
MC7
MC8

4.3 Join templates to running moulds

Range:

Join - hammer, pins.

What do learners need to learn?

Identify components, prepare materials to construct running mould components and Join templates to stock using appropriate hand tools, equipment and workshop resources.

Measure timber components to the required dimensions in line with drawings and assemble different parts of the running mould and attach the template profile in preparation for producing moulding work, positive and reverse running moulds.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC1
MC7
MC8
MC2
MC5

4.4 Apply running rule to casting bench

Range:

Apply - chalk line, straight edge, timber rule, screws, and nails.

What do learners need to learn?

Fix running rules to prepared fibrous bench using correct fixings to ensure reverse mould is run accurately, straight and in line.

Measure and set out dimensions on work benches and work out linear length of timber batten to run the length of moulding required and fix position ensuring straight line with adequate amount of mechanical fixings.

Skills

MC1
MC2

4.5 Grease bench in preparation for reverse mould

What do learners need to learn?

Prepare grease release agent and apply to bench and reverse mould surfaces to ensure positive and cast moulds can be removed and released without damage.

4.6 Prepare **materials**

Range:

Materials - hessian ropes, wooden laths and casting plaster, retarder (size), shellac, grease.

What do learners need to learn?

Prepare moulding materials for producing casts using different types of plasters one- and two-gauge systems, using reinforcements such as canvas, hessian, strands laths for strengthening, release agents, additives and appropriate mixing equipment.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC1
MC2
MC3

4.7 **Run** a reverse mould on the bench

Range:

Run - bench preparation, running lath, muffle, core, finish.

What do learners need to learn?

Run positive and reverse moulds using traditional mortar and plaster core and using modern materials such as plasterboard including using plaster muffles and timber templates.

Set out and measure required quantities of materials in preparation for casting.

Fix additional templates to the running mould profile or muffle ensuring appropriate thickness to reduce the amount of casting plaster and avoid expansion when running the finish.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC3
MC1
MC2
MC3

4.8 **Prepare** moulds ready for casting

Range:

Prepare - drawing, cut to required size, shellac, grease.

What do learners need to learn?

Prepare reverse moulds using shellac sealer and release agents in preparation for casting from solid and flexible reverse moulds. Prepare moulding background surfaces for release purposes.

Work out linear length of required casts from drawings and prepare the reverse mould by cutting to the required length. Measure and calculate the quantity of sealer and release agent required for applying onto the reverse mould in preparation for casting.

Skills

MC1
MC2
MC3
EC4
EC5
MC5

4.9 **Cast** from moulds

Range:

Cast - size, canvas, laths, ropes, reinforcing wads, strike off.

Moulds - one gauge, two-gauge, plaster moulds, rubber moulds, fibreglass moulds.

What do learners need to learn?

Cast moulds from reverse plaster, rubber and fibreglass models using one- and two-gauge casting methods and procedures.

Measure and set out the required length of reinforcements and laths for strengthening and wading producing strong durable casts

Gauging and mixing required quantities of plaster materials by weight to water to ensure consistency and strength of produced cast. Measure required amount of lengths for the task and allow for waste.

Skills

MC1
MC2
MC3
EC4
EC5
MC5

4.10 **Take templates** from an existing in-situ mould

Range:

Take templates - remove section of original, take a squeeze (saw cut and profile, clay, rubber plaster), transferring profiles.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Take squeeze templates using different methods and procedures for reproducing plain and pattern designs. Transfer moulding members to sink profile and construct in-situ running mould.	EC4 EC5 MC1 MC2
Measure and mark out dimensions of moulding design to be removed, transfer design by taking a squeeze.	MC7 MC8

4.11 **Run** moulds in-situ including coring out and topping off.

Range:

Run - sweetening, running rules, running mould, scotch brackets, laths, sand/lime, putty lime, casting plaster, muffle, core, finish.

What do learners need to learn?	Skills
Set out and run in-situ moulding work including coring out/bracketing to form straight, curved and raking moulding work using traditional materials.	EC4 EC5 MC1
Set out and position running rules and apply plaster screeds to ensure smooth running of mould. Muffle running mould and apply coring out material, mix materials to required consistency and strength in line with specifications and manufactures instructions.	MC2 MC7 MC8
Measure timber brackets to required length and position and fix in correct position to allow penetration of mortar and sufficient coring out of moulding design. Set out running rules to accurate dimension and in line and fix and wad in place. Mix materials accurately by volume to run core and finish.	

4.12 **Mark out** materials including mitres

Range:

Mark out - square, level, chalk line, tape measure, mitre box.

What do learners need to learn?

Mark out complex mouldings designs to include intersections of moulding members at mitres, returns and stop ends to ensure moulding members meet and intersect in line accurately when setting out straight, curved and raking moulding work.

Setting out to run moulding work using gig stick and centre block, trammel board, raking moulds.

Skills

MC1
EC4
EC5
MC2
MC3
MC5

4.13 **Cut** castings to produce internal and external angles

Range:

Cut - square, tape measure, mitre box, saw.

What do learners need to learn?

Cut produced in-situ moulds including short breaks to required dimensions when forming internal and external mitres including stop end returns using free hand methods, templates and mitre boxes and appropriate hand tools.

Mark out dimensions to cut out moulding runs at mitres for producing and positioning short breaks including returns.

Setting up and produce up stand to accurate dimension and ratio to run short breaks. Core out and run short breaks, position to ensure members match and line through before making good and stopping-in.

Skills

EC4
MC1
MC2
MC5

4.14 **Fix** plaster casts

Range:

Fix - drill, hammer, punch, plugs, screws, galvanised nails, adhesive, joint rules, small tools, wire and wad.

What do learners need to learn?

Fix moulding work using adhesive, screws and wire and wad methods in line with the method of work.

Assess background and weight of moulding to be fixed and choose appropriate fixing methods.

Set out moulding dimension and accurately snap chalk lines to produce position of depth and projection fixing lines.

Measure linear lengths of cornice and cut to the required internal or external mitre including abutments at joins.

Skills

EC4
MC1
MC2
MC5

4.15 **Apply** plaster to internal and external joints to produce a finish

Range:

Apply - small tools, joint rules, tool brush, busk.

What do learners need to learn?

Apply and make good internal and external mitres and stop end returns using appropriate reinforcements, mortars and casting plaster ensuring moulding members in line and accurate using small tools, joint rules, busks and small brushes.

Skills

EC4
MC1
MC2
MC5

Outcome 5 - Repair plastering systems

Performance Criteria

5.1 **Inspect** plastering system for damage

Range:

Inspect – visual, manual, mechanical analyses, testing.

What do learners need to learn?

Inspect different types of damaged/defected surfaces to internal plastered surfaces, external rendered surfaces, and ornate plasterwork in preparation for carrying out repair work to make good defects. Identify the cause of defect and implement methods and procedures for carrying out repairs.

Skills

EC1
EC5

5.2 **Remove** damaged materials

Range:

Remove - protect surroundings, tools manual and powered, removal of waste product in line with current regulations, comply with health and safety legislation.

Materials - internal plastering, external render and ornate plaster finishes, lightweight pre-blended backing/finish plasters, loose materials (traditional render systems), pre-blended modern render systems, sand/lime mixes, plaster lath, (in situ mouldings), casting plaster, canvas, plaster lath (fibrous mouldings).

What do learners need to learn?

Removal of damaged materials, setting up work areas safely to remove damaged surfaces by hand or by mechanical means in line with risk assessments and method statements. Protect surfaces from impact and accidental damage and remove and dispose of waste in line with legislation.

Skills

EC4
EC5

5.3 **Maintain** integrity of plastering system **materials** and surrounding building fabric

Range:

Maintain - check for shelling, cracking, and effects of other structures.

What do learners need to learn?

Maintenance of the integrity of plastering system materials and surrounding building fabric. Assess and evaluate the type of work to be repaired, re-instated and restored, private, commercial, or listed and plan methods for protecting the surrounding area with regards to people, vehicles, and surrounding buildings.

Estimate and calculate required amounts of materials to carry out the repairs.

Skills

EC1
EC4
EC5
MC1
MC2
MC9

5.4 Match new materials to existing plastering system materials

Range:

Match - traditional, modern, drawings, schedules, specifications.

What do learners need to learn?

Match new materials to existing plastering system materials, removing loose material from backgrounds in accordance with the task. Assess risks and hazards with the work activity to ensure compliance with health and safety legislation when carrying out the removal of loose plaster/render/ornate plaster work from backgrounds.

Carry out specific traditional and modern techniques and methods to ensure the work is reinstated complying with the drawing specification and manufactures instructions.

Skills

EC4
EC5

5.5 **Blend** new materials to existing plastering system

Range:

Blend - lime plasters, horsehair/goats' hair, heritage England.

What do learners need to learn?

Analyse materials, mix and gauge different types of limes and aggregates to make and batch mortar plastering mixes. Blend new materials (making good surfaces) to existing plaster systems. Ensuring surfaces match existing with regards to using appropriate materials, binders, aggregates, additives, reinforcements, beads, colour, surface being plain, textured, pattern design including moulding members and enrichments. Allow sufficient drying and curing times of applied materials during different application.

When repairs should also meet conservation and heritage legislation to meet listed building design.

Planning work and estimating drying times of using traditional lime-based materials in line with plastering schedules to meet work programmes.

Skills

EC4
EC5
MC1
MC2
MC3

Guidance for delivery

Opportunities for efficiencies in delivery

Opportunities for visits/engagement with local industry, employers and manufacturers should be provided throughout the delivery

Considerations for innovative methods of delivery to include blended learning and other forms of technology,

Innovative methods of delivery could include:

- Presentation/demonstration – delivery of topics using SmartScreen presentation (PowerPoint example available) lecture/discussions/oral Q&A enthusing and engaging learners through different teaching methods and resources
- Reinforcement of candidate learning – revisit learning, group discussions, peer support, sample questions

Formative assessment – oral Q&A, SmartScreen worksheets (samples available) observation of measuring activities

- Practical - Use of pre-set formative assessments carry out tasks and record on standardised form.
- Knowledge – pre-set paper-based activity to confirm skills and understanding. Learners can use variety of methods to carry out activities, calculators, apps, office IT

Ways of ensuring content is delivered in line with current, up to date industry practice

- Centres will need to ensure a realistic representation of plastering tasks are available
- Centres will need to provide the appropriate tools, equipment and test instrumentation for demonstration and practical training purposes
- The provision must represent the type of equipment currently available in the UK plastering industry
- Current and emerging plastering technology should be included in delivery where possible.

Suggested learning resources

Books

- Plastering Encyclopaedia: B.F Pegg and W.D Stagg: Blackwell Publishing - 1999
- Plastering: J. B. Taylor: Pearson Education
- The City and Guilds Textbook – Level 2 Diploma in Plastering: Mike Gashe: City and Guilds
- Plastering: J T Sawyer: Routledge: 2007
- Lime and Lime mortars: A D Cowper: Donhead - 1998
- Plastering - Plain and Decorative

Websites:

- HSE - **www.hse.gov.uk**
- Building Regulations - **www.gov.uk/building-regulations-approval**
- English Heritage - **www.english-heritage.org.uk**
- The Federation of Plastering and Drywall contractors (FPDC) - **www.fpdc.org**
- FairTrades – Plasterers, Association - **www.fairtrades.co.uk**
- Federation and Interiors Sector (FIS) - **www.thefis.org**

Scheme of Assessment – Plastering

The Plastering occupational specialism is assessed by one practical assignment. The duration of the assessment is 26 hours. Learners will be assessed against the following assessment themes:

- Health and safety
- Design and planning
- Presentation
- Internal plastering systems
- External rendering systems
- Produce and fix mouldings
- Repair to damaged surfaces

By completing the following tasks:

Task	Typical Knowledge and skills
Task 1 - Prepare and plan backgrounds for installation	<p>Displays a breadth of knowledge and practical skills to plan for the completion the renovation work for the internal and external installation and repair work required to the brief specification.</p> <p>Candidates will need to produce documents to industry standards that clearly states how they will carry out the renovation.</p> <p>Measurement of work areas and calculations will be made to determine the type and quantities of materials and components required for producing plaster and render finishes. A method statement for the installation and repair work alongside a risk assessment for all tasks is required and the candidate will present to the client recommended materials to be used for the different internal plastering works and colour through design for the external rendering.</p>
Task 2 - Plaster and render Installation	<p>Displays a breadth of knowledge and practical skills to complete the internal plastering and external rendering work to the given specification successfully. The tasks are carried out in a clear and logical sequence. Working in a safe manner and demonstrates the ability to work to a brief. Tools, materials and equipment are selected and used correctly, prepares materials and components for installation, gauges and mixes plastering and rendering materials to the required consistency and standards. Consideration to environmental sustainability and recycling of materials.</p>
Task 3 - Repair to plaster surfaces	<p>Displays a breadth of knowledge and practical skills to carry out repairs by making good defected surfaces, removes any damage, and matches new materials and blends new materials to existing plastering systems. Tools, materials and equipment are selected and used correctly in for the installation process. Maintains safe working practices.</p>

The information provided in the following tables demonstrates to approved providers the weightings of each performance outcome and how each performance outcome is assessed.

Performance Outcome and weighting (%)	High level tasks <i>Provide specific instructions for the candidates to provide evidence for and are the same for every version of the assessment</i>	Assessment Theme	Typical evidence
PO2 Prepare backgrounds for plastering (26%)	T1, T2 and T3	Health and Safety Design and Planning Presentation	Risk assessments, PPE, safe working practice Method statements, scaled drawings, measurements, material/ resource lists, recommended materials based on brief, colour through design, with swatches/samples Presents plan/design to stakeholder/correct terminology used.
PO3 Apply plastering systems (50%)	T2	Internal plastering systems External rendering systems	Set up, gauging and mix, use of tools, techniques, finish Selection, preparation positioning (plumb and level), install, use of tools Set out, measurements, position, apply and install, use of tools. Prep of surfaces, measure, gauge, mix, scratch coat, key, technique, use of tools and finish. Selection, preparation positioning (plumb and level), install, use of tools

PO4 Fix plaster cast from moulds (14%)	T2	Produce and fix mouldings	Preparation, casting, moulds, gauge and mix, measure, cut, position, fix use of technique and tools.
PO5 Repair plastering systems (10%)	T3	Repair to damaged surfaces	Identify problem, use of tools techniques, rectifies problem

Appendix 1 Sources of general information

The following documents contain essential information for Providers delivering City & Guilds T Level Technical Qualifications. They should be referred to in conjunction with this specification and the Provider approval and quality assurance information.

You can download these from **www.cityandguilds.com**.

[Centre Contract General Terms](#)

[Quality Assurance Standards: Centre Handbook](#)

[Quality Assurance Standards: Centre Assessment](#)

Within these documents you will find information in relation to;

- centre assessment,
- internal quality assurance (IQA),
- IQA strategy,
- alternative locations and subcontractors,
- non-compliance,
- malpractice, and
- centre support roles and resources

All T Level providers must ensure they familiarise themselves with the above documents and adhere to the general terms as part of their conditions of approval.

Useful contacts

UK learners

General qualification information

E:

learnersupport@cityandguilds.com

International learners

General qualification information

E: intcg@cityandguilds.com

Centres

Exam entries, Certificates, Registrations/enrolment, Invoices, Missing or late exam materials, Nominal roll reports, Results

E:

centresupport@cityandguilds.com

Single subject qualifications

Exam entries, Results, Certification, Missing or late exam materials, Incorrect exam papers, Forms request (BB, results entry), Exam date and time change

E:

singlesubjects@cityandguilds.com

International awards

Results, Entries, Enrolments, Invoices, Missing or late exam materials, Nominal roll reports

E: intops@cityandguilds.com

Walled Garden

Re-issue of password or username, Technical problems, Entries, Results, e-assessment, Navigation, User/menu option, Problems

E: walledgarden@cityandguilds.com

Employer

Employer solutions, Mapping, Accreditation, Development Skills, Consultancy

T: +44 (0)121 503 8993

E: business@cityandguilds.com

Every effort has been made to ensure that the information contained in this publication is true and correct at the time of going to press. However, City & Guilds' products and services are subject to continuous development and improvement and the right is reserved to change products and services from time to time. City & Guilds cannot accept liability for loss or damage arising from the use of information in this publication.

If you have a complaint, or any suggestions for improvement about any of the services that City & Guilds provide, email: feedbackandcomplaints@cityandguilds.com.

About City & Guilds

As the UK's leading vocational education organisation, City & Guilds is leading the talent revolution by inspiring people to unlock their potential and develop their skills. City & Guilds is recognised and respected by employers across the world as a sign of quality and exceptional training.

City & Guilds Group

The City & Guilds Group operates from three major hubs: London (servicing Europe, the Caribbean and Americas), Johannesburg (servicing Africa), and Singapore (servicing Asia, Australia and New Zealand). The Group also includes ILM (management and leadership qualifications), City & Guilds Licence to Practice (land-based qualifications) and Learning Assistant (an online e-portfolio).

City & Guilds

5-6 Giltspur Street

London EC1A 9DE

www.cityandguilds.com

Get in touch

The City & Guilds Quality team are here to answer any queries you may have regarding your T Level Technical Qualification delivery.

Should you require assistance, please contact us using the details below:

Monday - Friday | 08:30 - 17:00 GMT

T: 0300 303 53 52

E: technicals.quality@cityandguilds.com

W: www.cityandguilds.com/tlevels

Web chat available [here](#).

The T Level is a qualification approved and managed by the Institute for Apprenticeships and Technical Education.

Copyright in this document belongs to, and is used under licence from, the Institute for Apprenticeships and Technical Education, © 2022-2023. 'T-LEVELS' is a registered trademark of the Department for Education. 'T Level' is a registered trademark of the Institute for Apprenticeships and Technical Education. 'Institute for Apprenticeships & Technical Education' and logo are registered trademarks of the Institute for Apprenticeships and Technical Education.

We make every effort to ensure that the information contained in this publication is true and correct at the time of going to press. However, City & Guilds' products and services are subject to continuous development and improvement, and the right is reserved to change products and services from time to time. City & Guilds cannot accept responsibility for any loss or damage arising from the use of information in this publication.

City & Guilds is a trademark of the City & Guilds of London Institute, a charity established to promote education and training registered in England & Wales (312832) and Scotland (SC039576). City and Guilds Group Giltspur House, 5–6 Giltspur Street London EC1A 9DE

Schedule 3

Implementation

The content for this Schedule is contained in separate files at;

S3_GEN2W1_OC_Implementation_Plan

S3_GEN2W1_OC_Resource_Plan

Schedule 3

Implementation Plan

S3_GEN2W1_OC_Implementation_Plan

Schedule 3

Resource Plan

S3_GEN2W1_OC_Resource_Plan

Award Questionnaire Q10.7: Resource Plan - Instructions

Lot (qualification) name:

6

Potential Supplier name:

WJEC

Introduction

The following three tabs are designed for Potential Suppliers to outline and explain their Resource Plan.

How to complete this document: Q10.7

Potential Suppliers must complete and submit one copy of this document for each TQ (ie a separate response for each Lot they intend to submit a Tender for).

The three sheets that follow form the requirement of Q10.7:

>> **Outline Resource Plan:** Potential Suppliers are to complete all highlighted (yellow) blank boxes in the table, providing an overall outline of the proposed Resource Plan. All answers should include a level of detail that enables the Authority to assess the basis and reasonableness of the proposed strategy. For the first 6 named resources (marked as * key resources), Potential Suppliers are required to provide a named replacement resource and detail their relevant experience.

>> **Blank Diagram Sheet:** This sheet has been left blank for Potential Suppliers to include a diagram or picture of their resourcing and/or readiness approach should they wish to include this to further support/illustrate their Resource Plan.

>> **Further 10.7 Requirements:** The information requested here is designed to supplement the Resource Plan provided in Sheet 1. Potential Suppliers must complete all blank boxes, providing an appropriate amount of detail.

Schedule 4

Co-operation

1 Objective of the joint arrangements

- 1.1 The Supplier shall cooperate, coordinate and seek to agree certain arrangements with all third party Awarding Organisations, including the Former Supplier, involved in the delivery of the technical education qualification element of each T Level forming part of the T Levels Programme ("**T Level Awarding Organisations**") from time to time with the aim of:
 - 1.1.1 ensuring the quality, consistency, efficiency and effectiveness of the T Levels Programme as a whole; and
 - 1.1.2 in the interest of Students and Providers, streamlining administration relating to the T Levels Programme.
- 1.2 The Supplier shall ensure that all activities carried out by it under this Schedule appropriately take into account the views of each T Level Awarding Organisation (including T Level Awarding Organisations appointed subsequent and/or prior to the appointment of the Supplier) and do not risk or result in:
 - 1.2.1 a disproportionate burden falling on any given T Level Awarding Organisation or on Providers; and/or
 - 1.2.2 a disproportionate burden (whether by any act or omission on the part of the Supplier) on Providers and/or Students.

2 Joint arrangements

- 2.1 In particular, the Supplier shall (at its own cost):
 - 2.1.1 attend a meeting convened by the Authority (on reasonable prior notice and at least once per calendar quarter) with all other T Level Awarding Organisations to discuss progress on coordination efforts including the activities set out below, and to make decisions relating to any outstanding areas of coordination;

- 2.1.2 in order to minimise the administrative burden on Providers, cooperate with all other T Level Awarding Organisations to coordinate and deliver an efficient method of both regular and ad hoc inspections (on an ongoing basis) of the delivery by Approved Providers of the technical education qualification element of each T Level, to ensure that the relevant Approved Providers continue to meet the requirements of their Provider Approval by the Supplier and equivalent approval by other T Level Awarding Organisations, provided always that where, as a result of such cooperation and/or coordination it is necessary for the Supplier to amend and/or modify that part of the Supplier's Response to which the provisions of paragraph 3.1.2 of Part 1 of the Service Requirements apply, then the Supplier shall obtain Approval to such amendment and/or modification;
- 2.1.3 coordinate and seek to agree with all other T Level Awarding Organisations (at the earliest possible date) common rules and guidance applicable to the teaching and assessment of and provision of Post-Results Services for the technical education qualification element of each T Level with the aim of having aligned rules, guidance and Post-Results Services, where appropriate, across the T Levels Programme, addressing topics such as conducting examinations;
- 2.1.4 share information between T Level Awarding Organisations as necessary (subject to the relevant obligations on confidentiality in this Contract) to:
- (i) facilitate the joint arrangements anticipated by this Schedule;
 - (ii) enable transfer of achievement of the TQ Core Component of a T Level between T Level Awarding Organisations; and
 - (iii) enable results analysis in respect of the Route of which the TQ forms part;
- 2.1.5 where possible, utilise systems in the delivery of the Services which are interoperable with those utilised by other T Level Awarding Organisations so as to facilitate the portability of the Services to any Future Supplier;

- 2.1.6 coordinate and seek to agree with all other T Level Awarding Organisations pre-assessment access arrangements for T Levels to ensure equivalence of approach between T Level Awarding Organisations;
- 2.1.7 adopt a common process and, where possible, system, to that used by other T Level Awarding Organisations for applications for access arrangements for T Levels to be made and considered for the benefit of Students;
- 2.1.8 coordinate and seek to agree with all other T Level Awarding Organisations a common process and approach and, where possible, system to that used by other T Level Awarding Organisations, to manage and/or facilitate Reasonable Adjustments and/or applications for Special Consideration to ensure equivalence of approach between T Level Awarding Organisations;
- 2.1.9 seek to agree between T Level Awarding Organisations a Key Dates Schedule, such schedule to be developed in consultation with the Department, GCE Awarding Organisations, Providers and UCAS and to be Approved by the Authority;
- 2.1.10 attend regular meetings (at least once per calendar month unless otherwise notified by the Authority) with all other T Level Awarding Organisations to discuss operational issues in relation to the T Level Programme;
- 2.1.11 in order to minimise the administrative burden on Providers, co-operate with the Former Supplier, where relevant, to facilitate a smooth transition during the Entry Transition Period; and
- 2.1.12 where notified by the Authority, work with other T Level Awarding Organisations responsible for TQs in the same Route with the aim to, where appropriate, harmonise the common TQ Core Component across that Route.

3 Disputes relating to joint arrangements

- 3.1 In the event the Supplier contends that it is unable to meet its obligations under this Schedule as a result of the action or inaction of one or more third party T Level Awarding Organisation, the Supplier shall seek to resolve such matter with the relevant

T Level Awarding Organisation(s). In the event that the Supplier is unable to resolve such matter, having used its reasonable endeavours to do so, the Supplier shall promptly notify the Authority in writing with the relevant details including the steps taken to attempt to resolve the matter, and the Authority shall use its reasonable endeavours to promptly resolve such matter.

- 3.2 In the event that a third party T Level Awarding Organisation contends that it is unable to meet its joint arrangement obligations as a result of the action or inaction of the Supplier, then the Supplier shall comply with the reasonable instructions of the Authority in relation to such action or inaction.
- 3.3 Nothing in this Schedule (including any failure to agree any matters referred to in paragraph 2 of this Schedule) shall operate to reduce or otherwise diminish the Supplier's obligations and/or the Authority's rights under this Contract.

4 Reporting

- 4.1 The Supplier shall, on request by the Authority, promptly provide a written report to the Authority setting out its progress in achieving the joint arrangements set out in paragraph 2 of this Schedule.

Schedule 5

Supplier's Response

The content for this Schedule is contained in separate files at;

S5_GEN2W1_OC_Risk_Register

S5_GEN2W1_OC_AQ9.1-10.7_Supplier_Responses

S5_GEN2W1_OC_Q9.5_Grading_and_Awarding_Structure

S5_GEN2W1_OC_Q10.4_Internal_Quality_Assurance_Process

S5_GEN2W1_OC_Q10.7_Management_and_Governance

S5_GEN2W1_OC_Q10.7_Escalation_Process_Flow

S5_GEN2W1_OC_Q10.7_Issues_Log

S5_GEN2W1_WJEC_Clarifications

S5_GEN2W1_OC_Employer_and_Centre_Engagement_Strategy

Schedule 5

Risk Register

S5_GEN2W1_OC_Q10.1_TQ_Risk_Register

Schedule 5

Supplier Responses

S5_GEN2W1_OC_AQ9.1 - Q10.7_Supplier_Responses

Schedule 5

Awarding Structure

S5_GEN2W1_OC_Q9.5_Grading_and_Awarding_Structure

Schedule 5

Internal Quality Assurance Process

S5_GEN2W1_OC_Q10.4_Internal_Quality_Assurance_Process

Schedule 5

Management and Governance

S5_GEN2W1_OC_Q10.7_Management_and_Governance

Schedule 5

Escalation Process Flow

S5_GEN2W1_OC_Q10.7_Escalation_Process_Flow

Schedule 5

Issues Log

S5_GEN2W1_OC_Q10.7_Issues_log

Schedule 5

Clarifications

S5_GEN2W1_WJEC_Clarifications

Schedule 5

Employer and Centre Engagement Strategy

S5_GEN2W1_OC_Employer_and_Centre_Engagement_Strategy

Schedule 6

Pricing Schedule

The content for this Schedule is contained in a separate file at;

S6_GEN2W1_OC_Pricing_Schedule

Pricing Schedule - Instructions

Lot (qualification) name:
Potential Supplier name:

ONSITE CONSTRUCTION
WJEC

Introduction

This Pricing Schedule enables Potential Suppliers to complete the price element of their Tender. This is to be done against the price elements defined in the definition section below and with reference to the rest of the documents forming part of this ITT, particularly the Service Requirements. Note the separate instructions relating to question 10.5 which must also be followed by Potential Suppliers.

The figures provided against each of the pricing elements will be used in conjunction with expected numbers of Technical Qualification (TQ) students (5 cohorts), chargeable updates to the TQ content and uptake of Additional Services to calculate an estimated Total Contract Value ("TCV"). The TCV calculated in this Pricing Schedule will form the basis of the pricing evaluation, as described in the Evaluation Methodology and Guidance.

Please note that all of the volumes given in this Pricing Schedule are estimates and are not guaranteed. Please also note that no price impacting assumptions or caveats will be accepted in Tenders and the Potential Supplier will not be permitted to vary any charges or fees included in this Pricing Schedule in the event that its estimates prove to be inaccurate. The only charges and fees which will be payable to Suppliers for the Services provided under the Contract are those set out in the Pricing Schedule, subject only to the variation procedures set out in the Contract.

How to complete this Pricing Schedule

Potential Suppliers must complete and submit one copy of this Pricing Schedule for each Lot they intend to submit a Tender for. There are 7 versions of the Pricing Schedule, one for each Lot, and Potential Suppliers should ensure that they complete and submit the correct version of the Pricing Schedule for the Lot which they are submitting a Tender for. Potential Suppliers must complete their name on this instructions tab.

Potential Suppliers must complete all boxes coloured yellow in each of tabs 'Input A', 'Input B', 'Input C' and 'Input D'. The spreadsheet will then automatically calculate the TCV in the 'Total Contract Value' tab using the values entered. The rate card in 'Input B' will automatically populate the relevant rows in 'Input C' and 'Input D'. Values should be entered in £ pounds sterling and rounded to the nearest pound. Prices should exclude any applicable VAT.

>> **Input A:** Potential Suppliers should enter their proposed entry fee and the price for each of their Additional Services (each as defined below). The Qualification Development Fee will automatically be populated when 'Input C' is completed. The scenario based update charge will be automatically populated when 'Input D' is completed. Potential Suppliers submitting a Tender for multiple Lots should note the requirement to apply the multi-lot discount to the entry fee at Contract Award stage, should the Potential Supplier be awarded multiple lots. The discount to the entry fee will be applied as described in paragraph 5.16 of the ITT.

>> **Input B:** In the 'Personnel Costs' section, Potential Suppliers should enter a daily rate (for a 7 hour working day) of each type / grade of individual who may be involved in work on the refresh of, and updates to, the Technical Qualification (TQ), together with their grade or level where applicable to their role and whether they are an internal (i.e. employed) or external resource. Individual roles should be entered in the relevant category of Drafting, Consultation / Stakeholder Engagement, or Quality Assurance / Review that best describes the majority of their role in relation to the refresh of / update to the TQ or 'Other' where none of the other listed categories are relevant. Only complete as many lines as needed for the number of roles that will be involved, and leave the remaining lines blank. A blended day rate will automatically be calculated for evaluation purposes only based on the total of all daily rates divided by the number of roles listed. This will form part of the TCV calculation. In the 'Other Costs' section, Potential Suppliers should enter any non personnel related costs which they wish to include in either or both of their development costs or change costs in 'Input C' and 'Input D'. Non personnel related costs should be broken down into different types of cost. Details of each type of costs and the unit cost should be provided. If the unit cost for a non personnel cost is different for development and change, the cost should be entered twice with a different unit cost for each entry (e.g. Software licensing costs - development £x; software licensing costs - change £y). Both the personnel cost and other cost lines entered in 'Input B' will then be available for Potential Suppliers to select from when completing 'Input C' and 'Input D'. Only enter details for personnel and other costs if they are relevant to be able to complete 'Input C' or 'Input D' tabs. For the purpose of this exercise, marketing costs are not to be included. The Rate Card costs may be subject to indexation based increase as set out in the Contract.

>> **Input C:** Potential Suppliers should enter the number of days of input which would be required from each of the listed individual roles to refresh the qualification. The available roles will automatically complete from your entries in 'Input B' (which should therefore be completed before this section). Potential Suppliers should provide the type and estimated frequency of any non personnel related costs that will be incurred to refresh the qualification in the 'Other Costs' section. The available types of non personnel cost will automatically complete from your entries in 'Input B'.

>> **Input D:** Potential Suppliers should enter the number of days of input which would be required from each of the listed roles to complete the relevant change to the TQ as described in the relevant scenario. The available roles will automatically complete from your entries in 'Input B' (which should therefore be completed before this section). Potential Suppliers should provide the estimated frequency of any non personnel related costs that will be incurred in the 'Other Costs' section. The available types of non personnel cost will automatically complete from your entries in 'Input B'.

>> **Total Contract Value:** This is for information and evaluation purposes only, and no cells need to be completed by Potential Suppliers. Please note the figures for estimating the take up of Additional Services (dependent on the Additional Service, 0.1%, 0.5%, 5%, 10% or 20% of TQ students/assessments as applicable, or 40 instances of visits/reviews as applicable) including the anticipated number of assessments, is for evaluation purposes only. The unspecified TQ update charge based on a fixed number of days (20), is also an estimate used for evaluation purposes only. The Total Contract Value will be based on 5 cohorts only (please note that the estimated total contract value provided in the PIN Notice is based on 5 cohorts including the optional 1 + 1 cohort extension which is at the discretion of the Authority).

Fee definitions

1. Qualification Development Fee: A fixed charge for the initial refresh and update of the TQ covering the elements set out in paragraph 10.4 of the Evaluation Guidance. This will be paid in three installments as set out in the Contract. To complete this pricing schedule, Potential Suppliers must fill in tab 'Input C' with the relevant details as described above. The total Qualification Refresh charge, will then be automatically shown on the 'Input A' tab, cell H7, and will be the Qualification Refresh Charge as defined in the Contract.

2. Entry fee: A per student entry fee charged to Providers. This will cover all assessment and support services for the whole TQ. The fee provided here remains fixed throughout the Contract term (noting that in the occasion where a Potential Supplier is awarded more than one lot, the discount to the entry fee described above will be applied) other than inflationary increases in accordance with the Contract. Note that Potential Suppliers may not make any separate charge for Provider approval. Anticipated costs for Provider approval services must be included in other charges or fees in this Pricing Schedule. The entry fee must be inputted directly on the 'Input A' tab.

3. Fees for Additional Services: These are fees charged directly to Providers in relation to the provision of Additional Services from the menu of services that Suppliers must make available to Providers. Each Additional Service must be delivered on request. Each fee provided here should cover one instance of the relevant Additional Service being delivered. The fee provided here is expected to remain fixed throughout the Contract, other than inflationary increases in accordance with the Contract. The Additional Services fees are to be inputted directly on the 'Input A' tab.

4. Fees for Exclusive Changes to the TQ: The Authority will pay the Supplier for making changes to the TQ during the Contract term where these are defined as Exclusive TQ Changes in the Contract. For evaluation purposes, Potential Suppliers must price two TQ change scenarios as described in tab 'Input D'.

For evaluation purposes, the rate card completed in 'Input B' and the detail entered in 'Input D' will be used to calculate the cost of two scenarios, and a cost of an unspecified TQ change as follows:

> The weighted average for the two scenarios is calculated by multiplying the total charges of the 2 scenarios by their relative weighting and adding them together, to represent an average charge for a Exclusive TQ Change. This charge will then be automatically shown on the 'Input A' tab, cell H7. For the purposes of the TCV, this average charge will be multiplied by the estimated number of Exclusive TQ Changes over the Contract term that are similar to the scenarios (i.e. 2).

> The unspecified TQ update charge is calculated using a blended day rate. The blended day rate will be calculated on 'Input B' using the total of all daily rates listed in the rate card divided by the number of roles that are listed. For the purposes of the TCV, an unspecified TQ update charge will then be calculated by multiplying the blended day rate by 20 days. This is for the purposes of evaluation only and neither the blended rate or the unspecified TQ update charge are expected to form the basis for a specific charge to be paid by the Authority.

Schedule 6A

Adaptive Pricing

1. The Review Triggers

1.1 The Parties agree that the Entry Fee, as referred to in Schedule 6, shall be reviewed and may change, in the following two instances:

1.1.1 in or around December 2027, which shall be referred to as the Mid-Term Review; and

1.1.2 in the event that the Authority seeks to extend the Contract in accordance with clause 2.2 and 15.2 of the Contract, in or around December 2029, which shall be referred to as the Extension Review.

2. The Mid Term Review

2.1 On or around December 2027 the Authority shall provide the Supplier with an updated projection of total learner volumes for the five Exclusive Cohorts under the Contract which shall be referred to as the Updated Projection.

2.2 The Updated Projection shall be calculated by the Authority by combining the actual learner volumes for Exclusive Cohorts one and two, as confirmed by the Department to the Authority, with the revised estimates for the remaining three Exclusive cohorts of the Contract, as determined by the Department and confirmed to the Authority.

Circumstances in which an Enhanced Entry Fee is permitted

2.3 Where the Updated Projection is calculated to be at least 15% less than the total learner volume contained in the original tender documents, which shall be referred to as the Initial Projection, the Authority shall determine a revision to the Entry Fee which shall be referred to as the Enhanced Entry Fee and will be in such amount as to enable the Supplier to retain the opportunity to achieve its % profit margin, as set out in Schedule 6, over the life of the original Contract and;

- 2.3.1 the Authority shall notify the Supplier in writing, on or before the 31 December 2027 of the Enhanced Entry Fee;
- 2.3.2 by no later than the end of February in the Academic Year prior to the Academic Year in which the Enhanced Entry Fee may be applied the Supplier shall notify the Authority in writing of its intention to substitute the Entry Fee with the Enhanced Entry Fee, or such other Entry Fee not exceeding the Enhanced Entry Fee, as the case may be;
- 2.3.3 for the avoidance of doubt, any Entry Fee to be adopted by the Supplier pursuant to the provisions of this paragraph 2.3, will also incorporate any adjustments proposed by the Supplier under clause 4.12 of the Contract. The collective adjustments calculated in accordance with this paragraph 2.3 and or clause 4.12 will not exceed the Enhanced Entry Fee.
- 2.3.4 Any Enhanced Entry Fee shall apply for the Cohort for the Academic Year commencing 1 August 2028 and shall continue to apply to the Cohort for the Academic Year commencing 1 August 2028 and the Cohort for the Academic Year commencing 1 August 2028, and may be subject to later adjustments effected by the further application of clause 4.12 of the Contract.

Circumstances in which a Reduced Entry Fee will be required

- 2.4 Where the Updated Projection is calculated to be at least 15% more than the Initial Projection, the Authority shall determine a reduced Entry Fee which shall be referred to as the Reduced Entry Fee which will be in such amount as to enable the Supplier to retain the opportunity to achieve, but not exceed, its % profit margin, as set out in Schedule 6.
 - 2.4.1 The Authority shall notify the Supplier in writing, on or before the 31st December 2027 of the Reduced Entry Fee;
 - 2.4.2 For the avoidance of doubt, the Reduced Entry Fee will also incorporate any adjustments proposed by the Supplier under clause 4.12 of the Contract.
 - 2.4.3 The Reduced Entry Fee shall apply for the Cohort for the Academic Year commencing 1 August 2028 and shall apply to the Cohort for the Academic Year commencing 1 August 2028 and the Cohort for the Academic Year

commencing 1 August 2028, and may be subject to later adjustments effected by the further application of clause 4.12 of the Contract.

3. The Extension Review

3.1 In the event of notification by the Authority to the Supplier of their intention to extend the Contract in accordance with clause 2.2 and 15.2, which shall be referred to as 'the First Extension Period', the Authority shall:

3.1.1 before the end of the final Exclusive Cohort, provide the Supplier with the projection of learners for the Academic Years which fall within the First Extension Period following the end of the fifth Exclusive Cohort, as determined by the Department and confirmed to the Authority, which shall be referred to as the Final Updated Projection;

3.1.2 where the Final Updated Projection is calculated to be at least 15% less than the Updated Projection for the fifth Exclusive Cohort, calculate the Entry Fee applicable to the First Extension which shall be referred to as the Extension Entry Fee, in such a sum which ensures that the Supplier retains the opportunity to achieve its % profit margin, as set out in Schedule 6, during the First Extension Period;

3.1.3 the Authority shall notify the Supplier in writing, on or before the 31st December 2029 of the Extension Entry Fee;

3.1.4 by no later than the end of February in the Academic Year prior to the Academic Year in which the Extension Entry Fee may be applied the Supplier shall notify the Authority in writing of its intention to substitute the Entry Fee with such other Entry Fee not exceeding the Extension Entry Fee, as the case may be;

3.1.5 the Extension Entry Fee shall also incorporate any adjustments to the Entry Fee effected by the application of clause 4.12;

3.1.6 any Extension Entry Fee shall apply for the Cohorts for the Academic Years which fall within the First Extension Period.

- 3.2 In the event that the Authority seeks to extend the Contract beyond the First Extension Period, in accordance with the provisions of clause 2.2 and 15.2 of the Contract, the Extension Entry Fee shall not be amended further save for any adjustments effected by the application of clause 4.12.

Circumstances in which a Reduced Extension Entry Fee will be required

- 3.3 Where the Final Updated Projection is calculated to be at least 15% more than the Updated Projection for the fifth Exclusive Cohort, the Authority shall determine a reduced Entry Fee which shall be referred to as the 'Reduced Extension Entry Fee' which will be in such amount as to enable the Supplier to retain the opportunity to achieve, but not exceed, its % profit margin, as set out in Schedule 6.
- 3.3.1 The Authority shall notify the Supplier in writing, on or before the 31st December 2029 of the Reduced Extension Entry Fee;
- 3.3.2 For the avoidance of doubt, the Reduced Extension Entry Fee will also incorporate any adjustments proposed by the Supplier under clause 4.12 of the Contract.
- 3.3.3 The Reduced Extension Entry Fee shall apply for the Cohorts for the Academic Years which fall in with the First Extension Period, and may be subject to later adjustments effected by the further application of clause 4.12 of the Contract.

4. General

- 4.1 The Authority does not provide any assurance that the Updated Projection will be achieved and the Supplier bears all risks arising from any variance between the Updated Projection, the Final Updated Projection and the actual learner volumes that emerge through the life of the contract.

Schedule 7

Staff (including Key Personnel)

1 Key Personnel

- 1.1 The Supplier shall ensure that the Key Personnel fulfil the Key Roles during the Term. The Annex to this Schedule 7 lists the Key Roles, remit and names of the persons who the Supplier shall appoint to fill those Key Roles at the Effective Date.
- 1.2 The Authority can identify any further roles as being Key Roles and, following agreement on this by the Supplier (such agreement not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed) any relevant person selected to fill those Key Roles (and details of the role itself) shall be included on the list of Key Personnel in the Annex to this Schedule 7.
- 1.3 The Supplier shall not remove or replace any Key Personnel (including when carrying out its obligations under Schedule 12 (*Exit Management*)) unless:
 - 1.3.1 requested to do so by the Authority;
 - 1.3.2 the person concerned resigns, retires or dies or is on maternity or long-term sick leave;
 - 1.3.3 the person's employment or contractual arrangement with the Supplier or a Subcontractor is terminated for material breach of contract by the employee; or
 - 1.3.4 the Supplier obtains Approval (such Approval not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed).
- 1.4 The Supplier shall:
 - 1.4.1 notify the Authority promptly of the absence of any Key Personnel (other than for short-term sickness or holidays of 2 weeks or less, in which case the Supplier shall ensure appropriate temporary cover for that Key Role);
 - 1.4.2 ensure that any Key Role is not vacant for any longer than 10 Working Days;

- 1.4.3 give as much notice as is reasonably practicable of its intention to remove or replace any member of Key Personnel and, except in the cases of death, unexpected ill health or a material breach of the Key Personnel's employment contract, this will mean at least 60 Working Days' notice;
- 1.4.4 ensure that all arrangements for planned changes in Key Personnel provide adequate periods during which incoming and outgoing personnel work together to transfer responsibilities and ensure that such change does not have an adverse impact on the performance of the Services and/or supply of any Products; and
- 1.4.5 ensure that any replacement for a Key Role:
 - (i) has a level of qualifications and experience appropriate to the relevant Key Role; and
 - (ii) is fully competent to carry out the tasks assigned to the Key Personnel whom he or she has replaced.

2 Staff vetting

- 2.1 For the purposes of this paragraph 2, "**Convictions**" means, other than in relation to minor road traffic offences, any previous or pending prosecutions, convictions, cautions and binding-over orders (including any spent convictions as contemplated by section 1(1) of the Rehabilitation of Offenders Act 1974 or any replacement or amendment to that Act).
- 2.2 The Supplier shall ensure that all potential Supplier Staff or persons performing any of the Services during the Term who may reasonably be expected in the course of performing any of the Services under this Contract to have access to or come into contact with Students or vulnerable persons (and/or access to data or information relating to such Students or vulnerable persons) are, to the extent permitted by Law:
 - 2.2.1 questioned concerning their Convictions; and
 - 2.2.2 required to obtain appropriate disclosures from the Disclosure and Barring Service (or other appropriate body) where required by Law,

before the Supplier engages the potential staff or persons in the provision of the Services.

- 2.3 The Supplier shall take all necessary steps to ensure that such potential staff or persons referred to in paragraph 2.2 obtain standard and enhanced disclosures from the Disclosure and Barring Service (or other appropriate body) and shall ensure all such disclosures are kept up to date. The obtaining of such disclosures shall be at the Supplier's cost and expense.
- 2.4 The Supplier shall ensure that no person is employed or otherwise engaged in the provision of the Services without the Authority's prior written consent if:
 - 2.4.1 the person has disclosed any Convictions upon being questioned about their Convictions in accordance with paragraph 2.2.1;
 - 2.4.2 the person is found to have any Convictions following receipt of standard and/or enhanced disclosures from the Disclosure and Barring Service (or other appropriate body) in accordance with paragraph 2.2.2; or
 - 2.4.3 the person fails to obtain standard and/or enhanced disclosures from the Disclosure and Barring Service (or other appropriate body) upon request by the Supplier under paragraph 2.2.2.
- 2.5 In addition to the requirements of paragraphs 2.1 to 2.4, where the Services are or include regulated activities as defined by the Safeguarding Vulnerable Groups Act 2006 the Supplier shall:
 - 2.5.1 comply with all requirements placed on it by the Safeguarding Vulnerable Groups Act 2006;
 - 2.5.2 ensure that it has no reason to believe that any member of Supplier Staff is barred in accordance with the Safeguarding Vulnerable Groups Act 2006; and
 - 2.5.3 ensure that no person is employed or otherwise engaged in the provision of the Services if that person is barred from carrying out, or whose previous conduct or records indicate that they would not be suitable to carry out, any

regulated activities as defined by the Safeguarding Vulnerable Groups Act 2006 or may present a risk to Students or any other person.

- 2.6 The Supplier shall ensure that the Authority is kept advised at all times of any member of the Supplier Staff who, subsequent to their commencement of employment as a member of the Supplier Staff receives a Conviction or whose previous Convictions become known to the Supplier or whose conduct or records indicate that they are not suitable to carry out any regulated activities as defined by the Safeguarding Vulnerable Groups Act 2006 or may present a risk to Students or any other person. The Supplier shall only be entitled to continue to engage or employ such individual with the Authority's written consent and with such safeguards being put in place as the Authority may reasonably request. Should the Authority withhold consent the Supplier shall immediately remove such individual from the Supplier Staff.
- 2.7 The Supplier shall immediately provide to the Authority any information that the Authority reasonably requests to enable the Authority to satisfy itself that the obligations set out in paragraphs 2.1 to 2.6 of this Schedule have been met.
- 2.8 For Supplier Staff appointed following the Effective Date who shall or may have access to IfATE Data, in addition to meeting its obligations under this paragraph 2, the Supplier shall carry out pre-employment screening meeting the HMG Baseline Personnel Security Standard (BPSS) or equivalent in accordance with Schedule 9 (*Data Handling and Security Management*).

Annex to Schedule 7

List of Key Personnel

The content for this Annex is contained in a separate file at;

S7_A1_GEN2W1_OC_List_of_Key_Personnel

Schedule 8

Supply Chain (including approved Subcontractors)

1 Appointment of Key Subcontractors

- 1.1 Where the Supplier wishes to enter into a Key Sub-Contract or replace a Key Subcontractor, it must obtain Approval, such Approval not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed. For these purposes, the Authority may withhold its Approval to the appointment of a Key Subcontractor if it reasonably considers that:
 - 1.1.1 the appointment of a proposed Key Subcontractor may prejudice the provision of the Services and/or the supply of the Products or may be contrary to the interests of the Authority and/or the TQ;
 - 1.1.2 the proposed Key Subcontractor is unreliable and/or has not provided reasonable services to its other customers or clients;
 - 1.1.3 the proposed Key Subcontractor employs unfit persons; or
 - 1.1.4 the proposed Key Subcontractor should be excluded in accordance with clause 15.715.8 (*Ending or extending this Contract*).
- 1.2 The Authority confirms its Approval of the appointment of the Key Subcontractors listed in Annex 1 to this Schedule 8.
- 1.3 Except where the Authority has given its Approval otherwise, the Supplier shall ensure that each Key Sub-Contract shall include:
 - 1.3.1 provisions which will enable the Supplier to discharge its obligations under this Contract;
 - 1.3.2 a right for the Authority to enforce any provisions under the Key Sub-Contract which are capable of conferring a benefit upon the Authority;
 - 1.3.3 a provision enabling the Authority to enforce the Key Sub-contract as if it were the Supplier;
 - 1.3.4 a provision enabling the Supplier to assign, novate or otherwise transfer any of its rights and/or obligations under the Key Sub-Contract to the

Authority or any Replacement Supplier without restriction (including any need to obtain any consent or approval) or payment by the Authority; and

1.3.5 obligations no less onerous on the Key Subcontractor than those imposed on the Supplier under this Contract:

- (i) under clauses 18.1 to 18.9.4 (*Data protection and information*);
- (ii) under clause 20 (*When information can be shared*);
- (iii) in respect of any obligation not to bring the Authority, the Department or the ESFA and/or the T Levels Programme into disrepute and/or otherwise diminish the trust that the public places in the Authority, the Department or the ESFA, as set out in clause 3.1.9 (*How the Services must be supplied*); and
- (iv) in respect of the keeping of records and provision of information (including (as applicable) Management Information) in relation to that part of the Services being provided and/or those Products being supplied under the Key Sub-Contract.

1.4 The Supplier shall, as soon as reasonably practicable following a request by the Authority, provide a copy of any proposed Key Sub-Contract (and/or any Key Sub-Contract which it has entered into) to demonstrate compliance by the Supplier with its obligations under this paragraph 1.

2 Subcontractor information

2.1 If the Authority asks the Supplier for details about Subcontractors, the Supplier must provide details of Subcontractors at all levels of the supply chain including:

- 2.1.1 their name;
- 2.1.2 the scope of their appointment; and
- 2.1.3 the duration of their appointment.

Annex 1 to Schedule 8

Key Subcontractors

The content for this Annex is contained in a separate file at;

S8_A1_GEN2W1_OC_Key_Sub_Contractors

Schedule 9

Data Handling and Security Management

- 1 The Supplier shall maintain Cyber Essentials certification and shall operate an Information Security Management System in relation to the Services that is compliant with ISO 27001 (the International Standard for Information Security Management Systems) or an equivalent standard.
- 2 The Supplier shall have in place and maintain physical security, in line with the requirements outlined in ISO 27002 (the International Standard describing the Code of Practice for Information Security Controls), including entry control mechanisms (e.g. door access) to premises and sensitive areas.
- 3 The Supplier shall have in place and maintain an access control policy and process for the logical access (e.g. identification and authentication) to IT systems to ensure only authorised personnel have access to IfATE Data.
- 4 The Supplier shall have in place and shall maintain procedural, personnel, physical and technical safeguards to protect IfATE Data, including: physical security controls; Good Industry Practice policies and processes; anti-virus and firewalls; security updates and up-to-date patching regimes for anti-virus solutions, operating systems, network devices and application software; user access controls; and the creation and retention of audit logs of system use.
- 5 The Supplier shall carry out and shall maintain records of appropriate technical risk assessments in respect of all aspects of the Supplier's handling of IfATE Data. The Supplier shall provide such records to the Authority on request and shall ensure that such records are capable of demonstrating to the Authority's reasonable satisfaction that appropriate procedures are in place to address any significant risks identified.
- 6 The Supplier shall ensure that IfATE Data is processed and stored in a manner which enables such IfATE Data to be identified and securely deleted when required. The Supplier shall ensure that IfATE Data which is not in electronic form is kept physically separate from the data of the Supplier and any of the Supplier's other customers.
- 7 Any IfATE Data transferred by the Supplier using electronic transfer methods across public space or cyberspace, including mail and courier systems, or third party provider

networks must be encrypted to an encryption standard meeting Transport Layer Security (TLS) 1.2 or later.

- 8 Storage of IfATE Data on any portable devices or media shall be limited to the absolute minimum required to deliver the stated requirement and shall be subject to paragraphs 9 and 10 below.
- 9 Any portable removable media (including pen drives, flash drives, memory sticks, CDs, DVDs, or other devices) which handle, store or process IfATE Data to deliver or support the Services, shall be under the control and configuration management of the Supplier, shall be necessary to deliver the Services and shall be encrypted to the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) 256 or equivalent.
- 10 All portable IT devices (including laptops, tablets, smartphones or other devices, such as smart watches) which handle, store or process IfATE Data to deliver and support the Services, shall be under the control and configuration management of the Supplier, shall be necessary to deliver the Services and shall be full-disk encrypted to the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) 256 or equivalent.
- 11 Whilst in the Supplier's care, all removable media and hardcopy paper documents containing IfATE Data must be handled securely and secured under lock and key when not in use and shall be securely destroyed when no longer required, using either a cross-cut shredder, a professional secure disposal organisation or an equivalent secure disposal method.
- 12 When necessary to hand-carry removable media and/or hardcopy paper documents containing IfATE Data, the media or documents being carried shall be kept under cover and transported in such a way as to ensure that no unauthorised person has either visual or physical access to the material being carried. This paragraph shall apply equally regardless of whether the material is being carried inside or outside of the Supplier's premises.
- 13 The Supplier shall ensure throughout the Term that it is in a position (and is able to demonstrate to the Authority's reasonable satisfaction that it is in a position) to provide a complete copy of all IfATE Data at the Authority's request at any time and on the termination or expiry of the Contract.

- 14 At the end of the Contract or in the event of equipment failure or obsolescence, all IfATE Data, in either hardcopy or electronic format, that is physically held or logically stored on the Supplier's IT infrastructure must be securely sanitised or destroyed and accounted for in a manner that ensures that the relevant data is not retrievable using normally available methods and/or tools and which allows the Supplier to demonstrate its compliance with this paragraph 14 at the Authority's request. Where sanitisation or destruction is not possible for legal, regulatory or technical reasons, then the Supplier shall protect the Authority's information and data until such time that it can be securely cleansed or destroyed.
- 15 Access by Supplier Staff to IfATE Data shall be confined to those individuals who have a "need-to-know" in order to carry out their role and have undergone pre-employment screening appropriate to the nature and sensitivity of the IfATE Data and, for Supplier Staff appointed following the Effective Date, have undergone pre-employment screening which is at least equivalent to the HMG Baseline Personnel Security Standard (BPSS).
- 16 All Supplier Staff who handle IfATE Data must have annual awareness training in protecting information.
- 17 The Supplier shall have in place robust business continuity arrangements and processes including IT disaster recovery plans and procedures to ensure that the delivery of the Services is not adversely affected in the event of an incident (as set out in the Supplier's Business Continuity Plan). An incident shall be defined as any situation that might, or could lead to, a disruption, loss, emergency or crisis to the Services. Upon request from the Authority, the Supplier will provide evidence of the effectiveness of their business continuity arrangements and processes including IT disaster recovery plans and procedures. This should include evidence that the Supplier has tested or exercised these plans within the last 12 months and produced a written report of the outcome, including required actions.
- 18 Any suspected or actual breach of the confidentiality, integrity or availability of IfATE Data being handled in the course of providing the Services, or any non-compliance with security standards pertaining to the Services, shall be investigated immediately and escalated to the Authority. The Supplier shall maintain audit records and event logs in respect of any such security events in accordance with documented retention policies approved by the Authority.

- 19 The Supplier shall ensure that any IT systems and hosting environments that are used to handle, store or process IfATE Data shall be subject to independent penetration testing, to take place within the three month period immediately prior to the start of each Academic Year, to test the security of such systems and hosting environments, by a penetration testing provider that is CHECK, CREST or TIGER scheme approved. The Supplier shall include a summary of the findings of such penetration testing and the details of any necessary remedial work carried out in the annual penetration testing report required under Schedule 2 (*Service Requirements*). In the event of security issues being identified which are ranked as “high” importance or above, the Supplier shall notify the Authority as soon as reasonably possible (and in any event within 2 Working Days), shall promptly remedy such issues, and shall promptly carry out a follow-up remediation test at the Authority’s request.
- 20 The Supplier shall ensure that any consumer-off-the-shelf software used in relation to the IfATE Data or otherwise to deliver the Services is kept up-to-date and subject to mainstream support.
- 21 The Supplier shall procure and implement security patches to address any vulnerabilities in the IT systems used to handle the IfATE Data or to deliver the Services, within a period of time appropriate to the risk the vulnerability presents.
- 22 The Supplier shall not without the prior written agreement of the Authority store any IfATE Data outside of the UK or perform any form of IT management, support or development function from outside the UK. The Supplier shall provide the Authority with full details of any proposal to do so and shall not go ahead with any such proposal without the prior written agreement of the Authority.
- 23 The Supplier shall undergo appropriate security assurance activities as may reasonably be determined by the Authority from time to time and shall support the provision of appropriate evidence of assurance and the production of the necessary security documentation. This will include obtaining any necessary professional security resources required to support the Supplier’s security assurance activities.
- 24 The Supplier shall have in place and maintain a secure system for data exchange sufficient to enable the Supplier to make all required Management Information and Ofqual information returns in relation to the TQ and the Services.

- 25 Unless otherwise agreed in writing by the Authority, the Supplier shall ensure that any of their Subcontractors, third party suppliers or partners (including any Assessor who is self-employed or who provides services to the Supplier through that Assessor's own personal service company) who could potentially access any IfATE Data meet all of the requirements in this Schedule as they apply to the Supplier and shall contractually enforce such requirements onto any such Subcontractors, third party suppliers or partners (including any Assessor who is self-employed or who provides services to the Supplier through that Assessor's own personal service company).

Schedule 10

Business Continuity

The content for this Schedule is contained in a separate file at;

S10_GEN2W1_OC_Business_Continuity

Schedule 11

Change Management

Variation Form

Variation Form / change control note (CCN) No:	Contract:	Effective Date of Variation:
Initiated by: Change requested by [Supplier OR Authority]		
Date of request:		
Period of validity: This Variation Form is valid for acceptance until [DATE].		
Reason for change:		
Description and impact of the change (including to delivery and performance):		
Time limit for Impact Assessment:		
Required amendments to wording of Contract or Schedules:		
Adjustment to Charges resulting from change:		
Supporting or additional information:		
SIGNED ON BEHALF OF THE AUTHORITY	SIGNED ON BEHALF OF THE SUPPLIER	
Signature:	Signature:	
Name:	Name:	
Position:	Position:	
Date:	Date:	

Schedule 12

Exit Management

PART A: GENERAL

1 Exit Plan

- 1.1 The Supplier shall, within two Months after the Effective Date, unless otherwise agreed with the Authority in writing, deliver to the Authority an initial Exit Plan (adopting and updating the form of plan at Annex 1 to this Schedule 12) that:
 - 1.1.1 sets out the Supplier's proposed methodology for achieving an orderly transfer of the Services to the Authority and/or its Replacement Supplier on the expiry or termination of this Contract;
 - 1.1.2 complies with the requirements set out in paragraph 1.3 below; and
 - 1.1.3 is otherwise reasonably satisfactory to the Authority.
- 1.2 The Authority shall consider the initial Exit Plan and shall notify the Supplier of any amendments it believes are necessary. The Parties shall use reasonable endeavours to agree the contents of the Exit Plan. If the Parties are unable to agree the contents of the Exit Plan within 30 Working Days of the Authority requesting any amendments, then such Dispute shall be resolved in accordance with the Dispute Resolution Procedure.
- 1.3 The Exit Plan shall set out, as a minimum:
 - 1.3.1 how the Exit Information will be obtained;
 - 1.3.2 separate mechanisms for dealing with Ordinary Exit, Early Exit and Emergency Exit, with the provisions relating to Early Exit and Emergency Exit prepared on the assumption that the Supplier may be unable to provide the full level of assistance that is required by the provisions relating to Ordinary Exit, and to include in the case of Early Exit and Emergency Exit, provision for the supply by the Supplier of all such reasonable assistance as the Authority shall require to enable the Authority or its sub-contractors to provide the Services;

- 1.3.3 the management structure to be employed during the transfer of the Services in the event of each of an Ordinary Exit, an Early Exit and an Emergency Exit;
- 1.3.4 a detailed description of the transfer processes, including a timetable, applicable in the case of each of an Ordinary Exit, an Early Exit and an Emergency Exit;
- 1.3.5 steps the Supplier will take to mitigate the potential for and/or costs of any redundancies (if applicable) of any individual employed by either the Supplier or any Subcontractor in the provision of the Services in the event of each of an Ordinary Exit, an Early Exit and an Emergency Exit; and
- 1.3.6 without prejudice to the Supplier's obligations elsewhere in this Schedule, the scope of any further termination-related assistance that may reasonably be required by the Authority to achieve an orderly transfer of the Services to the Authority and/or its Replacement Supplier in the case of each of an Ordinary Exit, an Early Exit, and an Emergency Exit.

2 Updates to the Exit Plan

2.1 The Supplier shall review and (if appropriate) update the Exit Plan:

- 2.1.1 following IfATE Approval;
- 2.1.2 at least once every Academic Year;
- 2.1.3 whenever there is a material change to the Services (including any TQ Change); and
- 2.1.4 within 10 Working Days of the service of a Termination Notice,

and consider what changes (if any) are necessary to reflect the current state of the Services and the TQ at the relevant point in time and to ensure that the Exit Plan meets the requirements of this Schedule and is capable of being implemented promptly.

2.2 Following each review required under paragraph 2.1, the Supplier shall submit for the Authority's approval a revised draft of the Exit Plan showing any proposed amendments necessary to ensure the Exit Plan continues to meet the requirements of

this Schedule. The Authority shall consider each such revised draft and shall notify the Supplier of any further amendments it believes are necessary. The Supplier shall incorporate all reasonable amendments requested by the Authority in a further revised draft of the Exit Plan. If the Parties are unable to agree the contents of a revised Exit Plan within 30 Working Days of the Authority requesting any amendments, then such Dispute shall be resolved in accordance with the Dispute Resolution Procedure.

- 2.3 When the revised Exit Plan is agreed, it shall be signed by both Parties, following which it shall supersede any previous versions of the Exit Plan.

3 Provision of Exit Information

- 3.1 The Supplier shall provide to the Authority the Exit Information (as defined in paragraph 3.2 below) in an appropriate documentary form:

3.1.1 within one Month of the date 12 Months prior to the Expiry Date (as extended by any Extension Period);

3.1.2 as soon as reasonably practicable after (and in any event within one Month of) the date of service of a Termination Notice by either Party; and

3.1.3 at the Authority's request on reasonable notice at any point during the Term provided that the Authority shall not make such a request more than twice in any 6 month period.

- 3.2 Subject to paragraph 3.3, the information to be provided under paragraph 3.1 shall include all such information as is reasonably necessary and sufficient to enable the Authority and/or any Replacement Supplier to take over and provide the Services and the TQ following the expiry or termination of this Contract (the "**Exit Information**"), and in particular shall include:

3.2.1 details of all Supplier third party contracts or licences used for the provision of the Services (including any Transferable Contracts) including, where applicable, whether such contracts or licences are used by the Supplier to provide services to other customers of the Supplier, save to the extent these details are subject to an obligation of confidence to a third party that is not part of the Supplier's corporate group;

- 3.2.2 details of all the Intellectual Property Rights used in the provision of the Services or developed as part of the Services;
- 3.2.3 details of any IfATE Data that is in the possession or control of the Supplier or any Subcontractors or that is otherwise used in the provision of the Services;
- 3.2.4 details of any Key Materials and Ancillary Materials;
- 3.2.5 details of any ongoing projects or other work carried out under this Contract; and
- 3.2.6 in respect of all individuals engaged in providing the Services, such information as the Authority may reasonably request (subject, at all times, to any relevant Data Protection Legislation), including in an anonymised format full and accurate details of:
- (i) the total number of such individuals;
 - (ii) details of whether they are employed, self-employed contractors or consultants, agency workers or otherwise;
 - (iii) their dates of commencement of employment or engagement;
 - (iv) their remuneration and other benefits;
 - (v) their other terms and conditions of employment, as applicable (including their relevant contractual notice periods and any other terms relating to termination of employment, redundancy procedures and redundancy payments);
 - (vi) their job titles and job descriptions;
 - (vii) details of any such individuals on long term sickness absence, parental leave, maternity leave, paternity leave or other authorised long-term absence;
 - (viii) any outstanding or potential contractual, statutory or other liabilities in respect of such individuals (including in respect of personal injury claims);

- (ix) details of who reports to each individual and to whom each individual reports; and
 - (x) any collective agreements that apply to them; and
- 3.2.7 any other material or information reasonably requested by the Authority.
- 3.3 The Supplier shall not be required to provide in the Exit Information any information that has already been provided to the Authority as part of the Management Information, unless that information has become outdated and/or inaccurate since it was last provided as part of the Management Information.
- 3.4 Once provided in accordance with paragraph 3.1 above, the Supplier shall provide any updates to the Exit Information to the Authority:
 - 3.4.1 on a Monthly basis (following any Month where there are changes to the Exit Information) following the earliest of the dates referred in to paragraphs 3.1.1 and 3.1.2; and
 - 3.4.2 as soon as reasonably practicable following (and in any case within one Month of) the Authority's reasonable request, provided that the Authority shall not make such a request more than twice in any 6 Month period.
- 3.5 The Exit Information shall be deemed to be Confidential Information. The Authority shall only use the Exit Information for the Exit Purposes as defined in paragraph 4.2 below, and shall ensure that such Exit Information is only disclosed within the Authority to those individuals who need to know the Exit Information for the Exit Purposes. The Authority may disclose the Exit Information to any Replacement Supplier for the Exit Purposes.

4 Provision of assistance on termination or expiry

- 4.1 In connection with any expiry or termination of this Contract for whatever reason, the Parties shall perform their respective obligations as stated in the Exit Plan, and without prejudice to the generality of this obligation:
 - 4.1.1 the Supplier shall provide to the Authority and/or any Replacement Supplier (as applicable) all reasonable assistance requested by the Authority for the transfer of the Services and the TQ from the Supplier to the Authority and/or

the Replacement Supplier (as applicable) with the minimum of disruption and inconvenience to Students and Stakeholders;

4.1.2 the Supplier shall provide the Authority with:

- (i) a complete copy of all Key Materials;
- (ii) a complete copy of any Ancillary Materials that have not previously been provided or that have been updated since they were last provided; and
- (iii) at the Authority's request, further copies of any Ancillary Materials previously provided;

4.1.3 the Supplier shall provide the Authority or, at the Authority's request, any Replacement Supplier, with a copy of all IfATE Data that is in the possession or control of the Supplier or any Subcontractors or that is otherwise used in the provision of the Services;

4.1.4 the Supplier shall provide any additional information reasonably required by the Authority to understand and access any data or information provided by the Supplier; and

4.1.5 at the Authority's request, the Supplier shall enter into a period of parallel running of the Services alongside the running of any Replacement Services and shall use its reasonable endeavours to facilitate a phased transfer of the Services to the Authority and/or any Replacement Supplier (but only where that phased transfer does not impact on the Supplier's ability to deliver the Services that it remains responsible for providing under this Contract).

4.2 Without prejudice to the terms of clause 13 (*Intellectual Property Rights*), the Supplier hereby grants to the Authority a worldwide, royalty free licence (with a right to sublicense to any Replacement Supplier) to use any information, data, software or materials referred to in the Exit Information or provided by the Supplier or its Subcontractors in the performance of the Supplier's obligations under this paragraph 4. The Authority and any Replacement Supplier sub-licensees may only use such information, data, software and materials for such purposes and for such period as is

reasonably necessary to ensure an orderly transfer of the Services to the Authority or a Replacement Supplier that minimises disruption and inconvenience to Students and Stakeholders (“**Exit Purposes**”).

- 4.3 In the event of an Emergency Exit, the Supplier shall grant or procure the grant to the Authority and any Replacement Supplier the right during any Transition Period and on termination of this Contract to access and use the IT systems used by the Supplier (including software and databases) insofar as such access and use is necessary in order to enable an orderly transfer of the Services to the Authority and/or its Replacement Supplier on the termination of this Contract, and the Supplier shall provide such access, information and credentials as are required for the Authority and/or Replacement Supplier to access such systems for such purposes.

5 Transferable Contracts

- 5.1 During the period beginning 6 Months prior to the End Date or following the service of a Termination Notice by either party, the Supplier shall not without the Authority’s prior written consent terminate, enter into or vary:

5.1.1 any Transferable Contract; or

5.1.2 any other Sub-Contract, except to the extent such change does not or will not affect the provision of the Services or the Charges.

- 5.2 On expiry or termination of this Contract for any reason, the Supplier shall at the Authority’s request assign, novate or procure the novation of the Supplier’s interest in the Transferable Contracts to the Authority or a Replacement Supplier.

6 Costs of assistance on termination or expiry

- 6.1 Save in respect of the provision of the Services (for which the Supplier shall continue to be remunerated in accordance with Schedule 6 (*Pricing Schedule*)):

6.1.1 where the Contract is terminated by the Authority as a result of a Supplier Termination Event under clause 15.3.1, or terminated following completion of the OSC T Level TQ Review in accordance with clause 15.3.2, or where the Contract is wrongfully terminated or repudiated by the Supplier, the

Parties' costs of compliance with paragraph 4 shall be borne by the Supplier; and

6.1.2 where the Contract is terminated by the Supplier under clause 15.5 (*Ending or extending this Contract*) or where the Contract is wrongfully terminated or repudiated by the Authority, the Parties' costs of compliance with paragraph 4 shall be borne by the Authority.

6.2 References to "**costs**" in paragraph 6.1 shall be deemed to refer only to direct, reasonable and verifiable costs (which, in the case of the Supplier, shall be calculated in accordance with the Rate Card). Both Parties shall use all reasonable endeavours to mitigate such costs and, to the extent reasonably practicable, each Party shall notify and obtain the consent of the other Party before incurring any costs for which the other Party would be liable under paragraph 6.1.

6.3 Subject to paragraph 6.1, each Party shall bear its own costs of compliance with this Schedule.

7 General

7.1 The Supplier warrants to the Authority that all the information provided under paragraphs 3 and 4 shall conform to the requirements of this Contract or, where there are no such requirements, shall be prepared in accordance with Good Industry Practice.

7.2 Except as otherwise stated in the Exit Plan:

7.2.1 the obligations in paragraphs 4 and 5 shall be in addition to, and not in substitution for, the provision of the Services; and

7.2.2 subject to the continued payment of the Charges in accordance with the terms of this Contract, the Supplier shall continue to provide, and the Authority shall continue to receive, the Services during the Term in accordance with the terms and conditions of this Contract.

PART B: EMPLOYMENT

8 Employment exit provisions

- 8.1 This Contract envisages that subsequent to its commencement, the identity of the provider of the Services (or any part of the Services) may change (whether as a result of termination of this Contract, or part or otherwise) resulting in a transfer of the Services in whole or in part ("**Subsequent Transfer**"). If a Subsequent Transfer is a Relevant Transfer then the Authority or Replacement Supplier will inherit liabilities in respect of the Relevant Employees with effect from the Relevant Transfer Date.
- 8.2 The Supplier shall and shall procure that any Subcontractor shall on receiving notice of termination of this Contract or otherwise, on request from the Authority and at such times as required by TUPE, provide in respect of any person engaged or employed by the Supplier or any Subcontractor in the provision of the Services, the Supplier's Provisional Supplier Personnel List and the Staffing Information together with any additional information required by the Authority, including information as to the application of TUPE to each individual listed on the Supplier's Provisional Supplier Personnel List. The Supplier shall notify the Authority of any material changes to this information as and when they occur.
- 8.3 At least 28 days prior to the Relevant Transfer Date, the Supplier shall and shall procure that any Subcontractor shall prepare and provide to the Authority and/or, at the direction of the Authority, to the Replacement Supplier, the Supplier's Final Supplier Personnel List, which shall be complete and accurate in all material respects. The Supplier's Final Supplier Personnel List shall identify which of the Supplier's and Subcontractor's personnel named are Relevant Employees.
- 8.4 The Authority shall be permitted to use and disclose the Supplier's Provisional Supplier Personnel List, the Supplier's Final Supplier Personnel List and the Staffing Information for informing any tenderer or other prospective Replacement Supplier for any services that are substantially the same type of services as (or any part of) the Services.
- 8.5 The Supplier warrants to the Authority and the Replacement Supplier that the Supplier's Provisional Supplier Personnel List, the Supplier's Final Supplier Personnel List and the Staffing Information ("**TUPE Information**") will be true and accurate in all

material respects and that no persons are employed or engaged in the provision of the Services other than those included on the Supplier's Final Supplier Personnel List.

- 8.6 The Supplier shall and shall procure that any Subcontractor shall ensure at all times that it has the right to provide the TUPE Information under Data Protection Legislation.
- 8.7 Any change to the TUPE Information which would increase the total employment costs of the staff in the 12 months prior to the Expiry Date and/or the period following the date of service of a Termination Notice by either Party, shall not (so far as reasonably practicable) take place without the Authority's prior written consent, unless such changes are required by law. The Supplier shall and shall procure that any Subcontractor shall supply to the Authority full particulars of such proposed changes and the Authority shall be afforded reasonable time to consider them.
- 8.8 In the 12 months prior to the Expiry Date and the period following the date of service of a Termination Notice by either Party, the Supplier shall not and shall procure that any Subcontractor shall not materially increase or decrease the total number of staff listed on the Supplier's Provisional Supplier Personnel List, their remuneration, or make any other change in the terms and conditions of those employees without the Authority's prior written consent.
- 8.9 The Supplier shall be responsible for all remuneration, benefits, entitlements and outgoings in respect of the Supplier's Personnel, including without limitation, all wages, holiday pay, bonuses, commissions, payments of PAYE, National Insurance, pension contributions and otherwise, up to the Relevant Transfer Date.
- 8.10 The Supplier shall indemnify and keep indemnified in full the Authority and at the Authority's request each and every Replacement Supplier against all Employee Liabilities relating to:
- 8.10.1 any person who is or has been employed or engaged by the Supplier or any Subcontractor in connection with the provision of any of the Services;
or
- 8.10.2 any trade union or staff association or employee representative,

arising from or connected with any failure by the Supplier and/or any Subcontractor to comply with any legal obligation, and whether any such claim arises or has its origin before or after the Relevant Transfer Date.

- 8.11 The Authority will and/or shall ensure that any Replacement Supplier will indemnify and keep indemnified in full the Supplier against any liability to the extent only arising from any failure by the Authority and/or any Replacement Supplier to comply with their obligations under TUPE.
- 8.12 The parties shall co-operate to ensure that any requirement to inform and consult with the employees and or employee representatives in relation to any Relevant Transfer as a consequence of a Subsequent Transfer will be fulfilled.
- 8.13 The parties agree that the Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999 shall apply in respect of paragraph 8.2 to paragraph 8.10 to the extent necessary to ensure that any Replacement Supplier shall have the right to enforce the obligations owed to, and indemnities given to, the Replacement Supplier by the Supplier or the Authority in its own right under the Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999.
- 8.14 Despite paragraph 8.13, it is expressly agreed that the parties may by agreement rescind or vary any terms of this Contract without the consent of any other person who has the right to enforce its terms or the term in question despite that such rescission or variation may extinguish or alter that person's entitlement under that right.

Schedule 12: Annex 1 – Exit Plan

The content for this Annex is contained in separate files at;

S12_A1_GEN2W1_OC_Q10.4_Exit_Plan

S12_A1_GEN2W1_OC_Q10.4_Entry_Plan

Schedule 12 Annex 1

Exit Plan

S12_A1_GEN2W1_OC_Q10.4_Exit_Plan

Schedule 12 Annex 1

Entry Plan

S12_A1_GEN2W1_OC_Q10.4_Entry_Plan

Schedule 13

Form of Guarantee

Not Used

Schedule 14

Form of Assignment and Licence

DATED

THE INSTITUTE FOR
APPRENTICESHIPS AND TECHNICAL
EDUCATION

and

[Supplier]

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY
ASSIGNMENT AND LICENCE IN
RELATION TO
THE [xxx] T LEVEL TECHNICAL
QUALIFICATION

***[DN: The highlighted details above are
to be completed at the Contract award
stage]***

THIS ASSIGNMENT AND LICENCE is made on

BETWEEN:

- (1) **THE INSTITUTE FOR APPRENTICESHIPS AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION** of Sanctuary Buildings, 20 Great Smith Street, London SW1P 3BT (“**Authority**”); and
 - (2) **[DN: Insert Supplier name and details at Contract award stage]** (“**Supplier**”),
- each a “**Party**” and together the “**Parties**”.

BACKGROUND TO THIS ASSIGNMENT AND LICENCE

- (A) The Authority and the Supplier have entered into a contract on the date of this Assignment and Licence for the design, development and delivery of the technical education qualification element (“**TQ**”) for the **[DN: Relevant pathway to be inserted at Contract award stage]** T Level (“the **TQ Agreement**”).
- (B) The Supplier has agreed to assign certain intellectual property rights to the Authority, and to licence certain intellectual property rights to the Authority in connection with the TQ. The Authority has agreed to grant a licence back to the Supplier in relation to certain assigned intellectual property rights.
- (C) This Assignment and Licence, together with the TQ Agreement sets out the agreed terms of such assignment and licences.

1 Assignment and Licence start, formation and interpretation

- 1.1 This Assignment and Licence is legally binding from the Effective Date until it ends in accordance with its terms.
- 1.2 In this Assignment and Licence, unless the context otherwise requires, capitalised expressions shall have the meanings set out in this clause 1 or, where no definition is given in this clause 1, Schedule 1 to the TQ Agreement.
- 1.3 If a capitalised expression does not have an interpretation in this clause 1 or Schedule 1 to the TQ Agreement, it shall, in the first instance, be interpreted in accordance with the common interpretation within the relevant market sector where appropriate. Otherwise, it shall be interpreted in accordance with the dictionary meaning.

- 1.4 In this Assignment and Licence, unless the context otherwise requires:
- 1.4.1 the singular includes the plural and vice versa;
 - 1.4.2 reference to a gender includes the other gender and the neuter;
 - 1.4.3 references to a person include an individual, company, body corporate, corporation, unincorporated association, firm, partnership or other legal entity or Crown Body;
 - 1.4.4 references to a legal entity (other than the Supplier) shall include unless otherwise expressly stated any statutory successor to such entity and/or the relevant functions of such entity, and references to the Department shall include, where relevant, the ESFA;
 - 1.4.5 a reference to any Law includes a reference to that Law as amended, extended, consolidated or re-enacted from time to time;
 - 1.4.6 the words “**including**”, “**other**”, “**in particular**”, “**for example**” and similar words shall not limit the generality of the preceding words and shall be construed as if they were immediately followed by the words “**without limitation**”;
 - 1.4.7 references to “**writing**” include typing, printing, lithography, photography, display on a screen, electronic and facsimile transmission and other modes of representing or reproducing words in a visible form, and expressions referring to writing shall be construed accordingly;
 - 1.4.8 references to “**clauses**” and “**Schedules**” are, unless otherwise provided, references to the clauses and schedules of this Assignment and Licence and references in any Schedule to parts, paragraphs, annexes and tables are, unless otherwise provided, references to the parts, paragraphs, annexes and tables of the Schedule in which these references appear;
 - 1.4.9 references to “**paragraphs**” are, unless otherwise provided, references to the paragraph of the appropriate Schedules unless otherwise provided; and

1.4.10 the headings in this Assignment and Licence are for ease of reference only and shall not affect the interpretation or construction of this Assignment and Licence.

1.5 In this Assignment and Licence, unless the context otherwise requires, the following words shall have the following meanings:

“Ancillary Materials” means all information and materials (other than Key Materials) to which the Authority and/or a Future Supplier would require access for the Portability Purposes, and any other materials which would be required on or to facilitate succession to a Future Supplier in a seamless manner in relation to the TQ offered or Operated by the Supplier.

Ancillary Materials shall include, without limitation:

- (a) Student results including grades;
- (b) statistical analysis for grading (excludes the systems supporting the analysis);
- (c) lists of Providers;
- (d) marked Student evidence (with moderation outcomes);
- (e) documentation which provides an overview or analysis of Student performance (including chief examiner and chief moderator reports), which include but are not limited to, examples of student responses to assessment questions and/or tasks as well as narrative explaining why students did well/ less well on individual items/ components/ subcomponents);
- (f) data on Student credits;
- (g) data on Student appeals;
- (h) data on special considerations for Students;
- (i) the Assessment Strategy;
- (j) Student registrations;
- (k) draft materials in preparation for forthcoming assessments;
- (l) the Key Dates Schedule (in respect of forthcoming assessments);

- (m) lists, with contact details, of people contracted by the Supplier to perform or oversee activities which are necessary for the conduct and quality assurance of assessments for the TQ;
- (n) materials from completed assessments, such as completed Students' examination answer booklets; and
- (o) TQ Live Assessment Materials

"Approval" has the same meaning as in the TQ Agreement;

"Assigned Rights" means the Intellectual Property Rights in the Key Materials;

"Authority Authorised Representative" has the same meaning as in the TQ Agreement;

"Background IPR" means any IPR owned by a Party prior to the Effective Date or created or developed by a Party otherwise than in the provision of the Services or under or in connection with the TQ Agreement, but does not include IPR in Key Materials;

"Beneficiary" means a Party having (or claiming to have) the benefit of an indemnity under this Assignment and Licence;

"Claim" means any claim for which it appears that a Beneficiary is, or may become, entitled to indemnification under this Assignment and Licence;

"Continuing Activities" means activities of the Supplier under the TQ Agreement which continue following the end of the second Academic Year for the final Exclusive Cohort (each as defined in the TQ Agreement) in relation to the TQ as offered by the Supplier, such as retakes, appeals, and any ongoing records management contracted to the Supplier;

"Default" means any breach of the obligations of the Supplier (including abandonment of the Assignment and Licence in breach of its terms) or any other default (including material default), act, omission, negligence or statement of the Supplier, of its Subcontractors or any Supplier Staff howsoever arising in connection with or in relation to the subject-matter of this Assignment and Licence and in respect of which the Supplier is liable to the Authority;

"Deliverables" means all information and data the Supplier creates, identifies for use, or uses as part of or for the Operation of the TQ, including Products and Management Information;

“Dispute” means any claim, dispute or difference which arises out of or in connection with this Assignment and Licence or in connection with the negotiation, existence, legal validity, enforceability or termination of this Assignment and Licence, whether the alleged liability shall arise under English law or under the law of some other country and regardless of whether a particular cause of action may successfully be brought in the English courts;

“Effective Date” means the date on which the last Party to sign has signed this Assignment and Licence;

“Final Approval Milestone” has the meaning given in the TQ Agreement;

“Future Supplier” means any Awarding Organisation appointed, at any point in the future and including any Replacement Supplier, to operate one or more T Level technical education qualifications by or at the direction of the Authority from time to time, and where the Authority is operating a T Level technical education qualification, shall also include the Authority;

“Indemnifier” means a Party from whom an indemnity is sought under this Assignment and Licence;

“Insolvency Event” means:

- (a) in respect of a company:
 - (i) a proposal is made for a voluntary arrangement within Part I of the Insolvency Act 1986 or of any other composition scheme or arrangement with, or assignment for the benefit of, its creditors; or
 - (ii) a shareholders' meeting is convened for the purpose of considering a resolution that it be wound up or a resolution for its winding-up is passed (other than as part of, and exclusively for the purpose of, a bona fide reconstruction or amalgamation); or
 - (iii) a petition is presented for its winding up (which is not dismissed within fourteen (14) Working Days of its service) or an application is made for the appointment of a provisional liquidator or a creditors' meeting is convened pursuant to section 98 of the Insolvency Act 1986; or

- (iv) a receiver, administrative receiver or similar officer is appointed over the whole or any part of its business or assets; or
 - (v) an application order is made either for the appointment of an administrator or for an administration order, an administrator is appointed, or notice of intention to appoint an administrator is given; or
 - (vi) it is or becomes insolvent within the meaning of section 123 of the Insolvency Act 1986; or
 - (vii) being a “**small company**” within the meaning of section 382(3) of the Companies Act 2006, a moratorium comes into force pursuant to Schedule A1 of the Insolvency Act 1986; or
- (b) where the person is an individual or partnership, any event analogous to those listed in limbs (a) (i) to (vii) (inclusive) occurs in relation to that individual or partnership; or
 - (c) any event analogous to those listed in limbs (a) (i) to (vii) (inclusive) occurs under the law of any other jurisdiction;

“Intellectual Property Rights” or “IPR” means:

- (a) copyright, rights related to or affording protection similar to copyright, rights in databases, patents and rights in inventions, semi-conductor topography rights, trade marks, rights in internet domain names and website addresses and other rights in trade or business names, goodwill, designs, Know-How, trade secrets and other rights in Confidential Information;
- (b) applications for registration, and the right to apply for registration, for any of the rights listed at (a) that are capable of being registered in any country or jurisdiction; and
- (c) all other rights having equivalent or similar effect in any country or jurisdiction;

“IPR Claim” means any claim of infringement or alleged infringement (including the defence of such infringement or alleged infringement) of any IPR used to provide the Services and/or

supply the Products or otherwise provided and/or licensed by the Supplier (or to which the Supplier has provided access) to the Authority in the fulfilment of its obligations under the TQ Agreement or this Assignment and Licence;

“Key Materials” means materials the IPR in which the Authority reasonably requires ownership of for the Portability Purposes. Examples of where the Authority may reasonably require ownership include because the Authority or a Future Supplier (or, where relevant, a potential Future Supplier) may need to copy or otherwise reproduce such materials (in whole or in part), to supply or communicate the same, or to be able control the use (in whole or in part) of such materials by third parties, or to authorise others to do so.

Key Materials shall include:

- (a) specifications of content for each TQ including core and all specialist components;
- (b) assessment guidelines (for Providers);
- (c) quality assurance requirements (for Providers);
- (d) specimen assessment materials;
- (e) standards exemplification materials;
- (f) supplementary specimen assessment materials
- (g) employer set project guide exemplar responses
- (h) employer set project grade exemplar responses
- (i) updates or redevelopments of specifications of content;
- (j) updates and redevelopments of any Key Materials; and
- (k) any materials equivalent to the above to which a Skilled Future Supplier would reasonably require access for the Portability Purposes.

Key Materials shall not include:

- (1) Support Materials, insofar as they are not part of any of the expressly included items listed above;

- (2) question banks insofar as they are not part of any of the included items listed above and are not developed for the TQ; and
- (3) any systems and platforms used to support the delivery of the TQ, provided that the relevant TQ content or data held in or processed by such systems and/or platforms can be extracted without requiring further processing post-extraction (and the Supplier can demonstrate that they can be so extracted) to enable use of the relevant content and/or data by a Skilled Future Supplier in conjunction with a non-proprietary or generally commercially available system or platform;

“Know-How” means all ideas, concepts, schemes, information, knowledge, techniques, methodology, and anything else in the nature of know-how relating to the Services;

“Law” means any law, subordinate legislation within the meaning of Section 21(1) of the Interpretation Act 1978, bye-law, enforceable right within the meaning of Section 2 of the European Communities Act 1972, regulation, order, regulatory policy, mandatory guidance or code of practice, judgment of a relevant court of law, or directives or requirements with which the Supplier is bound to comply;

“Losses” means all losses, liabilities, damages, costs, expenses (including legal fees), disbursements, costs of investigation, litigation, settlement, judgment, interest and penalties whether arising in contract, tort (including negligence), breach of statutory duty, misrepresentation or otherwise and **“Loss”** shall be interpreted accordingly;

“New IPR” means :

- (a) IPR in items created by the Supplier (or by a third party on behalf of the Supplier) specifically for the purposes of the TQ Agreement and updates and amendments of these items including (but not limited to) database schema; and/or
- (b) IPR in or arising as a result of the performance of the Supplier's obligations under the TQ Agreement and all updates and amendments to the same,

but shall not include any IPR owned by the Supplier prior to the Effective Date;

“Operate” in relation to a qualification means to provide the Services or a material part of the Services, or services replacing the Services or a material part of the Services, or of an equivalent character to the Services or a material part of the Services in relation to any other qualification (whether a T Level technical education qualification or not); and **“Operation”** and other cognate terms shall have a corresponding meaning;

“Party” means the Authority or the Supplier and **“Parties”** means both of them where the context permits;

“Product” has the meaning given in the TQ Agreement;

“Provider” means an organisation that has a grant agreement and/or a contract in place with the ESFA to provide qualifications to Students;

“Replacement Services” means any services which are substantially similar to any of the Services (including the supply of any Products) and which the Authority receives in substitution for any of the Services, whether those services are provided by the Authority internally and/or by any third party;

“Replacement Supplier” has the meaning given in the TQ Agreement;

“Required Insurances” has the meaning given in the TQ Agreement;

“Services” means the services as described in Schedule 2 to the TQ Agreement (*Service Requirements*) including any Additional Services as defined in the TQ Agreement;

“Termination Notice” means a written notice of termination given by one Party to the other, notifying the Party receiving the notice of the intention of the Party giving the notice to terminate this Assignment and Licence on a specified date and setting out the grounds for termination;

“Third Party IPR” means Intellectual Property Rights owned by a third party which is or will be used by the Supplier for the purpose of providing the Services and/or supplying the Products;

“TQ Agreement” has the meaning given in recital A (above);

“Transparent” means that students and employers will regard the TQ delivered by a Future Supplier as materially the same as the TQ delivered and operated by the (existing) Supplier;

“Working Day” means any day other than a Saturday or Sunday or public holiday in England and Wales.

2 Assignment

2.1 Pursuant to and for the consideration set out in the TQ Agreement, the Supplier assigns to the Authority, absolutely with full title guarantee all its right, title and interest in and to all of the Intellectual Property Rights in the Key Materials (which, for the avoidance of doubt, includes the Guide Standard Exemplification Materials) including the right to bring, make, oppose, defend, appeal proceedings, claims or actions and obtain relief (and to retain any damages recovered) in respect of any infringement, or any other cause of action arising from ownership, of any of the Assigned Rights on or after the date of this Assignment and Licence. Such assignment shall take place on the earlier of:

2.1.1 the creation of any relevant materials known to be Key Materials;

2.1.2 the identification by the Supplier of the use of the relevant materials as part of the TQ; and

2.1.3 delivery of the relevant Key Materials to the Authority, or Operation of the TQ by the Supplier.

2.2 With the exception of Guide Standard Exemplification Materials, all Key Materials are relevant course documents for the purposes of section A2D3(4) of the Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009, and on approval of the TQ at the Final Approval Milestone and on any subsequent Approval, to the extent that any copyright or any rights in copyright forming part of the Assigned Rights have not then been assigned to and vested absolutely in the Authority, they shall be transferred to the Authority by operation of statute in accordance with section A2IA of the Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009. Intellectual Property Rights in the Guide Standard Exemplification Materials is assigned to the Authority by virtue of 2.1 above.

3 Licences to the Authority

3.1 The Supplier hereby grants to the Authority (and the Authority shall have, in addition to any retained rights under clause 13.8 of the TQ Agreement) a non-exclusive, perpetual, royalty-free, irrevocable, transferable worldwide licence to use, exploit and sub-license the IPR in the Ancillary Materials and the Supplier's Background IPR and, in respect of any IPR in Key Materials, in each case to the extent that the same are not

at the relevant time vested absolutely in the Authority, as necessary to enable the Authority (and its sub-licensees) to:

- 3.1.1 use the Key Materials and Ancillary Materials in its administration, approval and oversight of the TQ and other T Level technical education qualifications and to make the same available to others (such as Ofqual) to do the same; and
 - 3.1.2 to use the Key Materials and the Ancillary Materials, and for any Future Supplier or potential Future Supplier to use the Key Materials and the Ancillary Materials:
 - (i) for competing or tendering for the delivery and Operation of the TQ and/or any Replacement TQ, during any Transition Period and following expiry or termination of the TQ Agreement; and
 - (ii) to deliver and Operate the TQ and any Replacement TQ, during any Transition Period and following expiry or termination of the TQ Agreement; and
 - 3.1.3 otherwise to receive and use the Services and the Deliverables and allow any Future Supplier to use the Deliverables; and
 - 3.1.4 to sub-license others to exercise the rights set out in this clause 3.1.
- 3.2 The Authority agrees that it shall use any Ancillary Materials which fall solely within element (l) of the definition of Ancillary Materials (being “*lists, with contact details, of people contracted by the Supplier to perform or oversee activities which are necessary for the conduct and quality assurance of assessments for the TQ*”) only for the purposes of planning for or executing an Emergency Exit.

4 Licence to the Supplier

- 4.1 The Authority hereby grants to the Supplier, in respect of the Assigned Rights, a worldwide, royalty free, perpetual and irrevocable non-exclusive licence, with the right to sublicense, to use and exploit the IPR in the Key Materials during and after the Term, but not, save as provided in the TQ Agreement, to use the same as part of a T Level,

such licence being subject to clauses 13.13 and 13.14 of the TQ Agreement (which for these purposes shall survive any termination or expiry of the TQ Agreement).

5 Warranties and representations

5.1 The Supplier warrants and represents (on the Effective Date and on any relevant assignment or grant of licence taking effect) that:

- 5.1.1 it is or will be the sole legal and beneficial owner of, and that it owns all the rights and interests in the Assigned Rights no later than the time for assignment specified in clause 2.1 or when they are assigned in accordance with clause 13.2.1 of the TQ Agreement, save for Assigned Rights other than New IPR, in respect of which it has previously notified the Authority and the Authority has agreed in writing that this warranty shall not apply;
- 5.1.2 where it is not the sole legal and beneficial owner of the Assigned Rights, including the Assigned Rights which are to be used or embodied in any Key Materials, it has established that all owners of such rights consent to their assignment and transfer absolutely to the Authority;
- 5.1.3 it has all the necessary right and title to grant all the licences granted to the Authority under this Assignment and Licence and the TQ Agreement;
- 5.1.4 it has not licensed or assigned any of the Assigned Rights other than pursuant to this Assignment and Licence or the TQ Agreement;
- 5.1.5 the Assigned Rights are free from any security interest, option, mortgage, charge or lien;
- 5.1.6 it is unaware of any infringement or likely infringement of any of the Assigned Rights;
- 5.1.7 as far as it is aware, all the Assigned Rights are valid and subsisting and there are and have been no claims, challenges, disputes or proceedings, pending or threatened, in relation to the ownership, validity or use of any of the Assigned Rights;

- 5.1.8 the use of the Key Materials and Ancillary Materials, and exploitation of the Assigned Rights by the Supplier in the provision of the Services and Deliverables or by the Authority in receiving and using the Services and Deliverables or procuring any Replacement Services or by any Future Supplier in Operating any Replacement Services, will not infringe the rights of any third party; and
- 5.1.9 the Key Materials are its original work and have not been copied wholly or substantially from any other source.

6 Indemnity

- 6.1 Subject to clause 19, if there is an IPR Claim, the Supplier indemnifies the Authority against all losses, damages, costs or expenses (including professional fees and fines) incurred as a result.
- 6.2 If an IPR Claim is made or anticipated, the Supplier must at its own expense and the Authority's sole option, either:
 - 6.2.1 obtain for the Authority the rights in clause 2.1 and 3.1 without infringing any Third Party IPR; or
 - 6.2.2 replace or modify the relevant item with substitutes that do not infringe IPR without adversely affecting the functionality or performance of the Deliverables.

7 Moral rights

- 7.1 The Supplier shall procure written absolute waivers from all authors of the Key Materials and Ancillary Materials in relation to all their moral rights arising under the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 in relation to the Key Materials and Ancillary Materials and, as far as is legally possible, any broadly equivalent rights such authors may have in any territory of the world.

8 Ending or extending the Assignment and Licence

- 8.1 This Assignment and Licence ends if terminated by the Authority for any reason set out in this Assignment and Licence.

8.2 If any of the following events happen, the Authority has the right to immediately terminate this Assignment and Licence or any of the licences granted under this Assignment and Licence by issuing a Termination Notice to the Supplier (in the latter case specifying the relevant licences):

8.2.1 a Default incapable of remedy;

8.2.2 a Default capable of remedy that is not corrected within 30 days; and

8.2.3 anything occurs which entitles the Authority to terminate the TQ Agreement.

9 Claims against third parties

9.1 The Supplier may take any action it considers appropriate or necessary, subject to the Authority's prior written consent, not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed, if there is a breach, other than in connection with the TQ, by a third party of the Authority's rights in any IPR licensed to the Supplier under clause 4, and the Authority agrees to provide all such assistance as the Supplier may reasonably require (subject to meeting the Authority's reasonably agreed costs and expenses and the Supplier hereby indemnifying the Authority in respect of any loss, damage or liability the Authority incurs by reason of any such action).

10 Further assurance

10.1 At the Authority's expense the Supplier shall, and shall use all reasonable endeavours to procure that any necessary third party shall, promptly execute and deliver such documents and perform such acts as may reasonably be required for the purpose of giving full effect to this Assignment and Licence and the TQ Agreement, including:

10.1.1 registration of the Authority as applicant or (as applicable) proprietor of the Assigned Rights; and

10.1.2 assisting the Authority in obtaining, defending and enforcing the Assigned Rights, and assisting with any other proceedings which may be brought by or against the Authority against or by any third party relating to the Assigned Rights.

10.2 The Supplier appoints the Authority to be its attorney in its name and on its behalf to execute documents, use the Supplier's name and do all things which are necessary or

desirable for the Authority to obtain for itself or its nominee the full benefit of this Assignment and Licence.

10.3 This power of attorney is irrevocable and is given by way of security to secure the performance of the Supplier's obligations under this Assignment and Licence and the proprietary interest of the Authority in the Assigned Rights and so long as such obligations of the Supplier remain undischarged, or the Authority has such interest, the power may not be revoked by the Supplier, save with the consent of the Authority.

10.4 Without prejudice to clause 10.2, the Authority may, in any way it thinks fit and in the name and on behalf of the Supplier:

10.4.1 take any action that this Assignment and Licence requires the Supplier to take;

10.4.2 exercise any rights which this Assignment and Licence gives to the Supplier; and

10.4.3 appoint one or more persons to act as substitute attorney(s) for the Supplier and to exercise such of the powers conferred by this power of attorney as the Authority thinks fit and revoke such appointment.

10.5 The Supplier undertakes to ratify and confirm everything that the Authority and any substitute attorney does or arranges or purports to do or arrange in good faith in exercise of any power granted under this clause 10.

11 How much each Party can be held responsible for

11.1 Each Party's total aggregate liability under this Assignment and Licence (whether in tort, contract or otherwise) for each claim or series of connected claims is no more than £1 million.

11.2 No Party is liable to the other for:

11.2.1 any indirect Losses; or

11.2.2 loss of profits, turnover, savings, business opportunities or damage to goodwill (in each case whether direct or indirect).

11.3 The limitation of liability set out in clause 11.1 does not apply to either Party in relation to the following:

11.3.1 its liability for death or personal injury caused by its negligence, or that of its employees, agents or subcontractors;

11.3.2 bribery or fraud or fraudulent misrepresentation by it or its employees; or

11.3.3 any liability that cannot be excluded or permitted by Law.

11.4 Each Party must use all reasonable endeavours to mitigate any Losses which it suffers under or in connection with this Assignment and Licence, including where any such Losses are covered by an indemnity.

11.5 When calculating the Supplier's liability under clause 11.1, Losses covered by Required Insurances will not be taken into consideration.

12 Invalid parts of this Assignment and Licence

12.1 If any part of this Assignment and Licence is prohibited by Law or judged by a court to be unlawful, void or unenforceable, it must be removed from this Assignment and Licence as much as required and rendered ineffective as far as possible without affecting the rest of the Assignment and Licence, or whether it is valid or enforceable.

13 No other terms apply

13.1 Except as otherwise expressly provided in this Assignment and Licence or in the TQ Agreement, the provisions incorporated into this Assignment and Licence are the entire agreement between the Parties. The Assignment and Licence replaces all previous statements and agreements whether written or oral. No other provisions apply.

13.2 Variation of this Assignment and Licence is only effective if agreed in writing and signed by both Parties.

14 Other people's rights in this Assignment and Licence

14.1 No third parties may use the Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act ("CRTPA") to enforce any term of this Assignment and Licence unless stated (referring to CRTPA) in this Assignment and Licence. This does not affect third party rights and remedies that exist independently from CRTPA.

15 Relationships created by this Assignment and Licence

- 15.1 This Assignment and Licence does not create a partnership, joint venture or employment relationship. The Supplier must represent themselves accordingly and ensure others do so.

16 Giving up contract rights

- 16.1 A partial or full waiver or relaxation of the terms of this Assignment and Licence is only valid if it is stated to be a waiver in writing to the other Party.

17 Transferring responsibilities

- 17.1 The Supplier must not assign this Assignment and Licence without Approval.
- 17.2 The Authority can assign, novate or transfer this Assignment and Licence or any part of it to any Crown Body, public or private sector body which performs the functions of the Authority.
- 17.3 The Supplier must enter into a novation agreement in the form that the Authority specifies in order to use its rights under clause 17.2.
- 17.4 The Supplier can terminate this Assignment and Licence if it is novated under clause 17.2 to a private sector body that is experiencing an Insolvency Event.

18 How to communicate about this Assignment and Licence

- 18.1 All notices under this Assignment and Licence must be in writing and are considered effective on the Working Day of delivery as long as delivered before 5:00 pm on a Working Day. Otherwise the notice is effective on the next Working Day. An email is effective when sent unless an error message is received.
- 18.2 Notices to the Authority must be sent to the Authority Authorised Representative's address and email address, and all notices must be copied to the Authority's Head of Commercial Delivery Management (xxx@education.gov.uk) and the Authority's Head of Legal (xxx@education.gov.uk) .
- 18.3 This clause does not apply to the service of legal proceedings or any documents in any legal action, arbitration or dispute resolution.

19 Dealing with claims

- 19.1 If a Beneficiary is notified or otherwise becomes aware of a Claim then it must notify the Indemnifier as soon as reasonably practical and no later than 10 Working Days after such notification or date of first awareness.
- 19.2 At the Indemnifier's cost the Beneficiary must both:
 - 19.2.1 allow the Indemnifier to conduct all negotiations and proceedings to do with a Claim; and
 - 19.2.2 give the Indemnifier reasonable assistance with the Claim if requested.
- 19.3 The Beneficiary must not make admissions about the Claim without the prior written consent of the Indemnifier which cannot be unreasonably withheld or delayed.
- 19.4 The Indemnifier must consider and defend the Claim diligently using competent legal advisors and in a way that does not damage the Beneficiary's reputation.
- 19.5 The Indemnifier must not settle or compromise any Claim without the Beneficiary's prior written consent which it must not unreasonably withhold or delay.
- 19.6 Each Beneficiary must take all reasonable steps to minimise and mitigate any losses that it suffers because of the Claim.
- 19.7 If the Indemnifier pays the Beneficiary money under an indemnity and the Beneficiary later recovers money which is directly related to the Claim, the Beneficiary must immediately repay the Indemnifier the lesser of either:
 - 19.7.1 the sum recovered minus any legitimate amount spent by the Beneficiary when recovering this money; or
 - 19.7.2 the amount the Indemnifier paid the Beneficiary for the Claim.

20 Resolving disputes

- 20.1 If there is a Dispute, the senior representatives of the Parties who have authority to settle the Dispute will, within 28 days of a written request from the other Party, meet in good faith to resolve the Dispute.

- 20.2 If the Dispute is not resolved at that meeting, the Parties can attempt to settle it by mediation using the Centre for Effective Dispute Resolution (“**CEDR**”) Model Mediation Procedure current at the time of the Dispute. If the Parties cannot agree on a mediator, the mediator will be nominated by CEDR. If either Party does not wish to use, or continue to use mediation, or mediation does not resolve the Dispute, the Dispute must be resolved using clauses 20.3 to 20.5.
- 20.3 Unless the Authority refers the Dispute to arbitration using clause 20.4, the Parties irrevocably agree that the courts of England and Wales have the exclusive jurisdiction to:
- 20.3.1 determine the Dispute;
- 20.3.2 grant interim remedies, or any other provisional or protective relief.
- 20.4 The Supplier agrees that the Authority has the exclusive right to refer any Dispute to be finally resolved by arbitration under the London Court of International Arbitration Rules current at the time of the Dispute. There will be only one arbitrator. The seat or legal place of the arbitration will be London and the proceedings will be in English.
- 20.5 The Authority has the right to refer a Dispute to arbitration even if the Supplier has started or has attempted to start court proceedings under clause 20.4, unless the Authority has agreed to the court proceedings or participated in them. Even if court proceedings have started, the Parties must do everything necessary to ensure that the court proceedings are stayed in favour of any arbitration proceedings if they are started under clause 20.4.
- 20.6 The Supplier cannot suspend the performance of this Assignment and Licence during any Dispute.

21 Which law applies

- 21.1 This Assignment and Licence and any issues arising out of, or connected to it, are governed by English law.

ANNEX

IPR Assurance Certificate

This certificate is given pursuant to clause 13.9 of the agreement (“**Contract**”) between the Institute for Apprenticeships and Technical Education (“**Authority**”) and the supplier named below (“**Supplier**”), and the Intellectual Property Assignment and Licence between the Authority and the Supplier (which also forms Schedule 14 of the Contract) (“**Assignment and Licence**”).

Guidance:

When to complete this certificate: This certificate should be completed in respect of each Deliverable (as defined in the Contract) which is made available to the Authority under the Contract, and a completed certificate should be supplied to the Authority with that Deliverable. This includes updates to existing Deliverables.

Purpose of this certificate: This certificate is intended to confirm that the specific Deliverable fully complies with the intellectual property provisions of the Contract. A copy of the certificate will be retained by the Authority as evidence of the intellectual property position.

Supplier Declaration:

We (being the Supplier named below) confirm that the Deliverable(s) supplied together with (or shortly before or after) this certificate, all elements of which are listed in either Table 1 or Table 2 below¹, comply with the intellectual property provisions in the Contract, in particular the applicable warranties set out in clause 5 of the Assignment and Licence.

We confirm that the Deliverable(s) either:

- (i) contain no third party intellectual property rights, or
- (ii) contain third party intellectual property rights and we have obtained the consent of the applicable third party:

- in the case of Key Materials, to their assignment and transfer to the Authority;
and/or

- in the case of Ancillary Materials, to their licence to the Authority,

in each case on the terms and conditions of the Contract and Assignment and Licence.

We confirm that this certificate overrides any statement or copyright notice forming part of the Deliverable(s) which is in any way inconsistent with this certificate. We agree that this certificate does not detract in any way from the rights granted to the Authority in the Contract.

Key Materials

We confirm that the Deliverable(s) set out in Table 1 below, or the elements of the Deliverable(s) set out in Table 1 below, are Key Materials, as defined in the Contract:

¹ If, by exception, the Supplier asserts that the Deliverable includes elements which are neither Key Materials nor Ancillary Materials, this should be notified in writing to the Authority prior to the relevant Deliverable being made available to the Authority.

Table 1

Deliverable	Key Materials
[Set out title / description of the Deliverable]	Set out elements which are Key Materials, or confirm "entire Deliverable"
[insert additional rows if required]	

All intellectual property rights in the Deliverable(s), or elements of the Deliverable(s) listed above in Table 1 as Key Materials, have vested or hereby vest in the Authority pursuant to the Assignment and Licence.

Ancillary Materials

We confirm that the Deliverable(s) set out in Table 2 below, or the elements of the Deliverable set out in Table 2 below are Ancillary Materials, as defined in the Contract:

Table 2

Deliverable	Ancillary Materials
[Set out title / description of the Deliverable]	Set out elements which are Ancillary Materials, or confirm "entire Deliverable"
[insert additional rows if required]	

All intellectual property rights in the Deliverable(s), or elements of the Deliverable(s) listed above in Table 2 as Ancillary Materials, are licensed to the Authority on the terms and conditions of and pursuant to the Assignment and Licence.

Signed for and on behalf of the Supplier:

Name

Position

Date

Signed by

[Supplier]

Director:[Insert/print name]

Signature:

Signed by

THE INSTITUTE FOR APPRENTICESHIPS AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION

Director:[Insert/print name]

Signature:

Schedule 15

Monitoring of Performance

1 Self monitoring

- 1.1 The Supplier shall monitor its performance of the Services (other than the Initial Development Services) and (where applicable) the supply of the Products against each KPI (in the manner set out in paragraph 1.2) and shall deliver to the Authority Authorised Representative the Operational Delivery Report in accordance with paragraph 3 (*Operational Delivery Report and Performance Review Meetings*).
- 1.2 The Supplier shall, in respect of each KPI, apply the applicable Performance Monitoring Methodology to such KPI to assess the Supplier's performance of such relevant KPI during the relevant Performance Monitoring Period.

2 What happens if you don't meet the Service Levels

- 2.1 The Supplier shall at all times provide the Services and (where applicable) supply the Products to meet or exceed the Target Service Level for each KPI.
- 2.2 If, in any Contract Month in which a Performance Monitoring Period for a KPI ends, the Supplier fails to achieve the Target Service Level for that KPI ("**Service Failure**"), the Supplier shall submit to the Authority (as part of the Operational Delivery Report for that Contract Month) for Approval an improvement plan ("**KPI Improvement Plan**") setting out:
- 2.2.1 the reasons for such Service Failure; and
- 2.2.2 what steps the Supplier proposes to take to:
- (i) mitigate the impact of the Service Failure;
 - (ii) rectify the event, matter or circumstance giving rise to the Service Failure (including details of the proposed timings for such rectification); and
 - (iii) prevent the Service Failure from recurring.

2.3 The Authority shall (as soon as reasonably practicable following receipt of the KPI Improvement Plan) either:

2.3.1 confirm to the Supplier that the KPI Improvement Plan is Approved and following receipt of such Approval the Supplier shall:

- (i) carry out and complete all of the actions in accordance with the approved KPI Improvement Plan; and
- (ii) report on its progress against such KPI Improvement Plan in each and every Performance Review Meeting which occurs whilst the Supplier is (or should be, if it was complying with its obligations under this Contract) carrying out and completing the actions in accordance with the KPI Improvement Plan; or

2.3.2 confirm to the Supplier that the Authority is not satisfied with the KPI Improvement Plan and/or that the steps proposed by the Supplier in the KPI Improvement Plan will address the matters referred to in paragraph 2.2.1, in which case the provisions of clause 14.2 (*What may happen if there are issues with your provision of the Services*) shall apply.

2.4 Where:

2.4.1 the Supplier fails to provide a KPI Improvement Plan in accordance with paragraph 2.2; or

2.4.2 following Approval by the Authority of the KPI Improvement Plan in accordance with paragraph 2.3, the Supplier fails to carry out and/or complete the actions in accordance with the KPI Improvement Plan (as Approved),

then such failure shall be deemed to be a Critical Service Failure.

3 Operational Delivery Report and Performance Review Meetings

3.1 Within 5 Working Days after the end of each Contract Month, the Supplier shall deliver to the Authority Authorised Representative the Operational Delivery Report in respect of the performance by the Supplier of the Services (and (where applicable) the supply of the Products) during the Contract Month just ended together with updated versions

(meeting, where applicable, all of the requirements of the relevant Product Description) of the following:

- 3.1.1 the Implementation and Delivery Plan;
 - 3.1.2 the Resource Plan;
 - 3.1.3 the Risk Register;
 - 3.1.4 the Issues Log;
 - 3.1.5 the Assessment Strategy; and
 - 3.1.6 any draft version of the Key Dates Schedule that the Supplier intends shall (if Approved) become the Key Dates Schedule for the purposes of this Contract from time to time.
- 3.2 Within 5 Working Days of receipt by the Authority Authorised Representative of the Operational Delivery Report for the relevant Contract Month, the Parties shall attend a meeting to discuss the content of the relevant Operational Delivery Report (the **“Performance Review Meeting”**) at such location and time (within normal business hours) as the Authority shall reasonably require and such Performance Review Meeting shall:
- 3.2.1 be attended by the Authority Authorised Representative and the Supplier Authorised Representative and/or such other senior representatives of either Party as the Authority Authorised Representative and/or the Supplier Authorised Representative shall reasonably require (having regard to the matters to be discussed at the relevant Performance Review Meeting); and
 - 3.2.2 be fully minuted by the Supplier and the minutes shall be circulated by the Supplier to all attendees at the relevant Performance Review Meeting (and any other recipients agreed at the relevant meeting) as soon as reasonably practicable following the relevant Performance Review Meeting.
- 3.3 The minutes of the preceding Contract Month’s Performance Review Meeting will be agreed and signed by both the Authority Authorised Representative and the Supplier Authorised Representative at or prior to the following Performance Review Meeting.

3.4 Without prejudice to clause 9 (*Record keeping, monitoring and reporting*), the Supplier shall provide to the Authority such additional information and/or documentation as the Authority may reasonably require in order to verify the Supplier's compliance with its obligations under this Contract, including to verify:

3.4.1 whether a Service Failure has occurred; and/or

3.4.2 the level of the performance by the Supplier of the whole or any part of the Services and (where applicable) the supply of the Products,

and the Supplier shall provide such information and/or documentation within such time period as the Authority shall reasonably specify at the time of making the request for such information and/or documentation.

Schedule 15: Annex 1 – Key Performance Indicators

KPI (desired outcome)	Relevant Service Requirements (incl references to the relevant paragraph of Part 1 of the Service Requirements detailing the relevant element of the Services)	Target performance levels	Performance Monitoring Period	Evidence of performance	Measurement methodology
1.The Supplier has in place clear and TQ specific arrangements to approve Eligible Providers and monitor Approved Providers and (i) completes the relevant processes for approval quickly upon application and (ii) carries out the required monitoring	TQ Provider approval and monitoring services – paragraph 3	(i) 100% of applications from Eligible Providers decided within 30 Working Days of receipt of application; and (ii) Supplier has carried out the required monitoring in accordance with the Implementation and Delivery Plan and/or the Assessment Strategy.	Each Contract Month following IfATE Approval	Management Information in relation to: (i) Eligible Providers that have applied for approval and in respect of which a decision has been made; and (ii) details of monitoring undertaken.	Performance measurement will include Eligible Providers new to the Supplier as well as the Supplier's existing Eligible Providers who have applied to have their approval extended to include the TQ.

KPI (desired outcome)	Relevant Service Requirements (incl references to the relevant paragraph of Part 1 of the Service Requirements detailing the relevant element of the Services)	Target performance levels	Performance Monitoring Period	Evidence of performance	Measurement methodology
2. Supplier has ensured that Approved Providers are clear about what they are expected to teach and to what standard of attainment, and about how Students will be assessed	Initial TQ deliverables and development services – paragraph 2 TQ Provider support services – paragraph 4 TQ live assessment design and delivery – paragraph 6	80% of Approved Providers that have responded to the survey, rating at least 4 on a 1-5 scale. The target performance scale will use 2 positive, 2 negative and 1 neutral response. (For example (noting that the exact wording of the descriptors may vary) where 5 = very clear 4 = mostly clear	During the Summer Term each Academic Year from September 2026	The Authority shall undertake or commission a survey of Approved Providers delivering the TQ	Online questionnaire to Approved Providers delivering the TQ in the relevant Academic Year. This survey should achieve a minimum response rate of 20% of those surveyed to be valid

KPI (desired outcome)	Relevant Service Requirements (incl references to the relevant paragraph of Part 1 of the Service Requirements detailing the relevant element of the Services)	Target performance levels	Performance Monitoring Period	Evidence of performance	Measurement methodology
		3 = moderately clear 2 = mostly unclear 1 = not clear at all)			
3.Queries from Eligible Providers and Approved Providers (other than those related to KPI 4 and KPI 11) are satisfactorily resolved in accordance with the Target Service Level	Initial TQ deliverables and development services – paragraph 2 TQ Provider approval and monitoring services – paragraph 3 TQ Provider support services – paragraph 4 Student registration and student entry – paragraph 5 TQ live assessment design and delivery – paragraph 6 TQ Post-Results Services – paragraph 9	Queries raised by letter and other forms of electronic correspondence: 90% resolved within 10 Working Days; remaining 10% resolved within 15 Working Days; and Queries raised through telephone calls: 90% resolved within 2 Working Days; remaining 10% resolved within 10 Working Days	Each Contract Month from the Effective Date	Management Information based on data and information collected from the Supplier's customer management systems referred to in Service Requirement 5 in Part 2 of the Service Requirements. This must include relevant information that closed queries have been satisfactorily resolved.	The required resolution time commences on and from the Working Day on which the relevant query is received by the Supplier Percentage of queries that are resolved in accordance with the applicable Target Service Level

KPI (desired outcome)	Relevant Service Requirements (incl references to the relevant paragraph of Part 1 of the Service Requirements detailing the relevant element of the Services)	Target performance levels	Performance Monitoring Period	Evidence of performance	Measurement methodology
4. Formal complaints made about the Services are satisfactorily resolved (i) in accordance with the timescales set out in the Implementation and Delivery Plan ² or (ii) where complaints are received solely by the Department, ESFA or the Authority, within the timescales reasonably required by the Department, ESFA or the Authority at the time of notifying the Supplier of such complaints	Initial TQ deliverables and development services – paragraph 2 TQ Provider approval and monitoring services – paragraph 3 TQ Provider support services – paragraph 4 Student registration and student entry – paragraph 5 TQ live assessment design and delivery – paragraph 6 TQ Post-Results Services – paragraph 9	100% of formal complaints are resolved within: (i) the relevant timescales detailed in the Implementation and Delivery Plan; or (ii) the timescales specified by the Department, ESFA or the Authority, (as the case may be).	Each Contract Month from the Effective Date	Management Information based on data and information collected from the Supplier's customer management systems referred to in Service Requirement 5 in Part 2 of the Service Requirements. This must include relevant information that complaints have been satisfactorily resolved.	The required resolution time commences on and from the Working Day on which the relevant complaint is received by the Supplier. Percentage of complaints that are satisfactorily resolved within the applicable Target Service Level. Any complaints received solely by the Department, ESFA or the Authority, in relation to the Services, shall be deemed to have been received by the Supplier on the date on which the Supplier is notified of the complaint by the

² The Supplier Response should detail the Supplier's proposals for resolving formal complaints.

KPI (desired outcome)	Relevant Service Requirements (incl references to the relevant paragraph of Part 1 of the Service Requirements detailing the relevant element of the Services)	Target performance levels	Performance Monitoring Period	Evidence of performance	Measurement methodology
					Department, ESFA or the Authority.
5.Approved Providers are satisfied with the quality of the Provider Services	<p>TQ Provider approval and monitoring services – paragraph 3</p> <p>TQ Provider support services – paragraph 4</p> <p>Student registration and student entry – paragraph 5</p> <p>TQ live assessment design and delivery – paragraph 6</p> <p>TQ Post-Results Services – paragraph 9</p>	<p>80% of Approved Providers that have responded to the survey, rating at least 4 on a 1-5 scale.</p> <p>The target performance scale will use 2 positive, 2 negative and 1 neutral response.</p> <p>For example (noting that the exact wording of the descriptors may vary)</p>	During the Summer Term each Academic Year from September 2026	The Authority shall undertake or commission a survey of Approved Providers delivering the TQ	Online questionnaire to Approved Providers delivering the TQ in the relevant Academic Year. This survey should achieve a minimum response rate of 20% of those surveyed to be valid.

KPI (desired outcome)	Relevant Service Requirements (incl references to the relevant paragraph of Part 1 of the Service Requirements detailing the relevant element of the Services)	Target performance levels	Performance Monitoring Period	Evidence of performance	Measurement methodology
		(where 5 = very satisfied 4 = satisfied 3 = neither satisfied nor dissatisfied 2 = dissatisfied 1 = very dissatisfied).			
6.A sufficient number of appropriately qualified and trained Assessors (and Moderators where permitted in accordance with the Approved Assessment Strategy) are available to assess (or Moderate, if applicable) Student assessment evidence when required in accordance with the	TQ live assessment design and delivery – paragraph 6	100% of appropriately qualified and trained Assessors (and Moderators, if applicable) are available in accordance with the Implementation and Delivery Plan and/or the Resource Plan (as the case may be).	Each Contract Month from (and including) September 2026	Management Information in relation to Assessor (and Moderator, if applicable) actual recruitment, training, and retention against the details set out in the Implementation and Delivery Plan and Resource Plan (as the case may be).	Performance will be measured against the number of Assessors (and Moderators, if applicable) that are envisaged as being trained and available as detailed in the Implementation and Delivery Plan and/or the Resource Plan (as the case may be).

KPI (desired outcome)	Relevant Service Requirements (incl references to the relevant paragraph of Part 1 of the Service Requirements detailing the relevant element of the Services)	Target performance levels	Performance Monitoring Period	Evidence of performance	Measurement methodology
Implementation and Delivery and/or the Resource Plan (as the case may be)					
7. The TQ Live Assessment Materials (as defined in the Service Requirements) are high quality and developed in accordance with the Assessment Strategy	TQ live assessment design and delivery – paragraph 6	Full compliance with parts of both the Assessment Strategy and Implementation Plan that relate to the development of the TQ Live Assessment Materials; and TQ Live Assessment Materials are 100% free of errors that could affect clarity about requirements for Students.	Each Contract Month from IfATE Approval	Management Information in relation to: (i) progress against and compliance with the relevant part of the Assessment Strategy and Implementation Plan; and (ii) any errors reported in TQ Live Assessment Materials.	Review of Supplier self-reporting Identification of any reported errors in TQ Live Assessment Materials.

KPI (desired outcome)	Relevant Service Requirements (incl references to the relevant paragraph of Part 1 of the Service Requirements detailing the relevant element of the Services)	Target performance levels	Performance Monitoring Period	Evidence of performance	Measurement methodology
8. Student assessment evidence is accurately assessed and processed for grading and awarding in accordance with the relevant parts of the Assessment Strategy and the Implementation and Delivery Plan	TQ live assessment design and delivery – paragraph 6 TQ Grade awarding – paragraph 7	Assessing of Student assessment evidence is conducted in accordance with the relevant parts of the Assessment Strategy; and 100% of Students' assessments are marked and processed in accordance with the relevant parts of the Implementation and Delivery Plan.	Each Contract Month from September 2026 until the end of the Term	Management Information in relation to compliance with the relevant parts of the Assessment Strategy and the relevant parts of the Implementation and Delivery Plan.	Review of Supplier self-reporting.
9. Grade Standard Exemplification Materials are validated by Employers	TQ live assessment design and delivery – paragraph 6 TQ Grade awarding – paragraph 7	At least 5 Employers in each relevant Occupational	In October in each Academic Year following the first grade awarding but in any event no	Evidence of validation from Employers relevant to the Occupational Specialist Components that validate	Validation means that Employers relevant to the Occupational Specialist Components judge that the Grade

KPI (desired outcome)	Relevant Service Requirements (incl references to the relevant paragraph of Part 1 of the Service Requirements detailing the relevant element of the Services)	Target performance levels	Performance Monitoring Period	Evidence of performance	Measurement methodology
		Specialist Component.	later than from October 2028	<p>the Grade Standard Exemplification Materials.</p> <p>The Supplier may use its existing network of Employers, but it must ensure a turnover of Employers each Academic Year. Employers may take part in validation activity for up to two consecutive Academic Years, after which they must not take part in validation activity for a period of one Academic Year. Suppliers may then repeat this cycle, ensuring that Employers do not take part in validation activity for more than two consecutive Academic Years.</p> <p>For each Occupational Specialist Component, validations are required from at least two new</p>	<p>Standard Exemplification Materials are comparable to the Approved Guide Standard Exemplification Materials.</p> <p>Validation also means that Employers relevant to the Occupational Specialist Components judge that the Grade Standard Exemplification Material on the pass boundary is the type of work Employers would expect to see from an employee, who is of Occupational Entry Competence and that the Grade Standard Exemplification Material on the distinction boundary, is the type of work that exceeds Employer expectations of what they would</p>

KPI (desired outcome)	Relevant Service Requirements (incl references to the relevant paragraph of Part 1 of the Service Requirements detailing the relevant element of the Services)	Target performance levels	Performance Monitoring Period	Evidence of performance	Measurement methodology
				Employers each Academic Year who did not submit evidence of validation in any previous Academic Year.	expect to see from an employee who is of Occupational Entry Competence, as defined within the assessment strategy as distinction. Review by the Authority of the evidence of Validation from Employers.
10. Student assessment results are submitted to the Authority (or its nominee (as applicable)) by the relevant date(s) set out in the Key Dates Schedule	TQ Grade awarding – paragraph 7 TQ Results – paragraph 8	100% of results are submitted to the Authority (or its nominee) by the date(s) set out in the relevant Key Dates Schedule.	Each Contract Month from September 2026 until the end of the Term	Results have been received by the Authority (or its nominee (as applicable)) in the required format.	Receipt of the results by the relevant date(s) in the relevant Key Dates Schedule.
11. Post-Results Services (excluding the issuing of revised assessment results, which is covered by	TQ Post-Results Services – paragraph 9	100% of the Post-Results Services are carried out and completed in accordance with	Each Contract Month from (and including) September	Management Information in relation to compliance with the relevant part of the Assessment Strategy.	Review of self-reporting.

KPI (desired outcome)	Relevant Service Requirements (incl references to the relevant paragraph of Part 1 of the Service Requirements detailing the relevant element of the Services)	Target performance levels	Performance Monitoring Period	Evidence of performance	Measurement methodology
KPI 10) are delivered in accordance with the relevant part of the Assessment Strategy		the relevant part of the Assessment Strategy.	2026 until the end of the Term		
<p>12. Submission to the Authority of:</p> <p>(i) all Management Information in accordance with the requirements of Service Requirement 9 in Part 2 of the Service Requirements; and</p> <p>(ii) updated versions of all required Products in accordance with clause 5.5.1(i) and/or paragraph 3 of Schedule 15 (as the case may be); and</p> <p>(iii) where requested by the Authority, updated versions of all</p>	<p>TQ Provider approval and monitoring services – paragraph 3</p> <p>Student registration and student entry – paragraph 5 Reporting – paragraph 10</p>	<p>100% for timeliness of the submission of all Management Information and all required (including requested) Products and/or other documents including Key Materials and Ancillary Materials; and</p> <p>100% for completeness of all:</p> <p>(i) Management Information; and</p>	Each Contract Month from the Effective Date	<p>Management Information and updated versions of the Products and/or other documents referred to in column one and/ or Key Materials and Ancillary Materials are received by the Authority by the date required by this Contract.</p> <p>Management Information, updated versions of the Products and/or other documents referred to in column one, Key Materials and Ancillary Materials are accurate and complete and cover all relevant information, Data and reports as specified in the Management Information</p>	Review of self-reporting.

KPI (desired outcome)	Relevant Service Requirements (incl references to the relevant paragraph of Part 1 of the Service Requirements detailing the relevant element of the Services)	Target performance levels	Performance Monitoring Period	Evidence of performance	Measurement methodology
requested Products and/or other documents in accordance with clause 5.5.1(ii).		(ii) required Products (including requested Products and/ or Key Materials and Ancillary materials).		and reporting requirements. Updated versions of the Products referred to in column one, Key Materials and Ancillary Materials include all relevant updates.	

Schedule 16

Logos and Trademarks – T Level Trade Mark Licence

1 Interpretation

The definitions and rules of interpretation in this paragraph apply in this T Level Trade Mark Licence, in addition to the definitions and rules of interpretation in Schedule 1 to this Contract.

1.1 Definitions:

“Approved Provider” means an Eligible Provider (as defined in Schedule 1 (*Definitions and Interpretation*) of this Contract) that has been granted Provider Approval (as defined in Schedule 1 (*Definitions and Interpretation*) of this Contract) and in respect of which such Provider Approval has not been revoked pursuant to clause 7.2 of this Contract (*Interaction with Providers*).

“Brand Licensed Material” means any instance of a Brand Licensed Product or Service in material form, including as an electronic copy or any other electronic form, and any promotional or marketing material relating to any Brand Licensed Product or Service;

“Brand Licensed Product or Service” means any products or services listed as such in Appendix 1 (and **“Brand Licensed Products”** and **“Brand Licensed Services”** means such Products or Services respectively;

“Mandatory Marked Material” is material of the type identified in Appendix 1 (and to which the Mark must be applied);

“Mark” means the trade mark(s) set out in Appendix 2, including the listed registrations and applications and any registrations which may be granted pursuant to those applications and the related trade marks, devices and get-ups that may be notified in writing by the Authority to the Supplier from time to time;

“Marked Material” means any Brand Licensed Material or other material in or on which the Mark is used.

2 Grant

- 2.1 The Authority hereby grants to the Supplier a non-exclusive licence to use the Mark on or in relation to the Brand Licensed Products or Services provided or supplied in England, including in connection with the promotion, use and supply of the Brand Licensed Products or Services.
- 2.2 The Supplier may, subject to the prior written approval of the Authority and paragraph 11, sublicense (without the right to further sublicense) each Approved Provider of the TQ to use the Mark on or in relation to the Brand Licensed Products or Services provided or supplied in England, including in connection with the promotion, use and supply of the Brand Licensed Products or Services.
- 2.3 Any use of the Mark in accordance with paragraph 2.1 or 2.2 shall be strictly in accordance with the T Level Branding Guidelines and, when using the Mark, the Supplier shall fully comply with, the T Level Branding Guidelines.
- 2.4 Subject to paragraph 2.2, the Supplier shall have no right to sublicense use of the Mark.

3 Application of the Mark

- 3.1 The Supplier shall use the Mark, in accordance with this Schedule, on all Mandatory Marked Materials.
- 3.2 Subject to clause 13.10 (*Intellectual Property Rights*) of the Contract and paragraph 3.3 below, apart from the Mark, no other trade mark or logo may be affixed or used in a manner in which it may be seen to be used as a trade mark or designation of origin in relation to any Brand Licensed Products or Services or in or on any Brand Licensed Materials.
- 3.3 The Supplier may, subject to the prior written agreement of the Authority, authorise each Approved Provider of the TQ sublicensed in accordance with paragraph 2.2 to use the Approved Provider's name, logos, trademarks and/or other signs which refer to the Approved Provider on Brand Licensed Products or Services or Brand Licensed Materials on the same terms as, and subject to compliance with clauses 13.10 and

13.11 (*Intellectual Property Rights*) of the Contract (and clauses 13.10 and 13.11 shall apply *mutatis mutandis* to such Approved Provider).

- 3.4 The Supplier shall procure that the Mark, when used in or on any Brand Licensed Materials, shall be clearly and reasonably prominently identified as a trade mark of the Authority, in such manner as is set out in the T Level Branding Guidelines, or with any other statement as notified by the Authority to the Supplier.
- 3.5 The Supplier shall comply strictly with the directions of the Authority regarding the form and manner of the application of the Mark, including the directions contained in the T Level Branding Guidelines.
- 3.6 The Supplier shall, on written request from the Authority or as otherwise provided in the T Level Branding Guidelines, provide samples of all proposed Marked Materials.
- 3.7 The Supplier shall not use in its business any other trade mark confusingly similar to the Mark and shall not use the Mark or any word confusingly similar to the Mark as, or as part of, its corporate or trading name.

4 Title, goodwill and registrations

- 4.1 The Supplier acknowledges that the Authority is the owner of the Mark.
- 4.2 Any goodwill derived from the use by the Supplier of the Mark shall accrue to the Authority. The Authority may, at any time, call for a document confirming the assignment of that goodwill and the Supplier shall immediately execute it.
- 4.3 The Supplier shall not do, or omit to do, or permit to be done, any act that will or may weaken, damage or be detrimental to the Mark or the reputation or goodwill associated with the Mark or the Authority, or that may invalidate or jeopardise any registration of the Mark.
- 4.4 The Supplier shall not apply for, or obtain, registration of the Mark in any country for any goods or services.
- 4.5 The Supplier shall not apply for, or obtain, registration of any trade or service mark in any country which consists of, or comprises, or is confusingly similar to, the Mark for any goods or services.

5 Quality control

- 5.1 The Supplier shall comply with the specifications and standards relating to the Brand Licensed Products or Services which are specified in the Contract.
- 5.2 The Supplier shall promptly provide the Authority with copies of all communications relating to the Mark with any regulatory, industry or other authority.
- 5.3 The Supplier shall permit, and shall use its best endeavours to obtain permission for, the Authority at all reasonable times and on reasonable notice to enter any place used for the production, storage or distribution of the Marked Materials to inspect the Marked Materials in relation to compliance with this T Level Trade Mark Licence.
- 5.4 Without prejudice to any other rights of the Authority, in the event that the Authority finds that any sample of Marked Materials does not meet the requirements of this T Level Trade Mark Licence, it may give notice to the Supplier, and the Supplier shall take all reasonable steps to correct any deficiency as soon as reasonably practicable (having regard to constraints of the academic timetable).

6 Marketing, advertising and promotion

- 6.1 The Supplier undertakes to ensure that its advertising, marketing and promotion of Brand Licensed Products or Services shall in no way reduce or diminish the reputation, image and prestige of the Mark.

7 Recordal of licence

- 7.1 The Authority may, at its own cost, record the licence granted to it in paragraph 2 in the relevant registries against any registrations and applications for registration of the Marks.
- 7.2 The Supplier shall, at the Authority's request, execute a formal licence in such form and provide such other assistance as may be required for the purpose of such recordal.

8 Protection of the Mark

- 8.1 The Supplier shall immediately notify the Authority in writing giving full particulars if any of the following matters come to its attention:

- 8.1.1 any actual, suspected or threatened infringement of the Mark;
 - 8.1.2 any actual or threatened claim that the Mark is invalid;
 - 8.1.3 any actual or threatened opposition to the Mark;
 - 8.1.4 any claim made or threatened that use of the Mark infringes the rights of any third party;
 - 8.1.5 any person applies for, or is granted, a registered trade mark by reason of which that person may be, or has been, granted rights which conflict with any of the rights granted to the Supplier under this T Level Trade Mark Licence; or
 - 8.1.6 any other form of attack, charge or claim to which the Mark may be subject.
- 8.2 In respect of any of the matters listed in paragraph 8.1:
- 8.2.1 the Authority shall, in its absolute discretion, decide what action if any to take;
 - 8.2.2 the Authority shall have exclusive control over, and conduct of, all claims and proceedings;
 - 8.2.3 the Supplier shall not make any admissions other than to the Authority and shall provide the Authority with all assistance that it may reasonably require in the conduct of any claims or proceedings; and
 - 8.2.4 the Authority shall bear the cost of any proceedings and shall be entitled to retain all sums recovered in any action for its own account.
- 8.3 The provisions of section 30 of the Trade Marks Act 1994 (or equivalent legislation in any jurisdiction) are expressly excluded.
- 8.4 Nothing in this T Level Trade Mark Licence shall constitute any representation or warranty that:
- 8.4.1 any registration comprised in the Mark is valid;

8.4.2 any application comprised in the Mark shall proceed to grant or, if granted, shall be valid; or

8.4.3 the exercise by the Supplier of rights granted under this T Level Trade Mark Licence will not infringe the rights of any person.

9 Liability, indemnity and insurance

9.1 Nothing in this paragraph shall impose or create any liability of the Supplier to the Authority for use in England of the Mark on or in respect of Mandatory Marked Materials in accordance with the terms of this T Level Trade Mark Licence.

9.2 To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Authority shall not be liable to the Supplier for any costs, expenses, loss or damage (whether direct, indirect or consequential, and whether economic or other loss of profits, business or goodwill) arising from the Supplier's exercise of the rights granted to it under this T Level Trade Mark Licence.

9.3 Save as provided in paragraph 9.1, the Supplier indemnifies the Authority against all Loss to the Authority arising out of or in connection with the Supplier's exercise of its rights granted under this T Level Trade Mark Licence, including any claim made against the Authority for actual or alleged infringement of a third party's intellectual property rights arising out of or in connection therewith, other than where any such Loss and/or claim arises exclusively from the use of the Mark in accordance with this T Level Trade Mark Licence.

10 Additional Supplier obligations

10.1 The Supplier shall:

10.1.1 only make use of the Mark for the purposes authorised in this T Level Trade Mark Licence; and

10.1.2 comply with all regulations and practices in force or use in any territory to safeguard the Authority's rights in the Mark.

10.2 The Supplier shall not, nor directly or indirectly assist any other person to:

- 10.2.1 use the Mark except as permitted under this T Level Trade Mark Licence;
or
 - 10.2.2 do or omit to do anything to diminish the rights of the Authority in the Mark
or impair any registration of the Mark.
- 10.3 The Supplier acknowledges and agrees that the exercise of the licence granted to the Supplier under this T Level Trade Mark Licence is subject to all applicable laws, enactments, regulations and other similar instruments in any territory, and the Supplier understands and agrees that it shall at all times be solely liable and responsible for such due observance and performance.

11 Sub-licensing

- 11.1 The Supplier shall have the right to grant to Approved Providers a sub-licence of any of its rights under this T Level Trade Mark Licence provided that:
- 11.1.1 the Supplier shall ensure that the terms of any sub-licence are in writing and are substantially the same as the terms of this T Level Trade Mark Licence (except that the sub-licensee shall not have the right to sub-license its rights) and the Supplier shall provide the Authority with a copy of the sub-licence on request and the Authority may require that any such sublicense includes the Authority as a party, and that the Authority is entitled to enforce its terms;
 - 11.1.2 all sub-licences granted shall terminate automatically on termination or expiry of this T Level Trade Mark Licence; and
 - 11.1.3 the Supplier shall be liable for all acts and omissions of any sub-licensee in relation to such sub-licence and indemnifies the Authority against all Losses incurred or suffered by the Authority, or for which the Authority may become liable, (whether direct, indirect or consequential and including any economic loss or other loss of profits, business or goodwill) arising out of any act or omission of any sub-licensee in relation to such sub-licence, other than to the extent any such Losses arise exclusively from the use of the Mark in accordance with this T Level Trade Mark Licence.

12 Duration and termination

- 12.1 This T Level Trade Mark Licence shall commence on the Effective Date and shall continue for the Term.
- 12.2 Without affecting any other right or remedy available to it under this T Level Trade Mark Licence or the Contract, the Authority may terminate this T Level Trade Mark Licence in respect of any Brand Licensed Product or Service with immediate effect by giving notice to the Supplier if:
- 12.2.1 the Supplier commits a material breach of any term of this T Level Trade Mark Licence in respect of such Brand Licensed Product or Service which breach is irremediable, or (if such breach is remediable) fails to remedy that breach within a period of 7 days after being notified to do so;
- 12.2.2 the Supplier repeatedly breaches any of the terms of this T Level Trade Mark Licence in respect of relevant Brand Licensed Products or Services or Brand Licensed Materials in such a manner as to reasonably justify the opinion that its conduct is inconsistent with it having the intention or ability to give effect to the terms of this T Level Trade Mark Licence; or
- 12.2.3 the Supplier challenges the validity of the Mark.

For the purposes of paragraph 12.2.1, **material breach** means a breach that is serious in the widest sense or of any of the obligations set out in paragraphs 3, 4.3, 4.4, 4.5, 5, 6.1, 10.1 or 11.1. In deciding whether any breach is material no regard shall be had to whether it occurs by some accident, mishap, mistake or misunderstanding.

13 Consequences of termination

- 13.1 On expiry or termination of this T Level Trade Mark Licence for any reason and subject to any express provisions set out elsewhere in this T Level Trade Mark Licence:
- 13.1.1 all rights and licences granted pursuant to this T Level Trade Mark Licence shall cease;
- 13.1.2 the Supplier shall cease all use of the Mark save as set out in this paragraph 13;

- 13.1.3 the Supplier shall co-operate with the Authority in the cancellation of any licences registered pursuant to this T Level Trade Mark Licence and shall execute such documents and do all acts and things as may be necessary to effect such cancellation;
 - 13.1.4 the Supplier shall promptly deliver up to the Authority (or at the Authority's option, destroy) at the Supplier's expense all copies of promotional material which is Marked Material or otherwise bears any Mark as a designation of origin; and
 - 13.1.5 any provision of this T Level Trade Mark Licence that expressly or by implication is intended to come into or continue in force on or after termination or expiry of this T Level Trade Mark Licence shall remain in full force and effect.
- 13.2 Termination or expiry of this T Level Trade Mark Licence shall not affect any rights, remedies, obligations or liabilities of the parties that have accrued up to the date of termination or expiry, including the right to claim damages in respect of any breach of the T Level Trade Mark Licence which existed at or before the date of termination or expiry.

Schedule 16 Appendix 1

Brand Licensed Products or Services

Those products and services identified as such in the T Level Branding Guidelines.

Mandatory Marked Materials

All Key Materials and such other materials as are identified as such in the T Level Branding Guidelines.

T Level Branding Guidelines

(November 2023)

T Level Branding Guidelines

1 Introduction

- 1.1 T Levels are high-quality technical qualifications for 16 to 19-year olds which are approved and managed by the Institute for Apprenticeships and Technical Education (IfATE). The T Level brand has been devised to ensure that Government, Awarding Organisations, Employers, Suppliers, Providers (schools and colleges), Students, and others involved with the qualification, support and promote T Levels in a positive manner that inspires confidence.
- 1.2 IfATE's T Level Branding Guidelines, including supporting annexes (the 'Guidelines') are essential reference material for all Suppliers responsible for the delivery of the Technical Qualification (TQ) component of the T Level qualification.
- 1.3 For simplicity, the registered trade marks associated with the T Level brand are referred to in the Guidelines as the 'T Level Marks' and are as follows:
 - ❖ The word 'T Level';
 - ❖ The Department for Education's (DfE's) 'T Level' logo (in black);
 - ❖ IfATE's name and accompanying flower logo (in blue and black as detailed within the IfATE brand guide); and
 - ❖ the respective Supplier's corporate name and logo.
- 1.4 These Guidelines set out essential information as to how the T Levels Marks should be used in: a) TQ materials and b) other T Level communications including for marketing, advertising and promotional purposes.
- 1.5 These Guidelines are subject to reasonable development. They adopt many of the general principles which apply in relation to good branding practice, and where they are developed further IfATE intends that they will, in terms of general principles, be similar in many respects to commonly used branding guidelines.

2 General principles for use of the T Level Marks

- 2.1 When using the T Level Marks, Suppliers (and any other authorised users, such as Providers) must comply with these Guidelines (in addition to any other requirements of the TQ Contract and the IfATE brand guide).
- 2.2 The T Level Marks must be used by Suppliers on the front/landing/home page **only** of all Mandatory Marked Materials, key TQ documents and supporting resources (unless otherwise agreed by IfATE), in accordance with and in the form set out at **Annex 1**.
- 2.3 Nothing in these Guidelines is intended to restrict the use of the text mark 'T Level' where that use is necessary to indicate the intended purpose of a product or service and is in accordance with honest practices in industrial or commercial matters. (This does not apply, unless authorised and used in accordance with these Guidelines, to the use of the T Level logo.)
- 2.4 By way of example, use to describe the relevance or purpose of a text book or support materials for a specific technical education qualification forming part of a T Level is generally acceptable, but any such use which is liable to confuse third parties as to whether the relevant T Level is approved, managed or otherwise controlled by a party other than IfATE, or that the text book or support materials are endorsed and/or approved by IfATE would not be acceptable.
- 2.5 The Secretary of State for Education, or IfATE under delegation by the Secretary of State for Education, shall have the exclusive power to issue certificates of award and statements of achievement (and equivalent documents, excluding a breakdown of attainment) within the T Level Programme. It is intended that such documents will include the Supplier's name but not the Supplier's logo.
- 2.6 Suppliers must not issue any document bearing the title or name, or described or represented as, a 'certificate' or 'statement of achievement' or its substantial equivalent to which, or in respect of which, any T Level Mark is applied or used, or otherwise apply the T Level Marks to, or create an association with any T Level or TQ with any document or material bearing the title or name, or described or represented as, a 'certificate' or 'statement of achievement'" or its substantial equivalent.
- 2.7 Suppliers must use the T Level Marks on all *Mandatory Marked Materials* used in the operational delivery of the TQ. The documents classified as *Mandatory Marked Materials* are listed in **Annex 2**.

- 2.8 *Mandatory Marked Materials* should include a descriptive qualification name, as determined and/or mutually agreed by IfATE and the Supplier, in line with the TQ Contract and these Guidelines e.g. [technical qualification] in x [Pathway]”.
- 2.9 Suppliers must ensure that it is clear that any T Level, or qualification associated with a T Level (such as the TQ), is a qualification approved and managed by IfATE. T Level Marks must not be used on any materials which relate to a T Level or TQ which has been wholly or partly superseded, unless the material is equally prominently identified as such.
- 2.10 Suppliers must, on request from IfATE, submit copies of any material where their name or branding, or any other trade marks or branding are used and/or in association with a T Level or a TQ.
- 2.11 Suppliers must not promote that, or give the impression that, any of its other qualifications - similar or equivalent – are linked to the TQ or T Level qualification i.e. other Level 2, 3 or 4 qualifications.

3 Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) and the TQ Contract

- 3.1 Full details of Suppliers’ rights and responsibilities in respect of IPR are set out in the TQ Contract, and Suppliers should pay particularly close attention to clause 13 Intellectual Property Rights; Schedule 14 Form of Assignment and License; and Schedule 16 Logos and Trademarks – T Level Trade Mark Licence.
- 3.2 Providers engaged with the T Level qualification may use the T Level Marks but it is the responsibility of Suppliers to ensure that they comply with these Guidelines and the TQ Contract.
- 3.3 Suppliers should note that the T Level Marks are registered trade marks; any breach could lead to an action for trade mark infringement (as well as other consequences under the TQ Contract).

4 Advertising, marketing and promotion

- 4.1 Suppliers must ensure that any advertising, marketing and promotion products or services i.e. those activities outside the scope of the core TQ delivery component, do not undermine or diminish the reputation, image and prestige of the T Level Marks when used in any such aforementioned activity e.g. media advertising.

- 4.2 Suppliers may use the T Level Marks in relation to *Brand Licensed Products or Services* set out in **Annex 3**, in accordance with (and subject to) the terms of the TQ Contract and these Guidelines.
- 4.3 Suppliers must not give the impression that their visual identity is being used as a distinct brand, trade mark or designation of origin for any materials, including for activity defined as *Brand Licensed Products or Services*.

5 Style, positioning and form of T Level Marks

- 5.1 Suppliers must ensure that, except for the T Level Marks, no other trade marks, logos, banners or graphics are to be presented and/or affixed to any materials which relate to a T Level or TQ.

T Level Marks on TQ Materials

- 5.2 The T Level Marks should be included on the front page only of the TQ materials (whether in paper or digital form) in accordance with and in the form set out at **Annex 1**.
- 5.3 The T Level Marks should be acknowledged on the final page of the TQ materials (whether in paper or digital form) in accordance with and in the form set out at **Annex 1**.

T Level Marks on other T Level communications (including for marketing, advertising and promotional purposes)

Positioning/Layout:

- 5.4 T Level Marks may be represented in the form of a logo or graphic image ("**Logo Mark**"); or as an isolated word mark ("**Isolated Word Mark**"); or as a text or word mark¹ used within relevant text ("**Text Mark**") as described below. There are some common requirements in relation to each type of use (sections 6 to 8 - "No mixing", "Prominence" and "Acknowledgements") and some requirements which differ depending on the form in which Suppliers plan to use the mark (set out below).
- 5.5 Use of the word mark may also be made in oral form. The same principles should, so far as practicable, apply to oral use of any T Level Marks i.e. if appropriate, the respective changes being proposed are applied consistently.
- 5.6 Where it is used otherwise than in text form, the form in which the Supplier reproduces the logo or graphic should conform precisely to the logo and graphic forms designated by IfATE.

¹ Text form includes in spoken text

5.7 **Logo Mark:**

- Suppliers must use the Logo Mark in precisely the form and subject to any requirements set out in **Annex 1**;
- Suppliers must not change the colours, or skew, stretch or angle the logo, or distort, add a border or otherwise alter the logo in any way;
- Suppliers must ensure that the logos are always clearly separate from any other material, and in particular that it has a clear space surrounding the logos, as illustrated, specified or referenced at **Annex 1**.
- Suppliers must not resize the logo, unless resizing is permitted in accordance with these Guidelines.

5.8 **Isolated Word Mark**

- Suppliers must use the fonts and size ranges of font set out in or referenced in these Guidelines and/ or as otherwise specified by IfATE;
- Suppliers must use only the colours and weights set out in or referenced in these Guidelines and/ or as otherwise specified by IfATE;
- Suppliers must not use underlining;
- The words should have initial capitalisation (only) and no other punctuation etc. “T Level” is acceptable; “T LEVEL”, “T level” or T-Level” are not acceptable; and
- Suppliers must not use the Isolated Word Mark as a watermark.

5.9 **Text Mark:**

- Suppliers must use the Text Mark in the same font as the surrounding text; and
- Suppliers must acknowledge its first use in the text as noted under paragraph 5.15 (Acknowledgement) of these Guidelines.

No mixing/combination/background use

- 5.10 Suppliers must ensure that the T Level Marks are always clearly separate from any other trade mark or name used in the same document. In particular:

- Suppliers must not use their trade mark mixed or combined with any other trade mark or name such that they could be seen or understood to be part of a single trade mark. For example, “the Mrs Blogs [Supplier] T Level” would not be acceptable use; and
- Suppliers must not combine a T Level Mark into a single logo or something which might be seen to be or have a unitary character. For example:



- The T Level Mark and a Supplier’s mark should not be combined into a single logo or something which might be seen to be or have a unitary character. For example:



- There should always be a clear separation between the T Level Mark and any other mark used by Suppliers or on any documents, and, when used as a logo or graphic, Suppliers should take account of any requirements for separation set out in these Guidelines.

5.11 Any use of a name given to the qualification element of a T Level (including any use of “TQ” as a reference to part of a T Level) should also only be such that it is always a clearly separate mark or name from any other trade mark or name used in the same document with any other trade mark or trade name.

5.12 Suppliers must not place a T Level Mark against a background colour, pattern or picture except as specified below:

- as set out in or referenced in **Annex 1** or as otherwise agreed in writing by IfATE or specified in these Guidelines; or
- with imagery which is of a purely illustrative character, and does not suggest any other source or business connection, and is appropriate to the context and brand identity, and allows the entire mark to be clearly visible more prominently than such imagery, and complies with any other limitations notified by IfATE in writing from time to time,

and in any event any imagery must be consistent with the overall brand identity and values of the T Level Marks and the T Level Programme, and not be liable to bring the T Level Marks or the T Level Programme into disrepute.

Prominence

- 5.13 Where Suppliers use the T Level Marks on material which carries other branding in conjunction with or in the same part of the material, the T Level Marks should be given at least equal prominence with the other branding. For example:
- it should appear in script of at least the same font size as the script of any Supplier's trade mark, and where Suppliers use a logo covering at least the same overall surface area;
 - the style used for the other mark should not lead to it being more prominent than the style used for the T Level Mark;
 - the colouring used for the other mark should not draw more attention to it than the T Level Mark; and
 - it should appear in at least as prominent a position.
- 5.14 Typically, use of one T Level Mark will not be regarded as 'in conjunction' with another mark when they are in separate distinct parts of the document, including for example, use of a Supplier's letter head (one part) and use of the T Level Mark in the body of the letter (a separate part).

Acknowledgement

- 5.15 Subject to paragraph 5.16 of these Guidelines, where the T Level Marks are used in any document, Suppliers should place in the document reasonably prominently (so that it would reasonably be expected to come to the attention of the reader or addressee of the document) an acknowledgement that IfATE's name and logo are registered trade marks of IfATE. For example:
- where the T Level Mark is used in the title or opening description of the document or in a manner intended to show that the document relates to a T Level or a TQ, by using a referenced footnote acknowledging that 'T Level is a registered trade mark of The Institute for Apprenticeships and Technical Education' or 'Registered trade mark of The Institute for Apprenticeships and Technical Education';

- where it is used in the text of a document, the first time it appears it should include a referenced footnote acknowledging that the '[Mark] is a registered trade mark of The Institute for Apprenticeships and Technical Education' or 'Registered trade mark of The Institute for Apprenticeships and Technical Education';
- in each case the referenced footnote should, where practicable, appear in the same visual field as the use of the T Level Marks, or in other cases, where such notice would otherwise commonly be placed. For example, on the rear of a single page which is printed on both sides, on the rear of the front page of a booklet, or on the rear of the last page of a booklet; and
- where a Supplier's or a Provider's name or branding is also used in the document, the referenced footnote should also make clear that the T Level is a qualification approved and managed by IfATE, and that the Supplier is currently authorised by IfATE to develop and deliver the qualification (and/or that the Provider offers or provides courses for part of the T Level, which is a qualification approved and managed by IfATE), as appropriate.

5.16 Where a reference is made to T Level in any document indirectly (for example with a description which is evidently a reference to a T Level or the TQ) in association with a Supplier (whether using a Supplier's name or otherwise), the document should make clear that the T Level and a TQ is a qualification approved and managed by IfATE.

5.17 No further acknowledgement is necessary where the use of the T Level Marks or a reference to a T Level or TQ is in a document, other than those materials/document listed in **Annex 2** of these Guidelines. To illustrate: such use is in word form (as part of the text²) of the document and would clearly be understood by addressees and readers as being a reference to the T Level or, as appropriate and reference has been to the fact that the TQ is approved and managed by IfATE and it is not being suggested otherwise: it has been made clear that the role of the Supplier is focused on developing and/or delivering the TQ component of the T Level and it has a relationship with IfATE.

Illustrations

The approach may be adjusted sensibly for the particular materials and circumstances of use. For example:

5.18 On promotional documentation intended for Providers, where it might be expected that a high level of prominence would be given to a Supplier's name or branding (for example in large

² including spoken text in the case of spoken material

script), or on explanatory documentation intended for Providers, the use of T Level (and T Level Marks, including text marks) should be given equal prominence. In a referenced footnote should appear on the reverse of the first page (for example with other similar notices, such as copyright notices, but no less prominently than those notices);

- 5.19 For promotional and explanatory documentation aimed at students or employers, the use of T Level should be given equal prominence; and a clear note should appear on the same page in the same visual field that the T Level is a qualification approved and managed by IfATE, and a Supplier's development and delivery of the qualification and use of the mark is under the authority of IfATE;
- 5.20 For assessment or examination papers (for single use) relating to materials for examiners, a reasonably prominent note should appear at the bottom of the first page that the T Level is a qualification approved and managed by IfATE, and a Supplier's development and delivery of the qualification and use of the mark is under the authority of IfATE;
- 5.21 For sample papers which may be re-used, there should in addition be a note that T Level is a registered trade mark of IfATE; and
- 5.22 For any supplementary materials (such as text books and learning aids), other than those materials/ documents listed in Annex 2, there should be a clear reasonably prominent explanation that the material is designed for use with the relevant T Level; including the date of the T Level, and that the T Level is a qualification approved and managed by IfATE, and that the T Level is a registered trade mark of IfATE used by a Supplier (or other source) with the authority of IfATE.

Providers (Schools and Colleges)

- 5.23 Suppliers are responsible for ensuring that:
- each Provider complies with these marking requirements, as they apply to use of a Supplier's name or branding and equally, to any permitted use of the Provider's name or branding in association with the T Level Mark; and
 - any use by a Provider of the T Level Mark is clearly a reference to a T Level approved and managed by IfATE.

6 Inspection and Approval

- 6.1 Suppliers must permit IfATE to inspect on reasonable request and on reasonable notice any materials bearing or intended to bear a T Level Mark, for the purposes of ascertaining compliance with these Guidelines.
- 6.2 Where IfATE determines (acting reasonably) that it appears that there is a non-compliance with these Guidelines, Suppliers must consult with IfATE on how such non-compliance may be remedied, taking into account both the seriousness of the non-compliance, including how the relevant material does not comply, what the potential impact may be (bearing in mind the volumes of material in question and the audience for those materials) and the potential impact of remedial steps, with a view to reaching fair and reasonable consensus on remedial action (which may range from taking steps in relation to future materials to the withdrawal and reissue of current materials).
- 6.3 In the event that no consensus can be reached, the disagreement or difference will be subject to the Dispute Resolution Procedure.

7 Amendments to the Guidelines

- 7.1 IfATE may amend these Guidelines from time to time, in a manner consistent with the general principles (Section 2).
- 7.2 IfATE will notify Suppliers of any changes together with the date on which such amendments are to take effect.
- 7.3 IfATE will take reasonable account of Suppliers' comments or concerns in relation to any amendments and the timetable for implementation, and Suppliers agree to act reasonably to seek a consensus. In the absence of consensus the disagreement or difference may be referred by Suppliers or IfATE to be resolved under the Dispute Resolution Procedure, as set out in Annex 4.

Annex 1 (a): T Level Marks on Mandatory Marked TQ materials

Front page



*to be placed top right within the header

Supplier logo]**

**to be placed bottom right within the footer

Final page

Copyright in this document belongs to, and is used under licence from, the Institute for Apprenticeships and Technical Education, © 20XX.

‘T-LEVELS’ is a registered trade mark of the Department for Education.

‘T Level’ is a registered trade mark of the Institute for Apprenticeships and Technical Education.

‘Institute for Apprenticeships & Technical Education’ and logo are registered trade marks of the Institute for Apprenticeships and Technical Education.

The T Level Technical Qualification is a qualification approved and managed by the Institute for Apprenticeships and Technical Education.

[SUPPLIER] is authorised by the Institute for Apprenticeships and Technical Education to develop and deliver this Technical Qualification.

[‘MARK’] is a registered trade mark of [SUPPLIER].

Annex 1 (b): T Level Marks on Marked TQ materials

Front page

T-LEVELS*

*to be placed top right within the header

[Supplier logo]**

**to be placed bottom right within the footer

Final page

Copyright in this document belongs to, and is used under licence from, [SUPPLIER], © 20XX.

‘T-LEVELS’ is a registered trade mark of the Department for Education.

‘T Level’ is a registered trade mark of the Institute for Apprenticeships and Technical Education.

The T Level Technical Qualification is a qualification approved and managed by the Institute for Apprenticeships and Technical Education.

[SUPPLIER] is authorised by the Institute for Apprenticeships and Technical Education to develop and deliver this Technical Qualification.

[‘MARK’] is a registered trade mark of [SUPPLIER].

Annex 2: Mandatory Marked Materials

Key Materials

- a) specifications of content for each TQ including core and all specialist components;
- b) assessment guidelines (for Providers);
- c) quality assurance requirements (for Providers);
- d) specimen assessment materials;
- e) standards exemplification materials;
- f) updates or redevelopments of specifications of content;
- g) updates and redevelopments of any Key Materials; and
- h) any materials equivalent to the above to which a Skilled Future Supplier would reasonably require access for the Portability Purposes.

Key Materials shall **not** include support Materials, insofar as they are not part of any of the expressly included items listed above;

Ancillary Materials

- a) Assessment Strategy;

Annex 3: Brand Licensed Products and Services

Marketing materials relating to T Levels

Suppliers will be expected to adhere to the form of branding as set out in Annex 1 wherever reasonably practicable.

Annex 4: Dispute Resolution Procedure

Definitions³

“Dispute” means any claim, dispute or difference which arises out of or in connection with these Guidelines or in connection with the existence, legal validity or enforceability of these Guidelines, whether the alleged liability shall arise under English law or under the law of some other country and regardless of whether a particular cause of action may successfully be brought in the English courts.

“Style” means any matter set out in or referred to in paragraph 5 of the Guidelines.

“Dispute Resolution Procedure” means the dispute resolution procedure set out in paragraphs 1.1 to 1.5.

1 Resolving disputes

1.1 Where a Dispute (not being a Dispute arising solely in respect of Style):

1.1.1 arises solely between IfATE and a Supplier, the dispute resolution procedure set out in clause 37 of the Supplier’s Contract shall apply and the provisions of this Dispute Resolution Procedure shall not apply; or

1.1.2 relates to or is in connection with a dispute that is progressing under the Supplier’s Contract, the parties agree to be bound by the decision that is reached in accordance with the dispute resolution procedure set out in clause 37 of the Supplier’s Contract in respect of the dispute under the Supplier’s Contract, provided always that IfATE and/or the Supplier (as the case may be) have taken into account all reasonable comments and/or submissions of any third party who is a party to, or connected with, the Dispute.

1.2 Where the Dispute is one to which the circumstances described in paragraph 1.1 do not apply:

1.2.1 and the Dispute remains unresolved, the relevant parties connected with the Dispute shall procure that nominated senior representatives of each such party who have authority to settle the Dispute will, within 28 days of a written request from another connected party, meet in good faith to resolve the Dispute; and

1.2.2 if the Dispute is not resolved at that meeting, the relevant parties can attempt to settle it by mediation using the Centre for Effective Dispute Resolution (“**CEDR**”) Model Mediation Procedure current at the time of the Dispute. If the relevant parties

cannot agree on a mediator, the mediator with experience in trade mark law will be nominated by CEDR. If a relevant party does not wish to use, or continue to use mediation, or mediation does not resolve the Dispute:

- (i) the Dispute (other than a Dispute relating to Style) must be resolved using paragraphs 1.3 to 1.5; or
- (ii) a Dispute relating to Style must be resolved using paragraph 1.6.

1.3 Unless IfATE refers the Dispute (other than a Dispute relating to Style) to arbitration using paragraph 1.4, the parties irrevocably agree that the courts of England and Wales have the exclusive jurisdiction (other than in relation to a Dispute relating to Style) to:

1.3.1 determine the Dispute; and/or

1.3.2 grant interim remedies, or any other provisional or protective relief.

1.4 The parties agree that IfATE has the exclusive right to refer any Dispute (other than a Dispute relating to Style) to be finally resolved by arbitration under the London Court of International Arbitration Rules current at the time of the Dispute. There will be only one arbitrator. The seat or legal place of the arbitration will be London and the proceedings will be in English.

1.5 IfATE has the right to refer a Dispute (other than a Dispute relating to Style) to arbitration even if a party has started or has attempted to start court proceedings under paragraph 1.3, unless IfATE has agreed to the court proceedings or participated in them. Even if court proceedings have started, the relevant party must do everything necessary to ensure that the court proceedings are stayed in favour of any arbitration proceedings if they are started under paragraph 1.4.

1.6 If the Dispute is one which relates to Style, IfATE's decision will be final.

Schedule 16 Appendix 2

Mark

T Level

Registered trade mark(s) and applications³

Country	Mark	App or regn no	Date of app or regn	Classes	Specification
UK	T Level (word)	UK00003318112	15 June 2018	9, 16, 41	<p>Class 9: Electronic apparatus and instruments for testing, examination and assessment purposes; computer software, hardware and firmware for the provision of examination and assessments including software for operation over computer networks or by remote computer access; all of the aforesaid for use in the provision of education, teaching, training and/or assessment.</p> <p>Class 16: Examination papers; syllabi; diplomas; education, academic and vocational certificates; printed examination regulations; all of the</p>

³ To be updated as required based on trade mark application position at the Effective Date.

					<p>aforesaid for use in the provision of education, teaching, training and/or assessment.</p> <p>Class 41: Issuing of educational awards; awarding of educational certificates; educational assessment services; provision of examination, testing and assessment services; provision of examination, testing and assessment services electronically, by online delivery, by way of the Internet or world wide web; online publication of syllabi, examination papers, assessments; examination services; assessment services; educational certification services; certification in relation to examinations and other forms of assessment; preparation and validation, accreditation, conducting and administration of examinations, assessments and tests; provision of examination papers; information, advisory and consultancy services relating to all of the aforesaid; all of the aforesaid relating to the provision of education, teaching, training and/or assessment.</p>
EU	T Level (word)	017999579	13 December 2018	9, 16, 41	<p>Class 9: Educational, teaching, instruction or research apparatus and instruments; electronic apparatus and instruments for teaching, instruction, training, research, education, testing, examination and assessment purposes; media bearing electronic publications and data; electronic publications; electronic publications (downloadable)</p>

					<p>provided online from a database or the Internet; downloadable text and information provided electronically, by online delivery, by way of the Internet or world wide web; electronic database; audio visual teaching apparatus; films and video films; computer software, hardware and firmware; computer software, hardware and firmware for the provision of teaching, instruction, training, research, education, testing, examination and assessments including software for operation over computer networks or by remote computer access; educational software; all of the aforesaid for use in the provision of education, teaching, training and/or assessment.</p> <p>Class 16: Printed publications; educational publications; printed matter; educational materials; examination papers; syllabi; diplomas; education, academic and vocational certificates; printed examination regulations; books; magazines; publications; textbooks; exercise books and notebooks; catalogues, handbooks and manuals; study guides; instructional or teaching materials; all of the aforesaid for use in the provision of education, teaching, training and/or assessment.</p> <p>Class 41: Education services; teaching services; publication services; educational publication services; publication of printed matter relating to education; issuing of educational awards; awarding of educational</p>
--	--	--	--	--	--

					<p>certificates; electronic publication; publication of printed matter; educational assessment services; provision of training, teaching, academic, education, instruction, examination, testing and assessment services; provision of training, teaching, academic, education, instruction, examination, testing and assessment services electronically, by online delivery, by way of the Internet or world wide web; online publication of electronic texts, books, textbooks, brochures, syllabi, examination papers, assessments; examination services; assessment services; educational certification services; certification in relation to examinations and other forms of assessment, education, training and awards; preparation and validation, accreditation, conducting and administration of examinations, assessments and tests; provision of examination papers; information, advisory and consultancy services relating to all of the aforesaid services; all of the aforesaid relating to the provision of education, teaching, training and/or assessment services.</p>
--	--	--	--	--	--

Schedule 17

Provider Contract requirements

1 Provider Contract

1.1 This Schedule sets out the requirements that Provider Contracts must meet.

1.2 Provider Contracts must:

1.2.1 be in writing, enforceable, and on terms that are fair and reasonable;

1.2.2 set out all the requirements with which the Approved Provider must comply in order to continue to deliver the TQ;

1.2.3 establish a sanctions policy to be applied in the event that the Approved Provider fails to comply with the requirements in the Provider Contract;

1.2.4 require the Approved Provider to:

- (i) take all reasonable steps to ensure that the Supplier is able to comply with its Conditions of Recognition;
- (ii) retain a workforce of appropriate size and competence to undertake the delivery of the TQ as required by the Supplier;
- (iii) have available sufficient managerial and other resources to enable it effectively and efficiently to undertake the delivery of the TQ as required by the Supplier;
- (iv) undertake the delivery of the qualification required by the awarding organisation in accordance with the Equality Act 2010, any Act that was a statutory predecessor to that Act, or any legislation in a jurisdiction other than England which has an equivalent purpose and effect; and
- (v) operate a complaints handling procedure or appeals process for the benefit of Students;

- 1.2.5 where, in accordance with the Approved Assessment Strategy an Approved Provider is permitted to carry out or procure the carrying out of marking of Student assessment evidence, set out details for carrying out Moderation;
- 1.2.6 not materially depart from any relevant industry standards and common education sector practices;
- 1.2.7 be materially consistent across all Approved Providers in respect of the provision of the Provider Services and, in particular, shall not discriminate against any particular types, sizes or geographical locations of Approved Providers in connection with the provision of any Provider Services;
- 1.2.8 include appropriate GDPR provisions: where the Supplier, in fulfilling its obligations under this Contract, is acting as a Processor on behalf of an Approved Provider, the Provider Contract will include provisions to ensure that any personal data (as defined in the GDPR) that is Processed by the Supplier in relation to the Provider Services is Processed in accordance with Data Protection Legislation;
- 1.2.9 be consistent with, and to the extent necessary allow for, any information, document and data sharing requirements contained within this Contract (to include any information, documents and data that must be provided by the Supplier to the Authority and/or any third party and any information, documents and data requested by Ofqual);
- 1.2.10 require the Approved Provider to assist the Supplier in carrying out any reasonable monitoring activities and to assist Ofqual in any investigations made for the purposes of performing its functions;
- 1.2.11 allow Approved Providers to purchase Provider Services on an “as and when needed” basis without any minimum or maximum volume commitments (including in relation to the number of Students);
- 1.2.12 require Approved Providers to register all Students on a TQ by the end of November or within such other timescales as are required by the Key Dates Schedule for the relevant Academic Year and pay that part of the Fees referred to in limb (a) of the definition of Fees within 30 days of such

registration and provide that, if a Student terminates their study of the TQ before the end of the following January in the same Academic Year, the Supplier must provide a full refund of such Fees (relating to such Student) to the Approved Provider (for the avoidance of doubt, if the Student terminates their study of the TQ after the end of the following January in the same Academic Year, the Supplier is not obliged to give a refund);

- 1.2.13 include detailed provisions relating to the Approved Provider's role in quality assurance, such provisions shall give effect to the requirements of the Approved Provider's Quality Assurance Process;
- 1.2.14 require Approved Providers to provide advice and guidance to Students (including any Student no longer enrolled with the Approved Provider) in relation to making enquiries about results (and any further steps that may be taken following such an enquiry (including those contemplated by the Additional Services)) and where such Student reasonably requests the Approved Provider (whether directly or indirectly) to request the provision of an Additional Service, require the Approved Provider to request the provision of such Additional Service from the Supplier;
- 1.2.15 require Approved Providers to seek written approval from the Supplier before permitting a third party (for example training providers or satellite centres) to deliver any part of the TQ, including its assessments, and requires the Approved Providers to agree in writing to the Supplier's requirements before the Supplier approves the use of a third party;
- 1.2.16 place responsibility on the Approved Provider to monitor whether any third party involved with the delivery and assessment of the TQ on its behalf has appropriate capacity and capability; and
- 1.2.17 specify a process to be followed in any withdrawal of the Approved Provider (whether voluntary or not) from its role in delivering the TQ and require Approved Providers to take all reasonable steps to protect the interests of Students in the case of such a withdrawal.

1.3 Provider Contracts must not:

- 1.3.1 include terms in connection with Provider Services that are not strictly necessary for the provision of the relevant Provider Services and/or which are materially inconsistent with any of the Supplier's obligations under this Contract;
- 1.3.2 make the provision of the Provider Services contingent on the take up of any further qualifications or services by the Approved Provider;
- 1.3.3 require the Approved Provider to make any payments other than the Fees (e.g. for the avoidance of doubt, Provider Contracts shall not require any fees to be paid by the Approved Provider (or an Eligible Provider) for Provider Approval in relation to a TQ);
- 1.3.4 offer any discounts to the Fees; and/or
- 1.3.5 include provisions that are materially more onerous than any comparable provisions in this Contract.

1.4 The Supplier shall not offer to any Approved Provider any rebate, discount or other incentive in relation to services outside the Provider Services (whether or not in the Provider Contract) which is contingent on or linked to the Approved Provider entering into the Provider Contract and/or registering Students for the TQ.

Schedule 18

Commercially Sensitive Information

The content for this Schedule is contained in a separate file at;

S18_GEN2W1_OC_Commercially_Sensitive_Confidential_Information

Attachment 9: Commercially Sensitive Information and/or Confidential Information

- 1 All the information that the Authority supplies (to the Potential Supplier or otherwise) as part of this Procurement shall be treated as confidential information under paragraph 12 of the Terms of Participation.
- 2
 - a. During this Procurement, the Potential Supplier considers that the type of information listed in Table 1 below contained in its response to the ITT is 'Confidential Information'.
 - b. From the Effective Date of the Contract, the Potential Supplier considers that the type of information listed in Table 3 below contained in its response to the ITT shall be 'Confidential Information'.
- 3
 - a. During this Procurement, the Potential Supplier considers that the type of information listed in Table 2 below contained in its response to the ITT is not Confidential Information but is 'Commercially Sensitive Information'.
 - b. From the Effective Date of the Contract, the Potential Supplier considers that the type of information listed in Table 4 below contained in its response to the ITT is not Confidential Information but is 'Commercially Sensitive Information'.
- 4 The Potential Supplier must complete each Table fully and give full, valid and justifiable reasons for including any information in the Tables below. The Authority cannot accept any broad attempt to class all, or any broad categories of, information as either 'Confidential Information' or 'Commercially Sensitive Information' and may discard a Potential Supplier's attempts to classify information in this way.
- 5 The information supplied in this Attachment 9 shall be used to populate Schedule 18 of the Contract.
- 6 Potential Suppliers are reminded that notwithstanding the inclusion of any information in Table 1, Table 2, Table 3 and/or Table 4 below, the Authority shall be responsible for determining in its absolute discretion whether any information is exempt from disclosure in accordance with FoIA and/or the EIRs.

Schedule 19

Required Insurances

PART A: THIRD PARTY PUBLIC AND PRODUCTS LIABILITY INSURANCE

1 Insured

The Supplier

2 Interest

To indemnify the Insured in respect of all sums which the Insured shall become legally liable to pay as damages, including claimant's costs and expenses, in respect of accidental:

2.1 death or bodily injury to or sickness, illness or disease contracted by any person; and

2.2 loss of or damage to property,

happening during the period of insurance (as specified in paragraph 5) and arising out of or in connection with the provision of the Services under this Contract.

3 Limit of indemnity

Not less than £5,000,000 in respect of any one occurrence, the number of occurrences being unlimited, but £5,000,000 in the aggregate per annum in respect of products and pollution liability.

4 Territorial limits

United Kingdom.

5 Period of insurance

From the Effective Date and renewable on an annual basis unless agreed otherwise by the Authority in writing for the Term.

6 Cover features and extensions

Indemnity to principals clause.

7 Principal exclusions

- 7.1 War and related perils.
- 7.2 Nuclear and radioactive risks.
- 7.3 Liability for death, illness, disease or bodily injury sustained by employees of the Insured during the course of their employment.
- 7.4 Liability arising out of the use of mechanically propelled vehicles whilst required to be compulsorily insured by applicable Law in respect of such vehicles.
- 7.5 Liability in respect of predetermined penalties or liquidated damages imposed under any contract entered into by the Insured.
- 7.6 Liability arising out of technical or professional advice other than in respect of death or bodily injury to persons or damage to third party property.
- 7.7 Liability arising from the ownership, possession or use of any aircraft or marine vessel.
- 7.8 Liability arising from seepage and pollution unless caused by a sudden, unintended and unexpected occurrence.

8 Maximum deductible threshold

Not to exceed £10,000 for each and every third party property damage claim (personal injury claims to be paid in full).

PART B: PROFESSIONAL INDEMNITY INSURANCE

1 Insured

The Supplier

2 Interest

To indemnify the Insured for all sums which the Insured shall become legally liable to pay (including claimants' costs and expenses) as a result of claims first made against the Insured during the period of insurance (as specified in paragraph 13) by reason of any negligent act, error and/or omission arising from or in connection with the provision of the Services.

3 Limit of indemnity

Not less than £5,000,000 in respect of any one claim and in the aggregate per annum, exclusive of defence costs which are payable in addition.

4 Territorial Limits

United Kingdom

5 Period of insurance

From the Effective Date and renewable on an annual basis unless agreed otherwise by the Authority in writing (a) for the Term; and (b) for a period of 6 years thereafter.

6 Cover features and extensions

Retroactive cover to apply to any “claims made policy wording” in respect of this Contract or retroactive date to be no later than the Effective Date.

7 Principal exclusions

7.1 War and related perils

7.2 Nuclear and radioactive risks

8 Maximum deductible threshold

Not to exceed £10,000 for each and every claim.

PART C: UNITED KINGDOM COMPULSORY INSURANCES

1 The Supplier shall meet its insurance obligations under applicable Law in full, including, UK employers' liability insurance and motor third party liability insurance.

Schedule 20

Authorised Representatives

The content for this Annex is contained in a separate file at;

S20_GEN2W1_OC_Authorised_Representatives

Schedule 20
Authorised Representatives

Authority Authorised Representative

██████	██████████
██████	██ ██████████
Postal Address:	Sanctuary Buildings, 20 Great Smith Street, London SW1P 3BT
██████████	██

Supplier Authorised Representative

██████	██████████
██████	████████████████████
Postal Address:	245 Western Avenue, Cardiff CF5 2YX
██████████	████████████████████

Schedule 21

Staff Transfer

1. Definitions

1.1 In this Schedule, the following definitions shall apply:

“Former Supplier” means the Awarding Organisation that is operating or operated the T Level technical education qualification under the Original Contract;

“Notified Sub-contractor” means a Sub-contractor to whom Transferring Former Supplier Employees will transfer on a Relevant Transfer Date;

“Replacement Sub-contractor” means a sub-contractor of the Replacement Supplier to whom Transferring Supplier Employees will transfer on a Service Transfer Date (or any sub-contractor of any such sub-contractor);

“Relevant Transfer” means a transfer of employment to which TUPE applies;

“Relevant Transfer Date” means in relation to a Relevant Transfer, the date upon which the Relevant Transfer takes place;

“Service Transfer” means any transfer of the Services (or any part of the Services), for whatever reason, from the Supplier or any Sub-contractor to a Replacement Supplier or a Replacement Sub-contractor;

“Service Transfer Date” means the date of a Service Transfer;

“Staffing Information” means in relation to all persons identified on the Supplier’s Provisional Supplier Personnel List or Supplier’s Final Supplier Personnel List, as the case may be, such information as the Authority may reasonably request (subject to all applicable provisions of the Data Protection Legislation), but including in an anonymised format:

- (a) their ages, dates of commencement of employment or engagement, gender and place of work;

- (b) details of whether they are employed, self-employed contractors or consultants, agency workers or otherwise;
- (c) the identity of the employer or relevant contracting Party;
- (d) their relevant contractual notice periods and any other terms relating to termination of employment, including redundancy procedures, and redundancy payments;
- (e) their wages, salaries, bonuses and profit sharing arrangements as applicable;
- (f) details of other employment-related benefits, including (without limitation) medical insurance, life assurance, pension or other retirement benefit schemes, share option schemes and company car schedules applicable to them;
- (g) any outstanding or potential contractual, statutory or other liabilities in respect of such individuals (including in respect of personal injury claims);
- (h) details of any such individuals on long term sickness absence, parental leave, maternity leave or other authorised long term absence;
- (i) copies of all relevant documents and materials relating to such information, including copies of relevant contracts of employment (or relevant standard contracts if applied generally in respect of such employees); and
- (j) any other Employee Liability Information” as such term is defined in regulation 11 of TUPE;

“Supplier’s Final Supplier Personnel List” means a list provided by the Supplier of all Supplier Personnel who will transfer under TUPE on the Service Transfer Date;

“Supplier’s Provisional Supplier Personnel List” means a list prepared and updated by the Supplier of all Supplier Personnel who are at the date of the list wholly or mainly engaged in or assigned to the provision of the Services or any relevant part of the Services which it is envisaged as at the date of such list will no longer be provided by the Supplier;

“Transferring Former Supplier Employees” means in relation to a Former Supplier, those employees of the Former Supplier to whom TUPE will apply on the Relevant Transfer Date; and

“Transferring Supplier Employees” means those employees of the Supplier and/or the Supplier’s Sub-contractors to whom TUPE will apply on the Service Transfer Date.

2. Interpretation

- 2.1 Where a provision in this Schedule imposes an obligation on the Supplier to provide an indemnity, undertaking or warranty, the Supplier shall procure that each of its Sub-contractors shall comply with such obligation and provide such indemnity, undertaking or warranty to the Authority, Former Supplier, Replacement Supplier or Replacement Sub-contractor, as the case may be.

Transferring Former Supplier Employees at Commencement of Services

3. Relevant Transfers

- 3.1 The Authority and the Supplier agree that:

3.1.1 the commencement of the provision of the Services or of any relevant part of the Services will be a Relevant Transfer in relation to the Transferring Former Supplier Employees; and

3.1.2 as a result of the operation of TUPE, the contracts of employment between each Former Supplier and the Transferring Former Supplier Employees (except in relation to any terms disapplied through the operation of regulation 10 of TUPE) shall have effect on and from the Relevant Transfer Date as if originally made between the Supplier and/or Notified Sub-contractor and each such Transferring Former Supplier Employee.

- 3.2 The Authority shall procure that each Former Supplier shall comply with all its obligations under TUPE and shall perform and discharge all its obligations in respect of all the Transferring Former Supplier Employees in respect of the period up to (but

not including) the Relevant Transfer Date (including the payment of all remuneration, benefits, entitlements and outgoings, all wages, accrued but untaken holiday pay, bonuses, commissions, payments of PAYE, national insurance contributions and pension contributions which in any case are attributable in whole or in part in respect of the period up to (but not including) the Relevant Transfer Date) and the Supplier shall make, and the Authority shall procure that each Former Supplier makes, any necessary apportionments in respect of any periodic payments.

4. Former Supplier Indemnities

4.1 Subject to Paragraph 4.2, the Authority shall procure that each Former Supplier shall indemnify the Supplier and any Notified Sub-contractor against any Employee Liabilities arising from or as a result of:

4.1.1 any act or omission by the Former Supplier in respect of any Transferring Former Supplier Employee or any appropriate employee representative (as defined in TUPE) of any Transferring Former Supplier Employee arising before the Relevant Transfer Date;

4.1.2 the breach or non-observance by the Former Supplier arising before the Relevant Transfer Date of:

(a) any collective agreement applicable to the Transferring Former Supplier Employees; and/or

(b) any custom or practice in respect of any Transferring Former Supplier Employees which the Former Supplier is contractually bound to honour;

4.1.3 any proceeding, claim or demand by HMRC or other statutory authority in respect of any financial obligation including, but not limited to, PAYE and primary and secondary national insurance contributions:

(a) in relation to any Transferring Former Supplier Employee, to the extent that the proceeding, claim or demand by HMRC or other statutory authority relates to financial obligations arising before the Relevant Transfer Date; and

- (b) in relation to any employee who is not a Transferring Former Supplier Employee and in respect of whom it is later alleged or determined that TUPE applied so as to transfer his/her employment from the Former Supplier to the Supplier and/or any Notified Sub-contractor as appropriate, to the extent that the proceeding, claim or demand by HMRC or other statutory authority relates to financial obligations in respect of the period to (but excluding) the Relevant Transfer Date;
- 4.1.4 a failure of the Former Supplier to discharge or procure the discharge of all wages, salaries and all other benefits and all PAYE tax deductions and national insurance contributions relating to the Transferring Former Supplier Employees in respect of the period to (but excluding) the Relevant Transfer Date;
- 4.1.5 any claim made by or in respect of any person employed or formerly employed by the Former Supplier other than a Transferring Former Supplier Employee for whom it is alleged the Supplier and/or any Notified Sub-contractor as appropriate may be liable by virtue of this Contract and/or TUPE; and
- 4.1.6 any claim made by or in respect of a Transferring Former Supplier Employee or any appropriate employee representative (as defined in TUPE) of any Transferring Former Supplier Employee relating to any act or omission of the Former Supplier in relation to its obligations under regulation 13 of TUPE, except to the extent that the liability arises from the failure by the Supplier or any Sub-contractor to comply with regulation 13(4) of TUPE.
- 4.2 The indemnities in Paragraph 4.1 shall not apply to the extent that the Employee Liabilities arise or are attributable to an act or omission of the Supplier or any Sub-contractor whether occurring or having its origin before, on or after the Relevant Transfer Date including, without limitation, any Employee Liabilities:
 - 4.2.1 arising out of the resignation of any Transferring Former Supplier Employee before the Relevant Transfer Date on account of substantial detrimental changes to his/her working conditions proposed by the Supplier or any Sub-contractor to occur in the period from (and including) the Relevant Transfer Date; or

- 4.2.2 arising from the failure by the Supplier and/or any Sub-contractor to comply with its obligations under TUPE.
- 4.3 If any person who is not identified as a Transferring Former Supplier Employee claims, or it is determined in relation to any person who is not identified as a Transferring Former Supplier Employee, that his/her contract of employment has been transferred from a Former Supplier to the Supplier and/or any Notified Sub-contractor pursuant to TUPE then:
- 4.3.1 the Supplier shall, or shall procure that the Notified Sub-contractor shall, within 5 Working Days of becoming aware of that fact, give notice in writing to the Authority and, where required by the Authority, to the Former Supplier; and
- 4.3.2 the Former Supplier may offer (or may procure that a third party may offer) employment to such person within 15 Working Days of the notification by the Supplier and/or the Notified Sub-contractor or take such other reasonable steps as the Former Supplier considers appropriate to deal with the matter provided always that such steps are in compliance with applicable Law.
- 4.4 If an offer referred to in Paragraph 4.3.2 is accepted, or if the situation has otherwise been resolved by the Former Supplier and/or the Authority, the Supplier shall, or shall procure that the Notified Sub-contractor shall, immediately release the person from his/her employment or alleged employment.
- 4.5 If by the end of the 15 Working Day period specified in Paragraph 4.3.2:
- 4.5.1 no such offer of employment has been made;
- 4.5.2 such offer has been made but not accepted; or
- 4.5.3 the situation has not otherwise been resolved,
- the Supplier and/or any Notified Sub-contractor may within 5 Working Days give notice to terminate the employment or alleged employment of such person.
- 4.6 Subject to the Supplier and/or any Notified Sub-contractor acting in accordance with the provisions of Paragraphs 4.3 to 4.5 and in accordance with all applicable proper employment procedures set out in Law, the Authority shall procure that the Former Supplier indemnifies the Supplier and/or any Notified Sub-contractor (as appropriate)

against all Employee Liabilities arising out of the termination of employment pursuant to the provisions of Paragraph 4.5 provided that the Supplier takes, or shall procure that the Notified Sub-contractor takes, all reasonable steps to minimise any such Employee Liabilities.

4.7 The indemnity in Paragraph 4.6:

4.7.1 shall not apply to:

- (a) any claim for:
- (b) discrimination, including on the grounds of sex, race, disability, age, gender reassignment, marriage or civil partnership, pregnancy and maternity or sexual orientation, religion or belief; or
- (c) equal pay or compensation for less favourable treatment of part-time workers or fixed-term employees;
- (d) in any case in relation to any alleged act or omission of the Supplier and/or any Sub-contractor; or
- (e) any claim that the termination of employment was unfair because the Supplier and/or Notified Sub-contractor neglected to follow a fair dismissal procedure; and

4.7.2 shall apply only where the notification referred to in Paragraph 4.3.1 is made by the Supplier and/or any Notified Sub-contractor (as appropriate) to the Authority and, if applicable, the Former Supplier, within 6 months of the Relevant Transfer Date.

4.8 If any such person as is described in Paragraph 4.3 is neither re-employed by the Former Supplier nor dismissed by the Supplier and/or any Notified Sub-contractor within the time scales set out in Paragraph 4.5, such person shall be treated as having transferred to the Supplier or Notified Sub-contractor and the Supplier shall comply with such obligations as may be imposed upon it under the Law.

5. **Supplier Indemnities and Obligations**

- 5.1 Subject to Paragraph 5.2, the Supplier shall indemnify the Authority and/or the Former Supplier against any Employee Liabilities arising from or as a result of:
- 5.1.1 any act or omission by the Supplier or any Sub-contractor in respect of any Transferring Former Supplier Employee or any appropriate employee representative (as defined in TUPE) of any Transferring Former Supplier Employee whether occurring before, on or after the Relevant Transfer Date;
 - 5.1.2 the breach or non-observance by the Supplier or any Sub-contractor on or after the Relevant Transfer Date of:
 - (a) any collective agreement applicable to the Transferring Former Supplier Employee; and/or
 - (b) any custom or practice in respect of any Transferring Former Supplier Employees which the Supplier or any Sub-contractor is contractually bound to honour;
 - 5.1.3 any claim by any trade union or other body or person representing any Transferring Former Supplier Employees arising from or connected with any failure by the Supplier or a Sub-contractor to comply with any legal obligation to such trade union, body or person arising on or after the Relevant Transfer Date;
 - 5.1.4 any proposal by the Supplier or a Sub-contractor prior to the Relevant Transfer Date to make changes to the terms and conditions of employment or working conditions of any Transferring Former Supplier Employees to their material detriment on or after their transfer to the Supplier or a Sub-contractor (as the case may be) on the Relevant Transfer Date, or to change the terms and conditions of employment or working conditions of any person who would have been a Transferring Former Supplier Employee but for their resignation (or decision to treat their employment as terminated under regulation 4(9) of TUPE) before the Relevant Transfer Date as a result of or for a reason connected to such proposed changes;
 - 5.1.5 any statement communicated to or action undertaken by the Supplier or a Sub-contractor to, or in respect of, any Transferring Former Supplier Employee before the Relevant Transfer Date regarding the Relevant Transfer which has

not been agreed in advance with the Authority and/or the Former Supplier in writing;

5.1.6 any proceeding, claim or demand by HMRC or other statutory authority in respect of any financial obligation including, but not limited to, PAYE and primary and secondary national insurance contributions:

(a) in relation to any Transferring Former Supplier Employee, to the extent that the proceeding, claim or demand by HMRC or other statutory authority relates to financial obligations arising on or after the Relevant Transfer Date; and

(b) in relation to any employee who is not a Transferring Former Supplier Employee, and in respect of whom it is later alleged or determined that TUPE applied so as to transfer his/her employment from the Former Supplier to the Supplier or a Sub-contractor, to the extent that the proceeding, claim or demand by the HMRC or other statutory authority relates to financial obligations arising on or after the Relevant Transfer Date;

5.1.7 a failure of the Supplier or any Sub-contractor to discharge or procure the discharge of all wages, salaries and all other benefits and all PAYE tax deductions and national insurance contributions relating to the Transferring Former Supplier Employees in respect of the period from (and including) the Relevant Transfer Date;

5.1.8 any claim made by or in respect of a Transferring Former Supplier Employee or any appropriate employee representative (as defined in TUPE) of any Transferring Former Supplier Employee relating to any act or omission of the Supplier or any Sub-contractor in relation to obligations under regulation 13 of TUPE, except to the extent that the liability arises from the Former Supplier's failure to comply with its obligations under regulation 13(4) of TUPE; and

5.1.9 a failure by the Supplier or any Sub-Contractor to comply with its obligations under Paragraph 2.8 above.

5.2 The indemnities in Paragraph 5.1 shall not apply to the extent that the Employee Liabilities arise or are attributable to an act or omission of the Former Supplier whether

occurring or having its origin before, on or after the Relevant Transfer Date including, without limitation, any Employee Liabilities arising from the Former Supplier's failure to comply with its obligations under TUPE.

- 5.3 The Supplier shall comply, and shall procure that each Sub-contractor shall comply, with all its obligations under TUPE (including without limitation its obligation to inform and consult in accordance with regulation 13 of TUPE) and shall perform and discharge, and shall procure that each Sub-contractor shall perform and discharge, all its obligations in respect of all the Transferring Former Supplier Employees, on and from the Relevant Transfer Date (including the payment of all remuneration, benefits, entitlements and outgoings, all wages, accrued but untaken holiday pay, bonuses, commissions, payments of PAYE, national insurance contributions and pension contributions and any other sums due under the Admission Agreement which in any case are attributable in whole or in part to the period from (and including) the Relevant Transfer Date) and any necessary apportionments in respect of any periodic payments shall be made between the Supplier and the Former Supplier.

6. Information

- 6.1 The Supplier shall, and shall procure that each Sub-contractor shall, promptly provide to the Authority and/or at the Authority's direction, the Former Supplier, in writing such information as is necessary to enable the Authority and/or the Former Supplier to carry out their respective duties under regulation 13 of TUPE. The Authority shall procure that the Former Supplier shall promptly provide to the Supplier and each Notified Sub-contractor in writing such information as is necessary to enable the Supplier and each Notified Sub-contractor to carry out their respective duties under regulation 13 of TUPE.

7. Procurement Obligations

- 7.1 Notwithstanding any other provisions of this Schedule, where in this Schedule the Authority accepts an obligation to procure that a Former Supplier does or does not do something, such obligation shall be limited so that it extends only to the extent that the Authority's contract with the Former Supplier contains a contractual right in that regard which the Authority may enforce, or otherwise so that it requires only that the Authority must use reasonable endeavours to procure that the Former Supplier does or does not act accordingly.

8. Pensions

- 8.1 The Supplier shall, and shall procure that each Sub-contractor shall, comply with the requirements of Part 1 of the Pensions Act 2008, section 258 of the Pensions Act 2004 and the Transfer of Employment (Pension Protection) Regulations 2005 for all transferring staff.

DATED

**THE INSTITUTE FOR
APPRENTICESHIPS AND TECHNICAL
EDUCATION**

and

WJEC CBAC LIMITED

**INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY
ASSIGNMENT AND LICENCE IN
RELATION TO
THE CONSTRUCTION: ONSITE
CONSTRUCTION T LEVEL
TECHNICAL QUALIFICATION**

THIS ASSIGNMENT AND LICENCE is made on

BETWEEN:

- (3) **THE INSTITUTE FOR APPRENTICESHIPS AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION** of Sanctuary Buildings, 20 Great Smith Street, London SW1P 3BT ("**Authority**"); and
- (4) **WJEC CBAC LIMITED** a company registered in England and Wales (company registration number: **03150875**, whose registered office is at 245 Western Avenue, Cardiff, South Glamorgan, CF5 2YX ("**Supplier**"),

each a "**Party**" and together the "**Parties**".

BACKGROUND TO THIS ASSIGNMENT AND LICENCE

- (D) The Authority and the Supplier have entered into a contract on the date of this Assignment and Licence for the design, development and delivery of the technical education qualification element ("**TQ**") for the Onsite Construction T Level ("the **TQ Agreement**").
- (E) The Supplier has agreed to assign certain intellectual property rights to the Authority, and to licence certain intellectual property rights to the Authority in connection with the TQ. The Authority has agreed to grant a licence back to the Supplier in relation to certain assigned intellectual property rights.
- (F) This Assignment and Licence, together with the TQ Agreement sets out the agreed terms of such assignment and licences.

2 Assignment and Licence start, formation and interpretation

- 2.1 This Assignment and Licence is legally binding from the Effective Date until it ends in accordance with its terms.
- 2.2 In this Assignment and Licence, unless the context otherwise requires, capitalised expressions shall have the meanings set out in this clause 1 or, where no definition is given in this clause 1, Schedule 1 to the TQ Agreement.
- 2.3 If a capitalised expression does not have an interpretation in this clause 1 or Schedule 1 to the TQ Agreement, it shall, in the first instance, be interpreted in accordance with the common

interpretation within the relevant market sector where appropriate. Otherwise, it shall be interpreted in accordance with the dictionary meaning.

2.4 In this Assignment and Licence, unless the context otherwise requires:

- 2.4.1 the singular includes the plural and vice versa;
- 2.4.2 reference to a gender includes the other gender and the neuter;
- 2.4.3 references to a person include an individual, company, body corporate, corporation, unincorporated association, firm, partnership or other legal entity or Crown Body;
- 2.4.4 references to a legal entity (other than the Supplier) shall include unless otherwise expressly stated any statutory successor to such entity and/or the relevant functions of such entity, and references to the Department shall include, where relevant, the ESFA;
- 2.4.5 a reference to any Law includes a reference to that Law as amended, extended, consolidated or re-enacted from time to time;
- 2.4.6 the words “**including**”, “**other**”, “**in particular**”, “**for example**” and similar words shall not limit the generality of the preceding words and shall be construed as if they were immediately followed by the words “**without limitation**”;
- 2.4.7 references to “**writing**” include typing, printing, lithography, photography, display on a screen, electronic and facsimile transmission and other modes of representing or reproducing words in a visible form, and expressions referring to writing shall be construed accordingly;
- 2.4.8 references to “**clauses**” and “**Schedules**” are, unless otherwise provided, references to the clauses and schedules of this Assignment and Licence and references in any Schedule to parts, paragraphs, annexes and tables are, unless otherwise provided, references to the parts, paragraphs, annexes and tables of the Schedule in which these references appear;
- 2.4.9 references to “**paragraphs**” are, unless otherwise provided, references to the paragraph of the appropriate Schedules unless otherwise provided; and
- 2.4.10 the headings in this Assignment and Licence are for ease of reference only and shall not affect the interpretation or construction of this Assignment and Licence.

2.5 In this Assignment and Licence, unless the context otherwise requires, the following words shall have the following meanings:

“Ancillary Materials” means all information and materials (other than Key Materials) to which the Authority and/or a Future Supplier would require access for the Portability Purposes, and any other materials which would be required on or to facilitate succession to a Future Supplier in a seamless manner in relation to the TQ offered or Operated by the Supplier.

Ancillary Materials shall include, without limitation:

- (a) Student results including grades;
- (b) statistical analysis for grading (excludes the systems supporting the analysis);
- (c) lists of Providers;
- (d) marked Student evidence (with moderation outcomes);
- (e) documentation which provides an overview or analysis of Student performance (including chief examiner and chief moderator reports), which include but are not limited to, examples of student responses to assessment questions and/or tasks as well as narrative explaining why students did well/ less well on individual items/ components/ subcomponents);
- (f) data on Student credits;
- (g) data on Student appeals;
- (h) data on special considerations for Students;
- (i) the Assessment Strategy;
- (j) Student registrations;
- (k) draft materials in preparation for forthcoming assessments;
- (l) the Key Dates Schedule (in respect of forthcoming assessments);

- (m) lists, with contact details, of people contracted by the Supplier to perform or oversee activities which are necessary for the conduct and quality assurance of assessments for the TQ;
- (n) materials from completed assessments, such as completed Students' examination answer booklets; and
- (o) TQ Live Assessment Materials

"Approval" has the same meaning as in the TQ Agreement;

"Assigned Rights" means the Intellectual Property Rights in the Key Materials;

"Authority Authorised Representative" has the same meaning as in the TQ Agreement;

"Background IPR" means any IPR owned by a Party prior to the Effective Date or created or developed by a Party otherwise than in the provision of the Services or under or in connection with the TQ Agreement, but does not include IPR in Key Materials;

"Beneficiary" means a Party having (or claiming to have) the benefit of an indemnity under this Assignment and Licence;

"Claim" means any claim for which it appears that a Beneficiary is, or may become, entitled to indemnification under this Assignment and Licence;

"Continuing Activities" means activities of the Supplier under the TQ Agreement which continue following the end of the second Academic Year for the final Exclusive Cohort (each as defined in the TQ Agreement) in relation to the TQ as offered by the Supplier, such as retakes, appeals, and any ongoing records management contracted to the Supplier;

"Default" means any breach of the obligations of the Supplier (including abandonment of the Assignment and Licence in breach of its terms) or any other default (including material default), act, omission, negligence or statement of the Supplier, of its Subcontractors or any Supplier Staff howsoever arising in connection with or in relation to the subject-matter of this Assignment and Licence and in respect of which the Supplier is liable to the Authority;

"Deliverables" means all information and data the Supplier creates, identifies for use, or uses as part of or for the Operation of the TQ, including Products and Management Information;

“Dispute” means any claim, dispute or difference which arises out of or in connection with this Assignment and Licence or in connection with the negotiation, existence, legal validity, enforceability or termination of this Assignment and Licence, whether the alleged liability shall arise under English law or under the law of some other country and regardless of whether a particular cause of action may successfully be brought in the English courts;

“Effective Date” means the date on which the last Party to sign has signed this Assignment and Licence;

“Final Approval Milestone” has the meaning given in the TQ Agreement;

“Future Supplier” means any Awarding Organisation appointed, at any point in the future and including any Replacement Supplier, to operate one or more T Level technical education qualifications by or at the direction of the Authority from time to time, and where the Authority is operating a T Level technical education qualification, shall also include the Authority;

“Indemnifier” means a Party from whom an indemnity is sought under this Assignment and Licence;

“Insolvency Event” means:

- (d) in respect of a company:
 - (i) a proposal is made for a voluntary arrangement within Part I of the Insolvency Act 1986 or of any other composition scheme or arrangement with, or assignment for the benefit of, its creditors; or
 - (ii) a shareholders' meeting is convened for the purpose of considering a resolution that it be wound up or a resolution for its winding-up is passed (other than as part of, and exclusively for the purpose of, a bona fide reconstruction or amalgamation); or
 - (iii) a petition is presented for its winding up (which is not dismissed within fourteen (14) Working Days of its service) or an application is made for the appointment of a provisional liquidator or a creditors' meeting is convened pursuant to section 98 of the Insolvency Act 1986; or
 - (iv) a receiver, administrative receiver or similar officer is appointed over the whole or any part of its business or assets; or

- (v) an application order is made either for the appointment of an administrator or for an administration order, an administrator is appointed, or notice of intention to appoint an administrator is given; or
- (vi) it is or becomes insolvent within the meaning of section 123 of the Insolvency Act 1986; or
- (vii) being a “**small company**” within the meaning of section 382(3) of the Companies Act 2006, a moratorium comes into force pursuant to Schedule A1 of the Insolvency Act 1986; or
- (e) where the person is an individual or partnership, any event analogous to those listed in limbs (a) (i) to (vii) (inclusive) occurs in relation to that individual or partnership; or
- (f) any event analogous to those listed in limbs (a) (i) to (vii) (inclusive) occurs under the law of any other jurisdiction;

“Intellectual Property Rights” or “IPR” means:

- (g) copyright, rights related to or affording protection similar to copyright, rights in databases, patents and rights in inventions, semi-conductor topography rights, trade marks, rights in internet domain names and website addresses and other rights in trade or business names, goodwill, designs, Know-How, trade secrets and other rights in Confidential Information;
- (h) applications for registration, and the right to apply for registration, for any of the rights listed at (a) that are capable of being registered in any country or jurisdiction; and
- (i) all other rights having equivalent or similar effect in any country or jurisdiction;

“IPR Claim” means any claim of infringement or alleged infringement (including the defence of such infringement or alleged infringement) of any IPR used to provide the Services and/or supply the Products or otherwise provided and/or licensed by the Supplier (or to which the Supplier has provided access) to the Authority in the fulfilment of its obligations under the TQ Agreement or this Assignment and Licence;

“Key Materials” means materials the IPR in which the Authority reasonably requires ownership of for the Portability Purposes. Examples of where the Authority may reasonably require ownership include because the Authority or a Future Supplier (or, where relevant, a potential Future Supplier) may need to copy or

otherwise reproduce such materials (in whole or in part), to supply or communicate the same, or to be able control the use (in whole or in part) of such materials by third parties, or to authorise others to do so.

Key Materials shall include:

- (a) specifications of content for each TQ including core and all specialist components;
- (b) assessment guidelines (for Providers);
- (c) quality assurance requirements (for Providers);
- (d) specimen assessment materials;
- (e) standards exemplification materials;
- (f) supplementary specimen assessment materials
- (g) employer set project guide exemplar responses
- (h) employer set project grade exemplar responses
- (i) updates or redevelopments of specifications of content;
- (j) updates and redevelopments of any Key Materials; and
- (k) any materials equivalent to the above to which a Skilled Future Supplier would reasonably require access for the Portability Purposes.

Key Materials shall not include:

- (1) Support Materials, insofar as they are not part of any of the expressly included items listed above;
- (2) question banks insofar as they are not part of any of the included items listed above and are not developed for the TQ; and
- (3) any systems and platforms used to support the delivery of the TQ, provided that the relevant TQ content or data held in or processed by such systems and/or platforms can be extracted without requiring further processing post-extraction (and the Supplier can demonstrate that they can be so extracted) to enable use of the relevant content and/or data by a Skilled

Future Supplier in conjunction with a non-proprietary or generally commercially available system or platform;

“Know-How” means all ideas, concepts, schemes, information, knowledge, techniques, methodology, and anything else in the nature of know-how relating to the Services;

“Law” means any law, subordinate legislation within the meaning of Section 21(1) of the Interpretation Act 1978, bye-law, enforceable right within the meaning of Section 2 of the European Communities Act 1972, regulation, order, regulatory policy, mandatory guidance or code of practice, judgment of a relevant court of law, or directives or requirements with which the Supplier is bound to comply;

“Losses” means all losses, liabilities, damages, costs, expenses (including legal fees), disbursements, costs of investigation, litigation, settlement, judgment, interest and penalties whether arising in contract, tort (including negligence), breach of statutory duty, misrepresentation or otherwise and **“Loss”** shall be interpreted accordingly;

“New IPR” means :

- (c) IPR in items created by the Supplier (or by a third party on behalf of the Supplier) specifically for the purposes of the TQ Agreement and updates and amendments of these items including (but not limited to) database schema; and/or
- (d) IPR in or arising as a result of the performance of the Supplier's obligations under the TQ Agreement and all updates and amendments to the same,

but shall not include any IPR owned by the Supplier prior to the Effective Date;

“Operate” in relation to a qualification means to provide the Services or a material part of the Services, or services replacing the Services or a material part of the Services, or of an equivalent character to the Services or a material part of the Services in relation to any other qualification (whether a T Level technical education qualification or not); and **“Operation”** and other cognate terms shall have a corresponding meaning;

“Party” means the Authority or the Supplier and **“Parties”** means both of them where the context permits;

“Product” has the meaning given in the TQ Agreement;

“Provider” means an organisation that has a grant agreement and/or a contract in place with the ESFA to provide qualifications to Students;

“Replacement Services” means any services which are substantially similar to any of the Services (including the supply of any Products) and which the Authority receives in substitution for any of the Services, whether those services are provided by the Authority internally and/or by any third party;

“Replacement Supplier” has the meaning given in the TQ Agreement;

“Required Insurances” has the meaning given in the TQ Agreement;

“Services” means the services as described in Schedule 2 to the TQ Agreement (*Service Requirements*) including any Additional Services as defined in the TQ Agreement;

“Termination Notice” means a written notice of termination given by one Party to the other, notifying the Party receiving the notice of the intention of the Party giving the notice to terminate this Assignment and Licence on a specified date and setting out the grounds for termination;

“Third Party IPR” means Intellectual Property Rights owned by a third party which is or will be used by the Supplier for the purpose of providing the Services and/or supplying the Products;

“TQ Agreement” has the meaning given in recital A (above);

“Transparent” means that students and employers will regard the TQ delivered by a Future Supplier as materially the same as the TQ delivered and operated by the (existing) Supplier;

“Working Day” means any day other than a Saturday or Sunday or public holiday in England and Wales.

3 Assignment

3.1 Pursuant to and for the consideration set out in the TQ Agreement, the Supplier assigns to the Authority, absolutely with full title guarantee all its right, title and interest in and to all of the Intellectual Property Rights in the Key Materials (which, for the avoidance of doubt, includes the Guide Standard Exemplification Materials) including the right to bring, make, oppose, defend, appeal proceedings, claims or actions and obtain relief (and to retain any damages recovered) in respect of any infringement, or any other cause of action arising from ownership, of any of the Assigned Rights on or after the date of this Assignment and Licence. Such assignment shall take place on the earlier of:

3.1.1 the creation of any relevant materials known to be Key Materials;

3.1.2 the identification by the Supplier of the use of the relevant materials as part of the TQ; and

3.1.3 delivery of the relevant Key Materials to the Authority, or Operation of the TQ by the Supplier.

3.2 With the exception of Guide Standard Exemplification Materials, all Key Materials are relevant course documents for the purposes of section A2D3(4) of the Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009, and on approval of the TQ at the Final Approval Milestone and on any subsequent Approval, to the extent that any copyright or any rights in copyright forming part of the Assigned Rights have not then been assigned to and vested absolutely in the Authority, they shall be transferred to the Authority by operation of statute in accordance with section A2IA of the Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009. Intellectual Property Rights in the Guide Standard Exemplification Materials is assigned to the Authority by virtue of 2.1 above.

4 Licences to the Authority

4.1 The Supplier hereby grants to the Authority (and the Authority shall have, in addition to any retained rights under clause 13.8 of the TQ Agreement) a non-exclusive, perpetual, royalty-free, irrevocable, transferable worldwide licence to use, exploit and sub-license the IPR in the Ancillary Materials and the Supplier's Background IPR and, in respect of any IPR in Key Materials, in each case to the extent that the same are not at the relevant time vested absolutely in the Authority, as necessary to enable the Authority (and its sub-licensees) to:

4.1.1 use the Key Materials and Ancillary Materials in its administration, approval and oversight of the TQ and other T Level technical education qualifications and to make the same available to others (such as Ofqual) to do the same; and

4.1.2 to use the Key Materials and the Ancillary Materials, and for any Future Supplier or potential Future Supplier to use the Key Materials and the Ancillary Materials:

(i) for competing or tendering for the delivery and Operation of the TQ and/or any Replacement TQ, during any Transition Period and following expiry or termination of the TQ Agreement; and

(ii) to deliver and Operate the TQ and any Replacement TQ, during any Transition Period and following expiry or termination of the TQ Agreement; and

4.1.3 otherwise to receive and use the Services and the Deliverables and allow any Future Supplier to use the Deliverables; and

4.1.4 to sub-license others to exercise the rights set out in this clause 3.1.

4.2 The Authority agrees that it shall use any Ancillary Materials which fall solely within element (I) of the definition of Ancillary Materials (being “*lists, with contact details, of people contracted by the Supplier to perform or oversee activities which are necessary for the conduct and quality assurance of assessments for the TQ*”) only for the purposes of planning for or executing an Emergency Exit.

5 Licence to the Supplier

5.1 The Authority hereby grants to the Supplier, in respect of the Assigned Rights, a worldwide, royalty free, perpetual and irrevocable non-exclusive licence, with the right to sublicense, to use and exploit the IPR in the Key Materials during and after the Term, but not, save as provided in the TQ Agreement, to use the same as part of a T Level, such licence being subject to clauses 13.13 and 13.14 of the TQ Agreement (which for these purposes shall survive any termination or expiry of the TQ Agreement).

6 Warranties and representations

6.1 The Supplier warrants and represents (on the Effective Date and on any relevant assignment or grant of licence taking effect) that:

6.1.1 it is or will be the sole legal and beneficial owner of, and that it owns all the rights and interests in the Assigned Rights no later than the time for assignment specified in clause 2.1 or when they are assigned in accordance with clause 13.2.1 of the TQ Agreement, save for Assigned Rights other than New IPR, in respect of which it has previously notified the Authority and the Authority has agreed in writing that this warranty shall not apply;

6.1.2 where it is not the sole legal and beneficial owner of the Assigned Rights, including the Assigned Rights which are to be used or embodied in any Key Materials, it has established that all owners of such rights consent to their assignment and transfer absolutely to the Authority;

6.1.3 it has all the necessary right and title to grant all the licences granted to the Authority under this Assignment and Licence and the TQ Agreement;

- 6.1.4 it has not licensed or assigned any of the Assigned Rights other than pursuant to this Assignment and Licence or the TQ Agreement;
- 6.1.5 the Assigned Rights are free from any security interest, option, mortgage, charge or lien;
- 6.1.6 it is unaware of any infringement or likely infringement of any of the Assigned Rights;
- 6.1.7 as far as it is aware, all the Assigned Rights are valid and subsisting and there are and have been no claims, challenges, disputes or proceedings, pending or threatened, in relation to the ownership, validity or use of any of the Assigned Rights;
- 6.1.8 the use of the Key Materials and Ancillary Materials, and exploitation of the Assigned Rights by the Supplier in the provision of the Services and Deliverables or by the Authority in receiving and using the Services and Deliverables or procuring any Replacement Services or by any Future Supplier in Operating any Replacement Services, will not infringe the rights of any third party; and
- 6.1.9 the Key Materials are its original work and have not been copied wholly or substantially from any other source.

7 Indemnity

- 7.1 Subject to clause 19, if there is an IPR Claim, the Supplier indemnifies the Authority against all losses, damages, costs or expenses (including professional fees and fines) incurred as a result.
- 7.2 If an IPR Claim is made or anticipated, the Supplier must at its own expense and the Authority's sole option, either:
 - 7.2.1 obtain for the Authority the rights in clause 2.1 and 3.1 without infringing any Third Party IPR; or
 - 7.2.2 replace or modify the relevant item with substitutes that do not infringe IPR without adversely affecting the functionality or performance of the Deliverables.

8 Moral rights

- 8.1 The Supplier shall procure written absolute waivers from all authors of the Key Materials and Ancillary Materials in relation to all their moral rights arising under the Copyright, Designs and

Patents Act 1988 in relation to the Key Materials and Ancillary Materials and, as far as is legally possible, any broadly equivalent rights such authors may have in any territory of the world.

9 Ending or extending the Assignment and Licence

9.1 This Assignment and Licence ends if terminated by the Authority for any reason set out in this Assignment and Licence.

9.2 If any of the following events happen, the Authority has the right to immediately terminate this Assignment and Licence or any of the licences granted under this Assignment and Licence by issuing a Termination Notice to the Supplier (in the latter case specifying the relevant licences):

9.2.1 a Default incapable of remedy;

9.2.2 a Default capable of remedy that is not corrected within 30 days; and

9.2.3 anything occurs which entitles the Authority to terminate the TQ Agreement.

10 Claims against third parties

10.1 The Supplier may take any action it considers appropriate or necessary, subject to the Authority's prior written consent, not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed, if there is a breach, other than in connection with the TQ, by a third party of the Authority's rights in any IPR licensed to the Supplier under clause 4, and the Authority agrees to provide all such assistance as the Supplier may reasonably require (subject to meeting the Authority's reasonably agreed costs and expenses and the Supplier hereby indemnifying the Authority in respect of any loss, damage or liability the Authority incurs by reason of any such action).

11 Further assurance

11.1 At the Authority's expense the Supplier shall, and shall use all reasonable endeavours to procure that any necessary third party shall, promptly execute and deliver such documents and perform such acts as may reasonably be required for the purpose of giving full effect to this Assignment and Licence and the TQ Agreement, including:

11.1.1 registration of the Authority as applicant or (as applicable) proprietor of the Assigned Rights; and

- 11.1.2 assisting the Authority in obtaining, defending and enforcing the Assigned Rights, and assisting with any other proceedings which may be brought by or against the Authority against or by any third party relating to the Assigned Rights.
- 11.2 The Supplier appoints the Authority to be its attorney in its name and on its behalf to execute documents, use the Supplier's name and do all things which are necessary or desirable for the Authority to obtain for itself or its nominee the full benefit of this Assignment and Licence.
- 11.3 This power of attorney is irrevocable and is given by way of security to secure the performance of the Supplier's obligations under this Assignment and Licence and the proprietary interest of the Authority in the Assigned Rights and so long as such obligations of the Supplier remain undischarged, or the Authority has such interest, the power may not be revoked by the Supplier, save with the consent of the Authority.
- 11.4 Without prejudice to clause 10.2, the Authority may, in any way it thinks fit and in the name and on behalf of the Supplier:
 - 11.4.1 take any action that this Assignment and Licence requires the Supplier to take;
 - 11.4.2 exercise any rights which this Assignment and Licence gives to the Supplier; and
 - 11.4.3 appoint one or more persons to act as substitute attorney(s) for the Supplier and to exercise such of the powers conferred by this power of attorney as the Authority thinks fit and revoke such appointment.
- 11.5 The Supplier undertakes to ratify and confirm everything that the Authority and any substitute attorney does or arranges or purports to do or arrange in good faith in exercise of any power granted under this clause 10.

12 How much each Party can be held responsible for

- 12.1 Each Party's total aggregate liability under this Assignment and Licence (whether in tort, contract or otherwise) for each claim or series of connected claims is no more than £1 million.
- 12.2 No Party is liable to the other for:
 - 12.2.1 any indirect Losses; or

- 12.2.2 loss of profits, turnover, savings, business opportunities or damage to goodwill (in each case whether direct or indirect).
- 12.3 The limitation of liability set out in clause 11.1 does not apply to either Party in relation to the following:
 - 12.3.1 its liability for death or personal injury caused by its negligence, or that of its employees, agents or subcontractors;
 - 12.3.2 bribery or fraud or fraudulent misrepresentation by it or its employees; or
 - 12.3.3 any liability that cannot be excluded or permitted by Law.
- 12.4 Each Party must use all reasonable endeavours to mitigate any Losses which it suffers under or in connection with this Assignment and Licence, including where any such Losses are covered by an indemnity.
- 12.5 When calculating the Supplier's liability under clause 11.1, Losses covered by Required Insurances will not be taken into consideration.

13 Invalid parts of this Assignment and Licence

- 13.1 If any part of this Assignment and Licence is prohibited by Law or judged by a court to be unlawful, void or unenforceable, it must be removed from this Assignment and Licence as much as required and rendered ineffective as far as possible without affecting the rest of the Assignment and Licence, or whether it is valid or enforceable.

14 No other terms apply

- 14.1 Except as otherwise expressly provided in this Assignment and Licence or in the TQ Agreement, the provisions incorporated into this Assignment and Licence are the entire agreement between the Parties. The Assignment and Licence replaces all previous statements and agreements whether written or oral. No other provisions apply.
- 14.2 Variation of this Assignment and Licence is only effective if agreed in writing and signed by both Parties.

15 Other people's rights in this Assignment and Licence

- 15.1 No third parties may use the Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act ("CRTPA") to enforce any term of this Assignment and Licence unless stated (referring to CRTPA) in this Assignment and Licence. This does not affect third party rights and remedies that exist independently from CRTPA.

16 Relationships created by this Assignment and Licence

- 16.1 This Assignment and Licence does not create a partnership, joint venture or employment relationship. The Supplier must represent themselves accordingly and ensure others do so.

17 Giving up contract rights

- 17.1 A partial or full waiver or relaxation of the terms of this Assignment and Licence is only valid if it is stated to be a waiver in writing to the other Party.

18 Transferring responsibilities

- 18.1 The Supplier must not assign this Assignment and Licence without Approval.
- 18.2 The Authority can assign, novate or transfer this Assignment and Licence or any part of it to any Crown Body, public or private sector body which performs the functions of the Authority.
- 18.3 The Supplier must enter into a novation agreement in the form that the Authority specifies in order to use its rights under clause 17.2.
- 18.4 The Supplier can terminate this Assignment and Licence if it is novated under clause 17.2 to a private sector body that is experiencing an Insolvency Event.

19 How to communicate about this Assignment and Licence

- 19.1 All notices under this Assignment and Licence must be in writing and are considered effective on the Working Day of delivery as long as delivered before 5:00 pm on a Working Day. Otherwise the notice is effective on the next Working Day. An email is effective when sent unless an error message is received.
- 19.2 Notices to the Authority must be sent to the Authority Authorised Representative's address and email address, and all notices must be copied to the Authority's Head of Commercial Delivery Management [REDACTED] and the Authority's Head of Legal [REDACTED].

- 19.3 This clause does not apply to the service of legal proceedings or any documents in any legal action, arbitration or dispute resolution.

20 Dealing with claims

- 20.1 If a Beneficiary is notified or otherwise becomes aware of a Claim then it must notify the Indemnifier as soon as reasonably practical and no later than 10 Working Days after such notification or date of first awareness.
- 20.2 At the Indemnifier's cost the Beneficiary must both:
- 20.2.1 allow the Indemnifier to conduct all negotiations and proceedings to do with a Claim; and
 - 20.2.2 give the Indemnifier reasonable assistance with the Claim if requested.
- 20.3 The Beneficiary must not make admissions about the Claim without the prior written consent of the Indemnifier which cannot be unreasonably withheld or delayed.
- 20.4 The Indemnifier must consider and defend the Claim diligently using competent legal advisors and in a way that does not damage the Beneficiary's reputation.
- 20.5 The Indemnifier must not settle or compromise any Claim without the Beneficiary's prior written consent which it must not unreasonably withhold or delay.
- 20.6 Each Beneficiary must take all reasonable steps to minimise and mitigate any losses that it suffers because of the Claim.
- 20.7 If the Indemnifier pays the Beneficiary money under an indemnity and the Beneficiary later recovers money which is directly related to the Claim, the Beneficiary must immediately repay the Indemnifier the lesser of either:
- 20.7.1 the sum recovered minus any legitimate amount spent by the Beneficiary when recovering this money; or
 - 20.7.2 the amount the Indemnifier paid the Beneficiary for the Claim.

21 Resolving disputes

- 21.1 If there is a Dispute, the senior representatives of the Parties who have authority to settle the Dispute will, within 28 days of a written request from the other Party, meet in good faith to resolve the Dispute.
- 21.2 If the Dispute is not resolved at that meeting, the Parties can attempt to settle it by mediation using the Centre for Effective Dispute Resolution (“**CEDR**”) Model Mediation Procedure current at the time of the Dispute. If the Parties cannot agree on a mediator, the mediator will be nominated by CEDR. If either Party does not wish to use, or continue to use mediation, or mediation does not resolve the Dispute, the Dispute must be resolved using clauses 20.3 to 20.5.
- 21.3 Unless the Authority refers the Dispute to arbitration using clause 20.4, the Parties irrevocably agree that the courts of England and Wales have the exclusive jurisdiction to:
- 21.3.1 determine the Dispute;
 - 21.3.2 grant interim remedies, or any other provisional or protective relief.
- 21.4 The Supplier agrees that the Authority has the exclusive right to refer any Dispute to be finally resolved by arbitration under the London Court of International Arbitration Rules current at the time of the Dispute. There will be only one arbitrator. The seat or legal place of the arbitration will be London and the proceedings will be in English.
- 21.5 The Authority has the right to refer a Dispute to arbitration even if the Supplier has started or has attempted to start court proceedings under clause 20.4, unless the Authority has agreed to the court proceedings or participated in them. Even if court proceedings have started, the Parties must do everything necessary to ensure that the court proceedings are stayed in favour of any arbitration proceedings if they are started under clause 20.4.
- 21.6 The Supplier cannot suspend the performance of this Assignment and Licence during any Dispute.

22 Which law applies

- 22.1 This Assignment and Licence and any issues arising out of, or connected to it, are governed by English law.

ANNEX

IPR Assurance Certificate

This certificate is given pursuant to clause 13.9 of the agreement (“**Contract**”) between the Institute for Apprenticeships and Technical Education (“**Authority**”) and the supplier named below (“**Supplier**”), and the Intellectual Property Assignment and Licence between the Authority and the Supplier (which also forms Schedule 14 of the Contract) (“**Assignment and Licence**”).

Guidance:

When to complete this certificate: This certificate should be completed in respect of each Deliverable (as defined in the Contract) which is made available to the Authority under the Contract, and a completed certificate should be supplied to the Authority with that Deliverable. This includes updates to existing Deliverables.

Purpose of this certificate: This certificate is intended to confirm that the specific Deliverable fully complies with the intellectual property provisions of the Contract. A copy of the certificate will be retained by the Authority as evidence of the intellectual property position.

Supplier Declaration:

We (being the Supplier named below) confirm that the Deliverable(s) supplied together with (or shortly before or after) this certificate, all elements of which are listed in either Table 1 or Table 2 below⁴, comply with the intellectual property provisions in the Contract, in particular the applicable warranties set out in clause 5 of the Assignment and Licence.

We confirm that the Deliverable(s) either:

- (i) contain no third party intellectual property rights, or
- (ii) contain third party intellectual property rights and we have obtained the consent of the applicable third party:

- in the case of Key Materials, to their assignment and transfer to the Authority; and/or
- in the case of Ancillary Materials, to their licence to the Authority,

in each case on the terms and conditions of the Contract and Assignment and Licence.

We confirm that this certificate overrides any statement or copyright notice forming part of the Deliverable(s) which is in any way inconsistent with this certificate. We agree that this certificate does not detract in any way from the rights granted to the Authority in the Contract.

Key Materials

We confirm that the Deliverable(s) set out in Table 1 below, or the elements of the Deliverable(s) set out in Table 1 below, are Key Materials, as defined in the Contract:

Table 1

⁴ If, by exception, the Supplier asserts that the Deliverable includes elements which are neither Key Materials nor Ancillary Materials, this should be notified in writing to the Authority prior to the relevant Deliverable being made available to the Authority.

Deliverable	Key Materials
[Set out title / description of the Deliverable]	Set out elements which are Key Materials, or confirm "entire Deliverable"
[insert additional rows if required]	

All intellectual property rights in the Deliverable(s), or elements of the Deliverable(s) listed above in Table 1 as Key Materials, have vested or hereby vest in the Authority pursuant to the Assignment and Licence.

Ancillary Materials

We confirm that the Deliverable(s) set out in Table 2 below, or the elements of the Deliverable set out in Table 2 below are Ancillary Materials, as defined in the Contract:

Table 2

Deliverable	Ancillary Materials
[Set out title / description of the Deliverable]	Set out elements which are Ancillary Materials, or confirm "entire Deliverable"
[insert additional rows if required]	

All intellectual property rights in the Deliverable(s), or elements of the Deliverable(s) listed above in Table 2 as Ancillary Materials, are licensed to the Authority on the terms and conditions of and pursuant to the Assignment and Licence.

Signed for and on behalf of the Supplier:

Name

Position

Date

Signed by

WJEC CBAC LIMITED

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

Signature:

[REDACTED]

Signed by

THE INSTITUTE FOR APPRENTICESHIPS AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

Signature:

[REDACTED]